

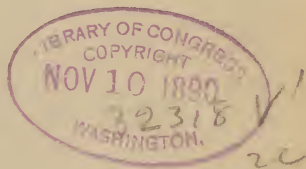




THE NEW ZEALAND

BOHEMIAN MADE EASY.

A PRACTICAL BOHEMIAN COURSE
for English-speaking people.



39
10971

By CHARLES JONAS,

late U.S. Consul at Prague, author of the first Dictionary of the
Bohemian and English languages.

RACINE, WIS. 1890.

PG4111
.J67

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1890,
by CHARLES JONAS, in the office of the Librarian of
Congress, at Washington, D, C.

TO THE HONORABLE

GROVER CLEVELAND,

EX-PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES,

THIS LITTLE WORK IS DEDICATED,

AS A SLIGHT TOKEN OF PROFOUND

RESPECT AND ADMIRATION,

BY THE

AUTHOR.

Why this book has been written.

The answer to such a question is simple: because there is a demand for it. And whenever there is a demand, the supply is sure to come.

Not a year passes, but numbers apply to divers book-sellers and publishers for some handy book to give them a practical knowledge of the Bohemian language or to serve as a proper introduction to a study thereof.

Who are the applicants? They are business men, clerks, salesmen and travelers, druggists and physicians, ministers, teachers and lawyers. They live and follow their vocations in localities where a large fraction of the population speaks the Bohemian language; they perceive the advantage which a knowledge of Bohemian, or even a slight acquaintance with that tongue, would give them; and consequently they look for a guide.

Such a guide this little work is designed to furnish. I may say that within six or eight years past I have myself read hundreds of applications for such a guide from different parts of our country and I repeatedly promised to write a book of this kind as soon as my other occupations permitted. Now I have redeemed that pledge. It has been done, to be sure, only in an imperfect manner; there are defects and shortcomings, which in a pioneer work of this kind cannot be avoided. But I applied myself to the task with the honest intention,

materially to assist the beginner in his attempt to gain such a knowledge of the Bohemian language, as would be of help to him in his intercourse with people speaking that language, or in his desire to read Bohemian literature; and I cherish the hope, that this present result of my labor will prove really helpful to those who will make use of it for that purpose. —

“Is Bohemian a hard language to learn?” This inquiry I have heard more than once.

I think no language is easy to learn, if a person wants to have a perfect command of it; and Bohemian presents about a fair average of the difficulties, which a student of languages encounters. But there is no great difficulty in acquiring a superficial knowledge of any living European tongue, a knowledge sufficient for ordinary intercourse in every day life, if a person has the will and perseverance to learn it and a fair opportunity to use what he learns. Beginners who will take up this little book with an earnest purpose, will soon find out that Bohemian comes well under this general rule.

Some years ago I made the acquaintance of a business man in a small city of Wisconsin, with whom I conversed both in English and Bohemian and whom I noticed to use both languages in his general conversation with others apparently with the same ease and fluency. It was not until some time after our first meeting, that I learned the gentleman in question was not a Bohemian by birth, but a native American of German descent. Had I been told that he was a born Bohemian, I certainly would have believed it, from the way he handled the language. On our next meeting I asked him how he succeeded in mastering the Bohemian language so perfectly; and he said: “My instructor was the Bohemian newspaper. I commenced by reading communications written by farmers in an easy, colloquial style and asking explanations as to meaning and pronunciation. In this I persevered, my stock of words and phrases grew rapidly, and I was soon enabled to

understand and to make a rapid progress in conversation. Later on I had recourse to the dictionary."

This tends to show what may be done by patient application and perseverance and it may serve as an encouragement to beginners. Of course, the number of persons of other nationalities who have acquired a sufficient practical knowledge of Bohemian to employ it in ordinary intercourse and business, is very large; and I mention it simply to show, that there is no insuperable difficulty in the way, as some persons perhaps might imagine.

And with this little introduction I wish the beginner God speed!

The Bohemian language.

The Slavonic family of nations, numbering rather more than one hundred and ten millions, is composed of two great divisions:

1. The eastern division, comprising the Russians, Bulgarians and Serbo-Croats, under which latter head may also be classed the Slovenes;

2. the western division, comprising the Poles, Bohemians and the remnant of the Wends in Germany.

The Bohemian language is closely related to the other branches of the Slavonic tongue. It needs only a few weeks' study, for a person having a full command of Bohemian, to obtain a fair practical knowledge of any other Slavonic idiom. Especially is the relationship between Bohemian and Polish so close, that they might almost be considered dialects of one and the same language.

The Bohemian language is spoken in Bohemia, Moravia, part of Austrian and Prussian Silesia, and also in Upper Hun-

gary. The Slovak idiom spoken in the last named country is simply an earlier form of Bohemian, which latter the Slovaks of Hungary used for centuries as their literary or "biblical" language; only within the last fifty years have they begun to employ their proper dialect largely in literature. But still, the language is virtually the same, Bohemians and Slovaks needing no interpreters to understand one another, and no dictionaries mutually to read their publications. As a matter of fact, the two idioms are much nearer than high German and low German.



The Bohemians in the United States.

About the year 1848 Bohemian emigration to the United States commenced. Its volume has never been so large as that of the Irish or German emigration, but it has been steady and it will naturally go on for many years to come. In all probability, it will continue as long as European emigration to this side of the Atlantic ocean in general, and it may in the near future assume larger proportions than in the past.

The census of 1870 found 42,000 persons of Bohemian birth settled in the United States. In the year 1880 there were, according to the census taken in that year, over 85,000. But it must be remembered that many of those classified in the census tables as born in Austria, are of Bohemian nationality, especially such as emigrated from the provinces of Moravia and Silesia, and not from Bohemia proper. Quite a number, also, were by mistake entered under the general heading of "Germany", as to the country of their nativity.

It is safe to say that the number of persons born in Europe, whose mother tongue was Bohemian, at the time of the official enumeration of 1880 exceeded one hundred thou-

sand. At this writing they number nearly 200,000, and together with the first generation born in this country of Bohemian parents and speaking the language, in all probability somewhere near 500,000.

Within the last ten or fifteen years quite a heavy stream of immigration has set in from Hungary. At first mostly employed in Eastern mines and factories, these immigrants have in recent years been spreading west and settling on lands. These Hungarians are mostly Slovaks.

The number of Slovaks in the United States at this time probably equals about one third that of the Bohemians proper; hence the present number of persons in the United States speaking the Bohemian language in both its dialects may be computed at six hundred thousand.

The Bohemians have their homes chiefly in the following states: New York, Pennsylvania, Maryland, Ohio, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin, Iowa, Minnesota, Nebraska, Kansas, S. Dakota, Missouri and Texas.

In the first five states and also in Missouri they live chiefly in the cities, following different trades and working in factories. In the other states they are mainly farmers, as a rule very industrious and thrifty. Many of them are of course engaged in business of all kinds and in the professions. In their manners and customs and ways of thought the Bohemians strongly resemble the Germans, particularly the South Germans, with whom they have been in close contact in the old world for over a thousand years. They are industrious and saving, sociable and hospitable; their favorite beverage at social gatherings and entertainments is beer, and "Bohemian beer" of different make has in recent years become quite popular in this country of ours. Immoderate indulgence in their favorite drink may doubtless sometimes be observed among them as among others, especially in the large cities;

but as a rule, they are sober, law-abiding and extremely good-natured.

In religion, Roman Catholicism predominates among the Bohemians and they have a large number of churches, priests and parish schools in the United States. The Protestants also have numerous places of worship. Large numbers of the Bohemians, however, keep apart from all churches and religious denominations. They are liberals, free-thinkers and agnostics of different shades of opinion, enjoying the inestimable privilege of every American citizen to follow his convictions and enjoy a full personal freedom, so long as he respects the laws and the equal freedom of his fellow-citizens.


The first Bohemian newspaper on this side of the Atlantic was issued thirty years ago at Racine, Wisconsin, the first number appearing on New Year's day 1860. Now there are about twenty five or thirty newspapers in that language published in the United States, both daily and weekly, besides several in the Slovak dialect. Most of them have a good patronage and some have in fact a surprisingly large circulation. Other publications are also quite numerous. The Bohemians, and particularly the farmers, are fond of reading, eager for information, and above all they seek political knowledge, taking the liveliest interest in whatever concerns the government, public institutions and laws of their adopted country. During the civil war the Bohemians, although at that time quite generally classified as Germans, furnished a considerable contingent of the defenders of the Union and in Chicago a monument will soon be reared by the Bohemians in memory of those of their nationality, who cheerfully took up arms and gave their lives for the unity and freedom of this great country. *)

*) The following is a quotation from an extensive article on the Bohemians in St. Louis, Mo., which appeared in the *GLOBE-DEMOCRAT* of February 16, 1890:

"In the territory lying between Seventh and Fourteenth streets on the east and west, and Geyer and Russell avenues on the north and south, there is a population of 25,000 souls, all speaking the language of Bohemia, schooling their children in the ancient tongue, keeping up an acquaintance with a rich and varied literature that dates

back to the ninth century, and for the most part worshipping in the Roman Catholic Church, of which Bohemia has been a staunch adherent since the ninth century. A thrifty set are these Bohemians, good citizens in all that the term implies, prompt taxpayers, fully alive to the requirements of civilization; mingling freely in business intercourse with their cousins from other lands, they yet preserve the social customs of their native land, and take an overweening pride in the preservation of its language and its literature. The Bohemian met up town in business life would be casually mistaken for a German, but a tour through their section of the city impresses one with their startling individuality.... In conversation with S. (one of their leading men) I was struck by the ease and purity of his English diction. This is a marked peculiarity of most of the Bohemians. From their own harsh and difficult language they switch off into English which betrays but little trace of foreign accent." —

The statement about the Bohemians having been steadfast adherents of the Church of Rome may be considered as a serious lapsus calami, because it is not borne out by history. The Bohemians were in fact a protestant nation from the burning at the stake of their famous reformers John Huss and Jerome of Prague (in the years 1415 and 1416) until the period of the Thirty Years' war, which took its start in Bohemia. Concerning the allusion to the character of the Bohemian language it may be stated as a well known experience, that nearly every language appears "harsh and difficult" to a person who is perfectly ignorant of the same and very rarely hears it spoken. Time and again have I heard, on the European continent, the English language characterized as "harsh and difficult", whereas in fact, English is a language not only full of melody as well as power, but probably the easiest of all European tongues to learn.



PART I.

SECTION 1.

General observations.

In the Bohemian language Roman characters are used in writing and printing.

In order to read Bohemian it is first necessary to be well acquainted with the sounds, represented by the different letters of the Bohemian alphabet.

In attempting to read English while giving the letters the customary Bohemian sounds, we should find most English words difficult to pronounce and a large proportion of them simply unpronounceable.

The same is true if we attempt to read Bohemian while giving the letters their English sounds.

This explains why English-speaking persons, entirely ignorant of any language but their own and supposing that the letters of the alphabet always retain their English sounds, find so many "jawbreakers" in trying to pronounce Bohemian or other foreign words. Foreign persons, ignorant of English, find themselves "in the same boat", when trying to pronounce English words, and their difficulty is even much greater on account of the complicated character of English orthography.

SECTION 2.

The Bohemian alphabet.

The alphabet of the Bohemian language consists of 26 letters, the same as the English, if accented letters, being simply a modification of the original sounds, are not counted; but, counting all the accented letters separately, we find 41 letters in the Bohemian alphabet.

The following table gives the complete alphabet of the Bohemian language, with the English equivalents as near as possible. Capital letters, of course, correspond with the small letters, accented or unaccented.

THE ALPHABET.

a	has the sound of <i>o</i> in <i>done</i> .
á	“ “ “ “ <i>a</i> in <i>arm</i> .
b	“ “ “ “ <i>b</i> .
c	“ “ “ “ <i>ts</i> .
č	“ “ “ “ <i>ch</i> in <i>child</i> .
d	“ “ “ “ <i>d</i> ; it takes the sound of <i>d'</i> when followed by the soft vowels <i>ě</i> , <i>i</i> or <i>í</i> .
ď	“ “ “ “ <i>di</i> in the French word <i>diable</i> . This mellow sound of <i>d</i> , imperfectly rendered by <i>dy</i> , is ordinarily heard in the English expressions <i>would you</i> , <i>could you</i> , when rapidly uttered, so that the terminal <i>d</i> and initial <i>y</i> are fused into one sound.
e	“ “ “ “ <i>e</i> in <i>end</i> .
é	“ “ “ “ <i>e</i> in <i>ere</i> , or <i>ai</i> in <i>air</i> .
ě	“ “ “ “ <i>ea</i> in <i>beatitude</i> , or <i>ye</i> in <i>yes</i> ; when it occurs directly after <i>d</i> , <i>n</i> , <i>t</i> , these letters take the soft sound of <i>d'</i> , <i>ñ</i> , <i>t'</i> , and <i>ě</i> sounds like <i>e</i> . The syllable <i>je</i> , <i>ye</i> , is an equivalent for <i>ě</i> .
f	“ “ “ “ <i>f</i> .
g	“ “ “ “ <i>g</i> in <i>great</i> ; it occurs only in foreign words.
h	“ “ “ “ <i>h</i> in <i>ham</i> .
ch	“ “ “ “ <i>ch</i> in German and Dutch, also in Welsh, or <i>x</i> in Greek, — somewhat like <i>kh</i> .
i	“ “ “ “ <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i> .
í	“ “ “ “ <i>i</i> in <i>pique</i> , or <i>ee</i> in <i>seen</i> .
j	“ “ “ “ <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i> .
k	“ “ “ “ <i>k</i> in <i>sink</i> , without an aspirate.
l	“ “ “ “ <i>l</i> .

m	“	“	“	“	<i>m.</i>
n	“	“	“	“	<i>n.</i>
ñ	“	“	“	“	<i>ñ</i> in Spanish (<i>cañon</i>) or <i>gn</i> in French (<i>campagne</i>); imperfectly rendered by <i>ny</i> .
o	“	“	“	“	<i>o</i> in <i>obey</i> .
ó	“	“	“	“	<i>ó</i> in <i>lord</i> .
p	“	“	“	“	<i>p.</i>
q	“	“	“	“	<i>q</i> in <i>question</i> ; it occurs only in foreign words.
r	“	“	“	“	<i>r</i> in <i>rest</i> ; it has a sharp, trilling sound.
ř	“	“	“	“	<i>rsh</i> (or <i>rzh</i> , as the Imperial Dictionary of the English Language has it); it is a sound proper to the Bohemian and Polish languages, which must be heard in order to be acquired correctly; the same may be said of the English sound of <i>th</i> , hard and soft.
s	“	“	“	“	<i>s</i> in <i>sink</i> .
š	“	“	“	“	<i>sh.</i>
t	“	“	“	“	<i>t</i> in <i>test</i> ; it takes the sound of <i>t'</i> when followed by <i>č</i> , <i>i</i> or <i>í</i> .
t	“	“	“	“	<i>t</i> in the French word <i>tiens</i> , as commonly pronounced. This mellow sound of <i>t</i> , imperfectly rendered by <i>ty</i> , is also heard in the English expressions <i>wouldn't you</i> , <i>couldn't you</i> , when rapidly uttered, so that the terminal <i>t</i> and initial <i>y</i> are fused into one sound.
u	“	“	“	“	<i>u</i> in <i>push</i> .
ú	“	“	“	“	<i>u</i> in <i>rude</i> , or <i>oo</i> in <i>pool</i> .
û	“	“	“	“	
v	“	“	“	“	<i>v.</i>
x	“	“	“	“	<i>x</i> in <i>expect</i> .
y	“	“	“	“	<i>y</i> in <i>lynch</i> .
ý	“	“	“	“	<i>i</i> in <i>pique</i> , or <i>ee</i> in <i>seen</i> .
z	“	“	“	“	<i>z</i> in <i>zeal</i> .
ž	“	“	“	“	<i>z</i> in <i>azure</i> , or <i>s</i> in <i>pleasure</i> .

The beginner must try to master thoroughly the peculiar sound of every accented letter in the Bohemian alphabet, before proceeding with his lessons. However, it is evident that of all the accented letters only four will present a certain difficulty: **ď**, **ň**, **ť** and **ř**. The rest are simple. Among the plain consonants, the peculiar sound of **ch** must be well practiced; the combination **kh** gives it only imperfectly.

SECTION 3.

Names of the letters.

The names of the letters of the Bohemian alphabet, though of little consequence to the beginner, are given in the following table as near as can be. However, the Bohemian sounds of the letters, as explained in the foregoing section, must be well kept in mind, in order to name the letters correctly.

For instance: **b** is called *bé*, to be pronounced like *beh*, the *e* sounding like *e* in *ere*, **ai** in *air*, or **a** in *fare*, the final *h* being mute and serving only as a lengthening mark.

Two of the accents (*á*, *û*), whenever they occur, signify only a prolongation of the sound; the quality of the other accents has been explained in the foregoing section.

In spelling a word, the vowels with a long accent (*á*, *é*, *í*, *ú*, *ý*) are called *long a*, *long e*, etc.; also, **a** with a comma, *e* with a comma, and so forth; *û* is called *u* with a ring.

THE LETTERS NAMED.

a, á	<i>á (ah)</i>	ch	<i>khá</i>	ř	<i>ersh</i>
b	<i>bé</i>	i, í	<i>ee (in bee)</i>	s	<i>ess</i>
c	<i>tsé</i>	j	<i>yé</i>	š	<i>esh</i>
č	<i>ché</i>	k	<i>ká</i>	t	<i>té</i>
d	<i>dé</i>	l	<i>el</i>	ť	<i>ťé</i>

ď	<i>ďé</i>	m	<i>em</i>	u, ú, ů	<i>oo</i>
e, é	<i>é (eh)</i>	n	<i>en</i>		(in boom)
ě	<i>iyé</i>	ň	<i>eň</i>	v	<i>vé</i>
f	<i>ef</i>	o, ó	<i>ó (oh)</i>	x	<i>ix</i>
g	<i>gé</i>	p	<i>pé</i>	y, ý	<i>ee or ypsilon</i>
	(like g in go)	q	<i>koo</i>	z	<i>zet</i>
h	<i>há</i>	r	<i>er</i>	ž	<i>žet</i>

SECTION 4.

Bohemian pronunciation.

After mastering the sounds of the Bohemian letters, the learner may be said to have fully conquered Bohemian pronunciation.

There is in fact only one rule: *Pronounce as it is written, sounding every letter*, — of course, giving the letters their proper Bohemian, and not their English sounds.

The English, French and German written languages abound with silent letters; the Bohemian language has practically none, that is, extremely few. Such as there are, will be pointed out in the course of the following lessons.

It is a well known rule in English, that there can be no written syllable without a vowel. In Bohemian we sometimes encounter syllables made up of consonants without any vowel.

“How in the world can you pronounce that?”

Not infrequently have we heard such a question from persons, having no idea of any language but their own.

But it is just as easy to pronounce such syllables in Bohemian, as it is in English to give utterance to syllables with a mute vowel. An example will elucidate it:

Trn means *thorn*. This word is evidently of the same derivation in both languages.

Now, the Bohemian word **trn** being composed of three consonants and no vowel, how is it pronounced?

In the same way, as the second syllable of the English words *bit-tern*, *slattern*, where the vowel *e* is silent. We hear in that second syllable only the sounds of *t-r-n*, the sound of the vowel *e* disappearing entirely: and this explains exactly the pronunciation of Bohemian words of one syllable, or syllables, without a vowel. Syllables with silent vowels abound in English as well as in German,—not quite so in French;—and they are constantly pronounced with the same ease, as the syllables having no vowel sounds in Bohemian.

It is to be observed that such syllables **always** contain one of the two consonants **l** and **r** which are sometimes called “half-vowels”, because in such cases they almost take the place of vowels. In a prolongation of the sound we hear in Bohemian somewhat indistinctly the vowel **e** before the proper sound of those consonants, as if we wrote and partially pronounced:

t^ern instead of **trn** (thorn)

r^elk „ „ **vlk** (wolf)

The number of monosyllabic words without a vowel is not large; but syllables consisting of two or three consonants occur quite often.

For instance: **trčeti**, **strčeti**, means in English *to stick out*, *to push*. Each of these words is composed of three syllables: **tr-če-ti**, **str-či-ti**; and the first syllable of each contains only consonants: **tr**, **str**.

How are they pronounced?

Just like *ter* and *ster* in the English words *bitter*, *blister*. Nobody finds any difficulty in passing over the silent *e* and saying *bittr*, *blistr*.

Among the Bohemian vowels there are some, which are called *soft*, namely: **e**, **ě**, **i**, **í**; and others (**a**, **o**, **u**, **y**) which are called *hard* or *broad*.

Of the soft vowels the last three, **ě**, **i** and **í**, have a softening influence upon some preceding consonants, particularly **n**, **d**, **t**, which they change into the soft sounds of **ň**, **d'**, **t'**, as noticed in section 1. For instance:

saně	(sleigh)	is pronounced as if spelt	sañe;
paní	(mistress, lady)	is pronounced as if spelt	pañi;
dělo	(cannon)	sounds like	d'elo;
dílo	(work).....		d'ilo;
tělo	(body)		t'elo;
tisk	(printing)		t'isk;

This will always be plainly indicated in the pronouncing columns of the practical lessons contained in Part II.

Care must be taken to give every long vowel (**á, é, í, ý, ó, ú, ů**) its proper *long* sound, because a shortened sound would often make the word unintelligible or change its meaning, the same as in English in numerous cases. For instance :

pata means *heel*; **pátá** means the *fifth* (in the feminine gender). The only difference is in the length of the vowels. Likewise in English : **lid** and **lead** have the same vowel sound, the only difference being in its length or quantity. —

We have said all it is necessary to say about Bohemian pronunciation and in closing we again enjoin the only rule, which obtains in Bohemian with very few exceptions : Pronounce as it is written, — giving every letter its proper Bohemian sound.

SECTION 5.

Parts of speech.

In Bohemian the parts of speech or classes of words are the same as in English, excepting the article.

In English we have the definite article *the* and the indefinite article *a, an*. (In French, masculine, feminine, *le, la, — un, une* ; in German, masculine, feminine and neutre, *der, die, das, — ein, eine, ein*.)

In Bohemian there is no article, definite or indefinite. In this regard, Bohemian agrees with Latin.

We say in English : *the house, the houses, a house* ; in Bohemian *dům, domy, dům*.

SECTION 6.

Gender.

But, having no article, the Bohemian noun suffers nevertheless from the useless infliction of grammatical gender in the same degree as the German, Latin and Greek. It has three genders, namely : masculine, feminine and neutre.

The English language has rejected all distinction of gender, attributing sex to living beings only, which is one of the greatest advantages the English language has over all other European tongues, ancient and modern.

In the absence of an article in Bohemian, if we want to designate the gender of a noun, we use the indicative pronoun *this* or *that*, namely : **ten** for the masculine, **ta** for the feminine and **to** for the neutre gender. Hence we say :

ten dům	<i>this (or that) house</i>
ta bouda	<i>this (or that) hut</i>
to okno	<i>this (or that) window</i>

In the plural it is **ti** for living masculine beings :

ti muži, *these (or those) men*;

ty for inanimate masculine things and for the feminine gender : **ta** for the neutre :

ty domy, *these or those houses* ;

ty boudy, *these or those huts* ;

ta okna, *these or those windows*.

However, in colloquial parlance, **ty** is heard in the plural regardless of gender. —

Always remember, that the article has no existence in Bohemian ; and that the words **ten, ta, to, — ti, ty, ta**, when used before a noun, are simply indicative pronouns and nothing else.

SECTION 7.

Grammatical rules in general.

Bohemian is one of the highly inflected languages, like German or the classic tongues, which is doubtless a disadvantage, to be deplored especially from the standpoint of the learner. On account mainly of the useless distinction of gender, which permeates the whole structure of the Bohemian language, grammatical forms and rules are numerous, forming the principal difficulty encountered in the study of the language.

But to some extent, at least, that difficulty is offset by colloquial usage, which largely disregards the artificial distinction of gender in the employment of pronouns, adjectives and verbs, as they relate to nouns of different gender. This serves to simplify the matter somewhat for the learner of Bohemian as commonly spoken.

In the following lessons we try to imitate the natural method of learning a language. We do not teach the child grammatical rules and complications before it knows how to speak. We teach it words and their connection in phrases, expressing thoughts.

Consequently we do not intend to cram the beginner at the outset with all sorts of grammatical rules. There are not thousands but millions of people using the Bohemian language and knowing little of the rules and perplexities of its grammar. The same is true of every other living tongue.

This Course being designed solely for practical purposes, it will be our aim to impart to the learner some practical knowledge of the language in the easiest, most natural and most direct way possible. We shall therefore interpolate in the following lessons only such grammatical rules, as

may appear to be indispensable to facilitate the student's progress and which may easily be mastered *en passant*, or, so to say, by a method of easy induction.

A more extended and methodical review of the Bohemian grammar will be found in the last part of this book. After acquiring to a certain degree a practical knowledge of the language, the learner will find it much easier to grapple with the details of its grammar, which in the beginning would serve only to perplex him unnecessarily and to dampen his ardor. And when a moderate knowledge of the tongue is attained, the progressive student will naturally take a Dictionary of the English and Bohemian languages to his aid, which will make further progress rapid and pleasing.

The main difficulty is in the start, as in every other language. It requires earnestness of purpose and perseverance. The beginner must not allow himself to be discouraged by such initial difficulties, as he is sure to meet with; and whenever the pronunciation of an accented letter or a word, as given in this book, seems to be a stumbling-block, we would advise him to ask some neighbor or acquaintance, who speaks Bohemian, to pronounce it for him repeatedly, so that his ear may grow accustomed to the sound and the same may become quite familiar to him. If he fails to catch it forthwith, let him try again and again, until he succeeds. Let him remember, that the thousands of Bohemians who learn English find similar difficulties in their way; and numbers of those, who at first felt discouraged, thinking they could never master the intricacies of the English tongue, to-day speak and write it tolerably well, — many of them with fluency and grace.

SECTION 8

The accent.

In the Bohemian language the accent is always placed upon the first syllable; consequently its rules, which in English have to be closely studied, do not offer any difficulty whatever. Only when a noun is preceded by a preposition of one syllable, the accent is transferred and placed upon that preposition.

SECTION 9.

Ty and **vy**, — *thou* and *you*.

The personal pronoun **ty** of the second person singular is used in Bohemian in family circles, and in addressing familiar or intimate friends. It expresses endearment, familiarity or close friendship.

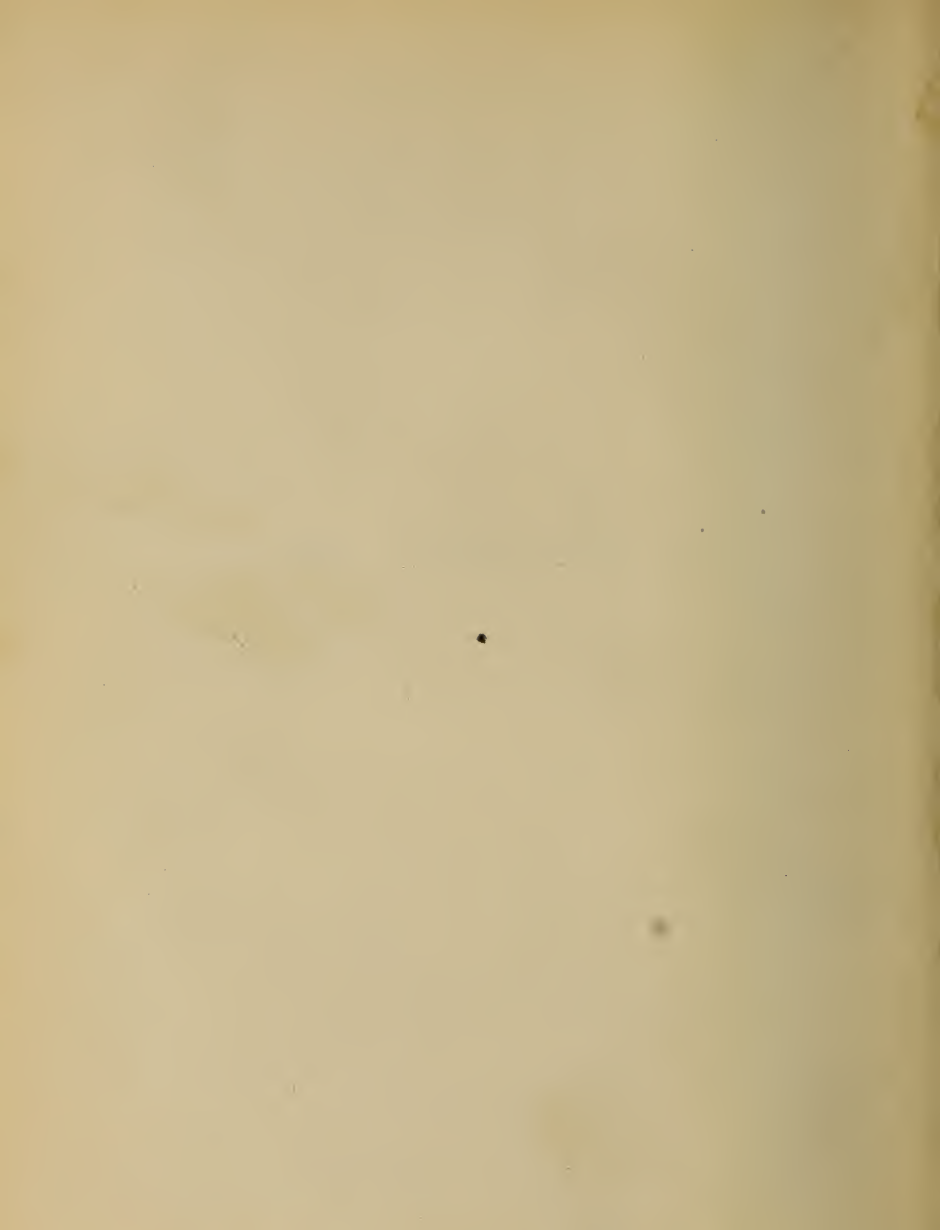
But among the Bohemians in America it is very often improperly employed instead of **vy** (*you*) in addressing others, which latter word in Bohemian has the same general usage as in English. By a curious mistake most of the original Bohemian settlers in America, like many of the Germans, translated the English *you* by **ty**, fancying the meaning to be identical and supposing that in English the second person singular is used in addressing another person, instead of the second person *plural*, as is the proper custom in Bohemian. But the rule in ordinary discourse is almost the same in English as in Bohemian, the second person plural (*you*, **vy**) being employed in addressing others and always combined with a plural verb, there being only a few exceptions in Bohemian as stated above. The French language follows exactly the same rule as the Bohemian; but in German discourse the third person plural is used in speaking to another (**Sie**, *they*).

This explanation, though somewhat lengthy, has been deemed necessary at the outset.

SECTION 10.

In vulgar language, the sound of the consonant **v** is often improperly placed before the initial vowel **o**, so that for instance, in place of a pure **on**, **ona**, **ono** (he, she, it) we hear **von**, **vona**, **vono**. It is something similar to the vulgar English custom to place the sound of **h** before an initial vowel: *H'englishman*, *h'eye-tooth*, instead of Englishman, eye-tooth.

PART II.



Rules of pronunciation.

The following rules must constantly be kept in mind :

1—The Bohemian pronunciation in the following lessons is always given in *italics*.

2—We proceed upon the supposition that section 2, part I, explaining the sounds of all the Bohemian letters, and particularly the sounds of accented vowels, has been fully digested by the beginner.

3—Consequently we do not attempt, in the following lessons, to give English equivalents for the long vowels **á** and **é**, which are of very frequent occurrence, because it would be a useless complication. For the long vowels **í** and **ý**, whose sound is identical, the English *ee* as heard in *seen* will have to answer. But it is to be observed that in ordinary Bohemian discourse the sound of **ý** is frequently (in fact, nearly always) changed into **ej**, i. e. *ey* as heard in *they*, *obey*. The word **sýr** (cheese), for instance, is properly pronounced *seer*, but commonly *seyr*.

4—The sound of the Bohemian short vowels **a**, **e**, **o**, is represented by *ā*, *ē*, *ō*; but the marked characters *ǎ*, *ě*, *ǒ* are avoided when their use appears to be superfluous. For instance the pronunciation of words like **tento** (this one), **pense** (pension), **ponor** (draught of a ship) is sufficiently indicated by *tentǒ*, *pensě*, *ponor*, to an English-speaking beginner; and it would be superfluous to write *těntǒ*, *pěnsě*, *pǒnǒr*.

5—The short sound of **i** is given by *i*, as heard in *pin*. When the long English sound of *i* (as heard in *dine*) is to be employed a full-face **i** or **I** will stand for it, — which however is of rare occurrence.

6 — Short **y** always retains its SHORT English sound as heard in the word **lynch**, and we use for it in the pronouncing column either *i* or *y*, as may be more appropriate. The combination **ej** will commonly be represented by *ey*, which must always be pronounced like *ey* in *they*, *whey*, *obey*.

7 — The short vowel **u** is represented by *ũ*, but frequently also by *oo*, where a slight lengthening of the sound is not only admissible, but conducive to a clear enunciation. Long **ú** and **ũ** are naturally always rendered by *oo*, as heard in *boot*.

8 — The vowel **ě**, when preceded by **d**, **n**, **t**, changes them into **ď**, **ň**, **ť**, and has then the sound of a simple **e**. When it retains its proper sound of **ě**, we commonly write it *ye* in the pronouncing column. The student must be careful always to sound it like *ye* in the English words *yes*, *yet*, *yell*, and NEVER like the word *ye*, meaning “you”. For instance : **mě**, **právě**, (me, just), *mye*, *právye* (*myě*, *právěě*).

The syllable **je** is identical in pronunciation with **ě**, and is also rendered by *ye*; for example : **jen** (only), *yen*. **Je** is generally used in common discourse as an abbreviation of **jest**, *gest* (is); to guard against possible mispronunciation, we will always write it *yě*.

9 — The sound of the soft consonants **ď**, **ň**, **ť** is represented by the combination *dy*, *ny*, *ty*, when practicable, which is rarely the case. Whenever this is found impracticable, or when it would only serve to obscure instead of facilitating matters, a full-face **ď**, **ň**, **ť** is used in the pronouncing column and the student must try his best to give it the proper Bohemian sound.

Inflexible rule : When the soft vowels **ě**, **i**, **í** follow after **d**, **n**, **t**, these consonants are softened into **ď**, **ň**, **ť**, and will be so marked.

10 — To represent the sound of **ch**, the combined letters *kh* are invariably employed, for want of a better substitute. The sound of **ř** is given by *rsh*, for the same reason.*)

*) The letter **ř** was unknown in the old Bohemian language and is wisely rejected by the Slovaks, who use the letter **r** in its place. In many cases also, where its use is insisted upon by strict and pedantic grammarians, it is avoided by the practical common sense of the people.

11 — For the letter *č* we use *ch* or *teh* as heard in *chap*, *wretch*; for *š* the English equivalent *sh* is used; for the Bohemian *j*, the letter *y* as heard in *yonder* is made to answer. A final *s* in Bohemian has always the sharp hissing sound and will be marked *ss*.

12 — For the sound of *ž* the Imperial Dictionary gives *zh* as a substitute; but we retain the full-face Bohemian *ž* in the pronouncing column, as nothing would be gained by such a substitution. It is always pronounced like *z* in *azure*, or *s* in *pleasure*. But in some cases, when terminating a word or a syllable, the letter *ž* takes the sharper sound of *sh* and will be so noted.

THE DIPHTHONG *ou*.

This is the only diphthong in the Bohemian language, and it must always be pronounced like *ou* in *dough*, or like the word *owe*, — never like *ou* in *pound* or *ghoul*. We shall commonly mark it *oŭ*.

ABBREVIATIONS

will be avoided as much as possible, and their meaning will in every case be self-evident. — The letters *m*, *f*, *n* beside a noun denote gender (masculine, feminine, neutre). — *Sing.* means singular number; *pl.* means plural number.

THE HYPHEN.

Syllables without a vowel — but always containing one of the so-called “semi-vowels” *l* and *r*, as before observed, — are separated from other syllables of the same word by a hyphen, to make their separate pronunciation apparent. For instance: **brzo** (soon), *br-zŏ*, — the syllable *br* being pronounced exactly like *bor* in the English words *labor*, *neighbor*.

However, a silent *e* will often be interpolated in such syllables, to elucidate their pronunciation; for instance: **prší**, *pershee*, it rains.

THE APOSTROPHE

will be used to prevent a collusion of two letters, into which an English-speaking beginner might easily be entrapped, and to keep them separate; as, for example: **měl jsem** (I had), pronounced *m'yell sēm*, — and not *my-ell sēm*.

LESSON I.

Já	yá	I	ona	ōnā	she
ty	ty	thou (<i>improperly</i> you)	ono	ōnō	it
on	ōn	he	ten, ta, to,	ten, tā, tō,	this, that

ty ty, that or those

tu, zde tū, zdě here

a, i ā, i and

ano, ne ānō, ně yes, no

za zā for; pŭl pool half

na nā on

Já mám,	yá mám,	I have or	on má,	ōn má,	he has or
mám	mám	I have got	má	má	he has got
mám ?	mám ?	have I ?	má ?	má ?	has he ?

ty máš,	ty másh,	thou hast or	ona má,	ōnā má,	she has or
máš	másh	thou hast got	má	má	she has got
		(<i>improperly</i> : you have)	ono má,	ōnō má,	it has or
máš	másh	hast thou? (have you?)	má	má	it has got

dollar, m.	dollár	dollar	účet, m.	oo-chet	bill, account
pŭl-dollar, m.	pool-d.	half-a-dollar	dluh, m.	dlooh	debt
cent, m.	tzent	cent	na dluh	nā-dlooh	on trust, on credit
peníze, pl.	peñeezě	money or cash	na účet	nā-oochet,	on trust, on credit
hotové	hōtové	cash	maso, n.	māsō	meat

chleb,	m.	<i>khleb</i>	} bread	pivo,	n.	<i>peerō</i>	beer
chleba		<i>khlebā</i>		vino,	n.	<i>reenō</i>	wine
sýr,	m.	<i>seer</i>	cheese	soda,	f.	<i>sodā</i>	soda
máslo,	n.	<i>máslo</i>	butter	voda,	f.	<i>vodā</i>	water

Note 1. Pronounce **má** like *ma'a*, the vulgar abbreviation of Mamma; and **mám** like *ma'am*, the vulgar abbreviation of Madam; it will assist in catching the true sound.

Note 2. In Bohemian, **míti** *meet'i* (to have), is not an auxiliary verb as in English, but always an independent verb.

Note 3. **Soda** is commonly used as an abbreviation of **sodovka**, soda-water. — In vulgar speech, the expression **jo**, *yō*, (from the German *ja*) is often heard instead of **ano**, *yēs*.

Note 4. The long vowel **ú**, *oo*, which occurs only at the beginning of a word or syllable, is often changed into **ou**, *oŏ*, and so pronounced. Hence we frequently hear **oučet**, *oŏchet*, instead of **účet**, *oochet*, and the like.

EXERCISES.

Já mám peníze, I have money.

Mám peníze, I have money.

Ty máš peníze, thou hast money
(sometimes *improperly* used for:
you have money. See Section 7,
Part I).

On má hotové, he has the cash.

Ona má chleba, she has bread (*or*
the bread).

Ona má dollar, she has a dollar.

Ona má cent, she has a cent.

Já mám účet, I have the bill.

Já mám dluh, I have a debt.

Ty máš dluh, thou hast (you have)
a debt.

On má dluh, he has a debt.

Já mám ten účet, I have the bill.

Mám ten účet? have I that bill?

Mám, I have.

Máš ten účet? hast thou (have
you) that bill?

Mám, I have.

Máš dollar? hast thou (have you)
a dollar?

Já mám půl-dollar, I have half-a-
dollar.

Máte peníze? have you money?

Má peníze? has he money?

Má on ty peníze? has he that money?

On má dollar, he has a dollar.

On má ten dollar, he has that dollar.

Ona má ty peníze, she has that money.

Ona má dluh, she has a debt.

Ona má zde účet, she has an account here.

Ona má ten účet, she has that bill.

Mám chleba, I have bread.

A já mám maso, and I have meat.

Máš chleba? hast thou (have you) bread?

Ano, mám; yes, I have.

Máš maso? hast thou (have you) meat?

Ne, no.

Mám chleba a maso, I have bread and meat.

A já mám pivo, and I have beer.

To pivo, that beer (*or* this beer).

To pivo a to víno, that beer and that wine.

Chleba za peníze } bread for cash
a pivo na dluh, } and beer on trust.

Maso za hotové } meat for cash and
a víno na účet } wine on account.

Má ten chleba } has he that bread
a to máslo? } and that butter?

Chleba i voda, bread and water.

Máslo a sýr, butter and cheese.

Note 5. *Gender of the nouns.* It will be observed that the nouns

dollar

účet

chleba

cent

dluh

sýr

are all of the masculine gender, and using the indicative pronoun we say: **ten dollar, ten cent,** etc.

Nouns terminating in consonants are mostly of the masculine gender.

The nouns **voda, soda,** are of the feminine gender: **ta voda, ta soda.**

Nouns terminating in a are always of the feminine gender.

But some feminine nouns also terminate in **ě** and in consonants; for instance **země,** earth (land, country); **kost,** bone; **daň,** tax.

The nouns **maso, máslo, pivo, víno,** are neutre: **to maso, to máslo,** etc.

Nouns terminating in o are always of the neutre gender.

But some neutre nouns have the termination **e**, **ě** or **í**; for instance **pole**, field: **doupě**, den: **osení**, crop.

Note 6. The noun **peníze** (money) is in the plural; the singular **peníz**, *peñeez*, means either "a coin" or "an amount".

LESSON II.

My	<i>me</i>	we	máme	<i>mámě</i>	we have
vy	<i>ry</i>	you	máte	<i>mátě</i>	you have
oni	<i>õñi</i>	they	mají	<i>mǎ-ye</i>	they have

Note 1. In the third person plural **oni** *õñi* (they) is used in the masculine gender for animate creatures; **ony**, *õny* (they) in the feminine gender, and in the masculine for inanimate things; **ona** *õnǎ* (they) in the neutre gender.

But in common discourse no such grammatical distinction is made and the masculine form **oni** is employed in all cases.

papír , m.	<i>pápeer</i>	paper	plac , m.	<i>plǎts</i>	place or
pero , n.	<i>perõ</i>	pen	místõ , n.	<i>meestõ</i>	room
inkoust , m.	<i>inkoõst</i>	ink	stůl , m.	<i>stool</i>	table
vůz , m.	<i>rooz</i>	wagon	senõ , n.	<i>sěñõ</i>	hay
biě , m.	<i>bitch</i>	whip	obilí , n.	<i>õbe-lee</i>	grain
pytel , m.	<i>pitěll</i>	sack	potah , m.	<i>potǎh</i>	team
čas , m.	<i>chǎss</i>	time			

tam	<i>tǎm</i>	there	dost	<i>dõst</i>	enough
jen, jenom,	<i>yen, yenõm</i>	only	každý	<i>kǎžďlee</i>	every one
		všichni,	<i>fshikhñi</i>		

EXERCISES.

My máme papír, we have paper.
 Máte pero? have you a pen?
 Ano, mám; yes, I have.
 Máte inkoust? have you ink?
 Mám, I have.
 Máte peníze? have you money?
 Zde máte plac, here you have a place
 Tam máte místo, there you have a place.
 Zde má každý místo, here every one has a place.
 Tam mají všichni místo, there they all have a place.

Zde máte stůl, here you have a table.
 Máme vůz, we have a wagon.
 On má bič, he has a whip.
 Ona má pytel, she has a sack.
 Mají potah, they have a team.
 Oni mají obilí a seno, they have grain and hay.
 Mají obilí a seno? have they grain and hay?
 Mají jen seno, they have only hay.
 Oni mají jenom pytel, they have only a sack.
 Máme čas, we have time.

Note 2. As observed in *všichni* (all), when a word commences with the letter *v* followed by another *consonant*, the initial *v* takes the sharp sound of an *f*, whenever the facility of pronunciation naturally requires that modification of the sound.

LESSON III.

Kde	<i>gdě</i>	where	ne	<i>ně</i>	no, not
kdy	<i>gdy</i>	when	proč	<i>proč</i>	why
kdo	<i>gdě</i>	who	proto že	<i>proto že</i>	because
ted'	<i>ted'</i>	} now,	ani	<i>ani</i>	} no, not one, not even,
nyní	<i>nyňi</i>				
		at present			neither---nor
nemám	<i>nemám</i>	I have not, I have not got	nemáme	<i>nemámě</i>	we have not
nemáš	<i>nemáš</i>	thou hast (you have) not	nemáte	<i>nemátě</i>	you have not
nemá	<i>nemá</i>	he (she, it) has not	nemají	<i>nemájee</i>	they have not

Note 1. In the words **kde**, **kdy**, **kdo** the hard consonant **k** is pronounced like **g** in *go*. In **nemám**, **nemáš**, etc., *nem* has exactly the same sound as in the word *nemesis*.

Note 2. Negation is always expressed by the prefix **ne**.

EXERCISES.

Nemám peníze, I have no money.

Nemáš peníze? hast thou no money?

Nemáte peníze? have you no money?

Ne; no.

Proč nemá peníze? why has he (she, it) no money?

Proto že nemá obilí, because he has no grain.

Nemáme účet, we have no account.

Nemáte hotové? have you no cash?

Nemáte ani dollar? have you not even a dollar?

Nemá ani cent? has he not a cent?

Nemám ani dollar, I have not a dollar.

Nemá ani cent, he has not a cent.

Nemají ani chleb, ani máslo; they have neither bread nor butter.

Nemají chleba, ani máslo, ani sýr; they have no bread, no butter and no cheese.

Nemáme papír, pero, ani inkoust; we have no paper, no pen and no ink.

Nemáte plac? have you no place?

Zde nemáme místo, we have no place here.

Tam nemáme místo, we have no place there.

Máš čas? hast thou time?

Máte čas? { have you time?

Máte kdy? {

Nemám čas, { I have no time.

Nemám kdy, {

Ted' nemáme čas, we have no time now.

Nyní nemají čas, they have no time now.

Kdy máte čas? when have you time?

Kdy máme čas? when have we time?

Nyní; now.

Kdo má peníze? who has money?

Kdo má čas? who has time?

Kde máš peníze? where hast thou the money?

Kde máte peníze? where have you the money?

Kdo nemá peníze? who has no money?

Kdo má dluh? who has a debt?

Kde máte dluh? where have you a debt?

Proč nemáte hotové? why have you not the cash?

LESSON IV.

Co	<i>tsõ</i>	what	moc	<i>mõts</i>	} much, many
co to	<i>tsõ tõ</i>	what is it (that)	mnoho	<i>mnohõ</i>	
něco	<i>ñetsõ</i>	something	tuze	<i>toozě</i>	
nic	<i>ñits</i>	nothing	jak	<i>yăk</i>	
pranic	<i>prăñits</i>	nothing at all	tak	<i>tăk</i>	so

EXERCISES.

Já mám něco, I have something.

Já nemám nic. Nemám nic. I have nothing.

Já mám dollar, I have a dollar.

Nemám ani dollar, I have not even a dollar.

Nemám pranic, I have nothing at all.

Nemáš nic, thou hast nothing.

Nemáte nic, you have nothing.

Oni nemají nic, they have nothing.

Co to máš? what is it thou hast got?

Máš něco? hast thou anything?

Co to máte? what have you? (what is it you have? what have you got?)

Máte něco? have you anything?

Co to mají? what have they got?

Nemáte nic? have you nothing?

Nemáte pranic? have you nothing at all?

Tak vy nemáte nic, so you have nothing.

Nic nemám, I have nothing.

Pranic nemáme, we have nothing at all.

Pranic nemají, they have nothing at all.

Ani víno, ani pivo nemají; they have neither wine, nor beer.

Mám moc, I have much.

Máme mnoho, we have much.

Ty nemáš moc, thou hast not much.

Vy nemáte moc, you have not much.

Oni nemají mnoho, they have not much.

Jak moc? Jak mnoho? how much?

Tuze moc. Tuze mnoho; very much.

Ne moc. Ne mnoho; not much.

Ne tuze moc, not very much.

Ne tuze mnoho, „ „ „

Ne tak tuze moc, not so very much.

Máš dost? hast thou enough?

Máte dost? have you enough?

Ano, mám dost; yes, I have enough.

Nemám dost, I have not enough.

To je tuze mnoho, co máte; that is very much, what you have got.

LESSON V.

někdo	něgdě	somebody, some one	někde	něgdě	somewhere, anywhere
nikdo	nikde	nobody, no one	nikde	nikde	nowhere
žádný	žádně	nobody, no one	nikdy	nikdy	never
vždy	vždy	{ always, all the time, ever }	stále	stále	{ stále porád*) porshád
vždycky	vždy-tski*)		porád*)	porshád	
práce, f.	prátsě	work	co dělat	tsě d'elāt	to do.

EXERCISES.

Máte něco? have you something?

Máte někde něco? have you got something, anywhere?

Nemáme nikde nic, we have got nothing, nowhere.

Kdo má něco? who has something?

Žádný nic, nobody (has) anything.

Nikdo nemá nic, nobody has anything.

Nemáme žádný nic; nobody (none of us) has anything.

Nikdo nemá tuze moc, nobody has too much.

Nemám nikde nic, I have not anything anywhere.

Ty nemáš nikdy nic, thou never hast anything.

Vy nemáte nikdy nic, you never have anything.

Mám vždy (dycky) něco, I always have something.

Máte vždycky něco, you always have something.

Porád něco máte, you always have something.

Ty pořád něco máš, thou hast always something.

Stále něco máte, you always have something.

Neustále něco mají, they always have something.

Nemám pořád nic, I never have anything.

Stále nemá nic, he never has anything.

*) Colloquially **dycky**, *dit-ski*; **porád**, *porád*.

This is always one and the same sentence, the words fitting together at the pleasure of the speaker. But in English we are rigidly bound to a certain order: *nobody has much*. It would be impossible to transpose the words and say: *much has nobody; has nobody much*.

Of course, not every Bohemian sentence yields to transposition to the same extent, but nearly every one yields more or less. Let us take another illustration at random from the foregoing exercises:

Proto že mám moc práce, *because I have much work (much to do)* may be expressed as follows, without changing the sense:

proto že moc práce mám;

proto že práce moc mám;

proto že moc mám práce;

proto že práce mám moc.

In the English sentence no transposition is possible. What an immense help this freedom of transposition is, especially in poetry, will be apparent to the student.

LESSON VI.

Já jsem,	<i>yá sěm</i>	}	I am		ty jsi	<i>ty si</i>	}	thou art
jsem	<i>sěm</i>				jsi	<i>si</i>		

on jest,	<i>ňn yest;</i>	on je,	<i>ňn yě;</i>	jest, je	he is
ona „	<i>ňň „ ;</i>	ona „	<i>ňň „ ;</i>	„ „	she is
ono „	<i>ňň „ ;</i>	ono „	<i>ňň „ ;</i>	„ „	it is

My jsme,	<i>me smě</i>	}	we are		vy jste	<i>vee stě</i>	}	you are
jsme	<i>smě</i>				jste	<i>stě</i>		

oni (ony, ona) jsou,	<i>ňňi (ňny, ňň)</i>	<i>soň,</i>	}	they are
jsou	<i>soň</i>			

Note 1. The verb **býti**, *beet'i* (to be) is the only auxiliary verb in the Bohemian language.

Jsem, jsi, jsme, jste, jsou, as shown above, are pronounced : *sem, si, smě, stě, soŭ*. In spelling the initial **j** is also frequently omitted, even by some of the best writers : **sem, si, sme, ste, sou**.

dobrý, á, é	<i>dobree</i>	good	také, taky	<i>táke</i>	also, too;
špatný, á, é	<i>shpätnee</i>	bad	ale	<i>älě</i>	but
drahý, á, é	<i>dráhee</i>	dear	zde, tu, tady	<i>zdě, tŭ, táde</i>	here.
lacný, á, é	<i>lätsinee</i>	cheap			present;
čerstvý, á, é	<i>cherstvee</i>	fresh	teda	<i>tědä</i>	well then;
doma	<i>dömä</i>	at home	už, již	<i>ŭsh, yeež</i>	already

není něňi (colloquially : **nejní, neyňi**), he (she, it) is not
pravda právďä true, truth

EXERCISES.

Jsem zde,	I am here.	Ano, už jsou tu!	Yes, they are here already.
Zde jsem,	here I am.	Teda jsou všichni zde;	well, then they are all here.
Já jsem už zde,	I am here already.	Proč jsme zde?	why are we here? (what are we here for?)
Jsi zde?	art thou here?	Proč vy jste tu?	why are you here?
Už jsem tu,	I am here already.	A proč on tady je?	and why is he present?
Jste už tady?	are you already here?	Proč jsou ty zde?	why are those here?
Už jsme tady,	we are here already.		
My jsme už také zde,	we are also here already.		
Jsou už zde?	are they already here?		

Máme dobrý chleba, we have good bread.

Je ten chleba dobrý? is this bread good?

Ano, je dobrý; yes, it is good.

Ale je drahý, but it is dear.

My máme chleba doma, we have bread at home.

Je čerstvý? is it fresh?

Ano, ten chleba je čerstvý; yes, that bread is fresh.

Ale proč je tak drahý? but why is it so dear?

Není drahý, it is not dear.

Jest tuze drahý, it is very dear.

Vždyť (dyť) není drahý; but it is not dear.

Ale vždyť není drahý; why, it ain't dear at all.

Je laciný, it is cheap.

Je dost laciný, it is cheap enough.

Je tuze laciný, it is very cheap.

Ten sýr je dobrý, that cheese is good.

Ta voda je dobrá, that water is good.

Ano, je tuze dobrá; yes, it is very good.

Je čerstvá, it is fresh.

To pivo je taky dobré, that beer is also good.

Ano, to je pravda; yes, that is true.

Je čerstvé, it is fresh.

Ale ta soda není dobrá, but this soda-water is not good.

To víno je špatné, that wine is bad.

Proč není to víno také tak dobré? why is that wine not just as good?

My máme dobré víno, we have good wine.

Kde mají dobré pivo? where do they have (keep) good beer?

Zde všude, here everywhere.

Je to pravda? is it true?

Ano, to je pravda; yes, that is true.

Zde všude mají dobré pivo, here they everywhere have good beer.

Ale víno nemají dobré, but their wine is not good (*literally*: but wine they have not good).

Proč nemáte dobré víno? why have you not good wine?

Note 2. It will be observed that the termination of the adjectives *dobrý, drahý* etc. changes according to gender.

The masculine gender terminates in	ý
the feminine	á
the neutre	é

dobrý sýr (masc.), *dobree seer*, good cheese;

dobrá voda (fem.), *dobrá vŕďď*, good water;

dobré pivo (neut.) *dobré (eh) pivŕ*, good beer.

The feminine and neutre will always be indicated by placing **á**, **é** after the masculine adjective, as above.

In common conversation, however, the masculine termination is also used in the neutre gender: **dobrý pivo**; so that practically we hear only the two terminations **ý** and **á**: **dobrý, dobrá**.

Note 3. In ordinary speech the final **ý** of all adjectives in the masculine gender is pronounced *ey* (as in *they*), and such is in fact the prevalent custom in relation to the long letter **ý**, no matter where it occurs, as stated in the "Rules of Pronunciation". Hence we hear *dobrey, dráhey* in the masculine gender, instead of *dobree, dráhee*. This is the general colloquial usage, by no means confined to the uneducated classes. It has sprung up quite naturally because the sound of *ey* is not only easier, but also more euphonious than the sound of *ee*, in most such cases. Listening to the common conversation of Bohemians, the beginner will almost constantly hear the long **ý** pronounced *ey*.

LESSON VII.

Rád	<i>rád</i>	glad	nemíti rád	<i>nemeeti rád</i> , (<i>nemeet</i>
nerad	<i>nerád</i>	sorry		<i>rád</i>), to dislike
rádi	<i>rádi</i>	} (the same in plural)	býti rád	<i>beeti rád</i> , (<i>beet rád</i>), to
neradi	<i>neradi</i>			be glad
míti rád	<i>meeti rád</i> (<i>meet rád</i>)		býti nerad	<i>beeti nerád</i> (<i>beet nerád</i>),
	to like			to be sorry
vždyť	<i>vždyť</i>	} but, well, yet	veliký, á, é	<i>velikee</i> } large,
dyť (colloquial)	<i>dyť</i>		velký	<i>velkee</i> } great, big
tak	<i>ták</i>	so, such	malý, á, é	<i>málee</i> small, little
také tak	} <i>tákě</i> <i>ták</i> }	just so,	dlohý, á, é	<i>dloŭhře</i> long
taky tak		just as	krátký, á, é	<i>krátkee</i> short
všude	<i>fshudě</i>	} every-	pravý, á, é	<i>právee</i> right, genuine
všade	<i>fshadě</i>		falešný, á, é	<i>fáleshnee</i> false
všudy	<i>fshude</i>	} where	plný, á, é	<i>pl-nee</i> full
			prázny, á, é	<i>práznee</i> empty

i	e	oh, well	nebo	něbď	or
že	žě	that	jako	yăkď	as, like
že je	žě yě	that he (she, it) is	skoro	skorď	almost
zase	ză-sě	}	tomu	tďmď	of it
zas	zăss		žádné	žădné	none
opět	op-yet		dlužen	dloožen	indebted

EXERCISES.

Já jsem rád, I am glad.

To sem rád! I am so glad!

Tuže rád! very glad!

Jsmě tomu rádi, we are glad of it.

Tuže jsme tomu rádi, we are very glad of it.

Oni jsou tomu moc rádi, they are very glad of it.

Jsi rád nebo ne? art thou glad or not?

Jste tomu rádi? are you glad of it?

Máte to rád? (speaking to one person) do you like it?

Máte to rádi? (speaking to more than one person) do you like it?

Nemám to rád, I do not like it.

Nic to nemám rád, I do not like it at all.

Nemají to rádi. Oni to nemají rádi. They do not like it.

Jsem rád že mám peníze; I am glad (that) I have money.

Ten dollar je falešný; that dollar is false.

Není, je pravý; no, it is genuine.

Já mám vždycky dobré peníze, I have always good money.

Máte vůz plný? have you a full wagon (is your wagon full)?

Vůz není plný, the wagon is not full.

On je skoro prázdný, it is almost empty.

On je rád že má prázdný vůz; he is glad that he has an empty wagon.

Já mám dluh, I have a debt.

Mám jen malý dluh, I have only a small debt.

Ale ty máš (vy máte) velký dluh; but thou hast (you have) a big debt.

Mám také tak velký dluh jako vy; I have just as large a debt as you.

Vždyť máte peníze! but you have money!

I nemám žádné; oh, I have none (well, I have none).

On je všude dlužen, he is indebted everywhere (he owes everybody).

Už zase máme peníze, again we have (some) money.

Ale vy zas už nemáte peníze, but you again have no money.

Já sem tuze rád, že mám peníze! I am very glad that I have money!

On je tuze nerad, že je dlužen; he is very sorry, that he is in debt.

Proč je dlužen? why is he in debt?

Proto že nemá peníze, because he has no money.

Vždyť (dyť) on nemá skoro žádný dluh; well, he has almost no debt (is almost out of debt).

To je pravda, that is true.

On není dlužen, he is not in debt.

Mám velký dluh, nebo malý? have I a large debt or a small one?

Tu jest účet, here is the bill.

To není dlouhý účet, that is not a long bill.

Je jenom krátký, it is only short.

Ano, velmi krátký; yes, very short.

Máte jen tak malý účet? have you only such a small bill?

Nemám rád velký účet, I do not like to have a large account.

Je velký dost, it is large enough.

Nemám mnoho, I have not much.

To je nic, that is nothing.

To je jako nic, that is like nothing.

To že je nic? this you call nothing

(literally: that this is nothing)?

Oni jsou rádi, že tam není žádný dluh; they are glad, that there is not any debt there.

I je tam dluh, ale malý; well, there is a debt there, but a small one.

Pravda, jenom malý: true, only a small one.

Ano, tak to je; yes, it is so.

Ne, tak to není; no, it is not so.

Účet je pravý, the bill is right.

Ten účet není pravý, that bill is not right.

Je falešný, it is false.

A proč? and why?

Proto že je! because it is!

LESSON VIII.

Nejsem *neysem* I am not

není *neyňi* he (she, it) is not

nejsi *neysi* thou art not

nejsmě *neysmě* we are not

nejste *neystě* you are not

nejsou *neysou* they are not

Note. Always pronounce *ney*, in the pronouncing column, like the English word *neigh*.

sám (masc.) *sám*
sama (fem.) *sámā*
samo (neut.) *sāmō*
samoten (tna, tno) }

alone; him-
 self, herself
 itself

dnes *dness* to-day

právě *práv'yě* } just;

zrovna *zrōvnā* } this moment

otec	<i>otěts</i>	father	strýc	<i>streets, streyts</i>	uncle
matka	<i>mātkā</i>	mother	teta	<i>těťā</i>	aunt
bratr	<i>brā-tr</i>	brother	hoch	<i>hōkh</i>	} boy
sestra	<i>sest-rā</i>	sister	chlapeč	<i>khlapets</i>	
syn	<i>syn</i>	son	holka	<i>holkā</i>	} girl
dcera	<i>tsērā</i>	daughter	děvče, n.	<i>d'efchě</i>	
	docela	<i>dotsělā</i>	all, quite		
	prýč	<i>pritch</i>	away, gone		
	i	<i>e</i>	both...and		

EXERCISES.

Nejsem rád, I am not glad.

Nejsem tomu rád, I do not like it.

Nejsi rád? art thou not glad?

Nejste rád? (addressing *one* person;)

nejste rádi? (addressing *more than one* person;) are you not glad?

Jsem sám, I am alone?

Docela sám? all alone?

Ano, docela samotén; yes, all alone.

Není otec doma? is father not at home?

Ne, on není doma; no, he is not at home.

Není žádný doma? is nobody at home?

Matka, ani bratr, ani sestra nejsou doma; neither mother, nor brother or sister are at home.

Kde jsou? where are they?

Prýč; gone.

Všichni jsou prýč? are they all gone?

Ano, všichni; yes, all of them.

Je strýc doma? is uncle at home?

Nebo teta? or aunt?

Jsou taky prýč; they are gone, too.

Ten hoch je tu sám; the boy (this, that boy) is here alone.

Ta holka je prýč; the girl (that girl) is gone.

To děvče je doma samotno, that girl is at home alone.

Proč tu není bratr? why is the brother (her brother) not here?

On není doma, on je prýč; he is not at home, he is gone.

Dcera není zde docela samotna, the daughter is not here all alone.

Matka je zde také; the mother (her mother) is here, too.

Je někdo doma? is somebody at home?

Není; no.

Dnes jsou všichni prýč, to-day they are all gone.

A kde jsou? and where are they?
 Někde pryč, somewhere away.
 Právě jsem tu sama (fem.); I am
 here just alone.

Proč jste tu samotna? (fem.) why
 are you here alone?

Protože otec i matka jsou pryč, be-
 cause both father and mother are
 gone.

LESSON IX.

Byl jsem *bill sěm* { I have
 (byla, f. *billā* „ } been;
 bylo, n.) *billō* „ } I was
 byl jsi *bill si* { thou hast
 (abbr.) byl's, m. *bill'ss* } been;
 „ byla's, f. *bill'āss* } thou wast
 byl (a, o) *bill (ā, ō)* { he (she, it)
 has been;
 he (she, it)
 was

byli jsme *billy smě* { we have
 (byly, f. } been;
 byla, n.) } we were

byli jste *billy stě* { you have been;
 you were

byli (y, a) *billy(y, ā)* { they have been;
 they were

Nebyl jsem *ně-bill* { I have not
sěm } been;
 I was not

Nebyli jsme *ně-billy* { we have not
smě } been;
 we were not

etc.

Kde jsem byl? *gdě* { where have I
sěm bill } been?
 where was I?

Kde jsme byli? *gdě* { where have we
smě billy? } been?
 where were we?

etc.

Míti, to have: mám, I have;

měl jsem,

měla jsem, f.

měli jsme,

m'yell sěm, }

m'yellā sěm, }

m'yelli smě, }

I have had; I had;

we have had; we had;

and so forth, using měl, měli in place of byl, byli.

Note 1. There is in Bohemian no such formal difference between the perfect and imperfect tense as in English: *I have been; I was.*

Note 2- There is a distinction of gender in the past tense, which does not exist in English. **I have been, I was,** is used in all cases. In Bohemian however, when a man speaks, he says: **byl jsem, bill sēm;** when a woman speaks, she says: **byla jsem, billā sēm.** And this rule covers every verb in the language. For instance, a man says :

jedl jsem,	<i>yěd'l sēm,</i>	I ate; I have eaten;
sedl jsem,	<i>sěd'l sem,</i>	I sat down; I have sat down;
šel jsem,	<i>shell sem,</i>	I went; I have gone;
šil jsem,	<i>shell sem,</i>	I sewed; I have sewn;
viděl jsem,	<i>viďel sem,</i>	I saw; I have seen.

A woman says :

jedla jsem,	<i>yědlā sēm;</i>	šla jsem,	<i>shlā sem;</i>
sedla jsem,	<i>sědlā sem;</i>	šila jsem,	<i>shillā sem;</i>
viděla jsem,		<i>viďelā sem.</i>	

In the third person of the past tense we say in English :

he was, he has been; she was, she has been; it was, it has been.

In Bohemian we must say : **on byl, ona byla, ono bylo,** according to gender. This rule holds good in the conjugation of every verb.

For instance :

Jedl, <i>yed'l,</i> he has eaten; he ate;	šel, <i>shell,</i> he has gone; he went;
jedla, <i>yedlā,</i> she has eaten; she ate;	šla, <i>shlā,</i> she has gone; she went;
jedlo, <i>yedlō,</i> it has eaten; it ate;	šlo, <i>shlō,</i> it has gone; it went.

In the *plural* number the distinction of sex is simply grammatical and perfectly useless; in the ordinary spoken language there is none whatever. In grammatical theory

byli jsme,	byli jste,	byli,	is masculine;
byly jsme,	byly jste,	byly,	is feminine;
byla jsme,	byla jste,	byla,	is neutre.

But in the living tongue, or at least in ordinary conversation, we hear in all three genders :

byli jsme, billi smě; byli jste, billi stě; byli, billi.

There is no difference of pronunciation between **byli** and **byly**; and this orthographical distinction as well as the form **byla** in the third person neutre are only maintained by the pedantry of theoretical grammarians, opposing changes which a living tongue has actually undergone and which always tend in the direction of practical simplicity. That artificial and useless distinction of gender is found in writing, but not in conversation.

Note 3. The form of the second person plural as given above (**byli jste, billi stě**) is of course used when several persons are meant or spoken to; but when employing **vy, you**, in addressing a single person, we leave the main verb in the singular, whereas in English it is put in the plural, as if several persons were addressed : **byl jste, bill stě**, you have been, you were, (meaning only one person). And so in all Bohemian verbs; for instance :

jedli jste, yed'li stě, you have eaten, you ate, (meaning several persons);
jedl jste, yed'l stě, you have eaten, you ate, (meaning one person, addressed **vy, you**).

Ráno	<i>ráně</i>	in the morning	včera	<i>fcherā</i>	yesterday
v poledne	<i>fpōledně</i>	at noon	včera večer	<i>fcherā věcher</i>	last evening; last night
večer	<i>věcher</i>	in the evening	zima	<i>zimā</i>	cold
venku	<i>venků</i>	outside, out of doors	oba	<i>obā</i>	both

EXERCISES.

Byl jsem doma,	I was at home.	Byl jsi doma ?	(abbreviated : byl's
Byl jsem stále doma,	I have been	doma?)	hast thou been at home?
at home all the time.			wast thou at home?

Ne, nebyl jsem doma; no, I was not at home.

Ale bratr byl doma, but brother was at home.

Kde jsi byl? (*abbreviated: kde's byl? gďess bil?*) where hast thou been? where wast thou?

Kde jste byl? Kde jste byla? (*fem.*) (*when addressing one person*) where have you been? where were you?

Byl jsem pryč, I was away.

Byla jsem pryč (*fem.*) I was away.

Byli jsme právě pryč, we were just gone.

Byli jsme všichni pryč, we were all gone; we have all been away.

Kde byl otec? where was father?

Byl venku, he was out of doors.

A matka? and mother?

Matka byla také pryč, mother also was gone.

Oba byli pryč, they were both gone.

Žádný nebyl doma, nobody was at home (*literally: nobody was not at home*).

Všichni byli pryč, all were gone.

Ráno byli jsme doma a v poledne pryč; in the morning we were at home and at noon we were gone.

Byli jste večer doma? (*addressing one person: byl jste večer doma?*)

Were you at home in the evening?

Nebyli jsme doma, we were not at home.

Nebyl jsem doma, I was not at home.

Proč jsi nebyl doma? why wast thou not at home?

Proč jste nebyl doma? why were you not at home?

Kdo byl doma? who was at home?

Bratr a sestra byli oba doma, brother and sister were both at home.

Proč nebyli venku? why were they not out of doors?

Proto že bylo zima, because it was cold.

Nebylo zima včera večer, it was not cold last evening.

Že nebylo? wasn't it?

Ba bylo! oh yes, it was!

Včera bylo zima, yesterday it was cold.

Nebylo tuze, it was not very.

LESSON X.

It will doubtless be self-evident to the student, that the past tense in the preceding lesson may at pleasure be connected with the personal pronoun, as is the rule in English.

(Instead of:)

byl jsem,	I have been
byl jsi,	thou hast been
byl, a, o,	he (she, it) has been
byli jsme,	we have been
byli jste,	you have been
byli, y, a,	he (she, it) has been

(we can say:)

já jsem byl,	yá sēm bill
ty jsi byl,	ty si bill
(abbrev. ty's byl, tyss bill)	
on (ona, ono) byl, a, o,	ōn bill
my jsme byli,	me smě billy
vy jste byli,	vee stě billy
oni byli,	ōñi billy

The sense is not changed thereby, only more emphasis is laid on the subject.

Then again, in the *first* person of the second form, both singular and plural, the auxiliary **jsem, jsme** is commonly left out.

(Instead of:)

(we say:)

já jsem byl,	yá sēm bill	já byl,	I have been; I was;
my jsme byli,	me smě billy	my byli,	we have been; we were;
já jsem měl,	yá sēm m'yell	já měl,	I have had; I had;
my jsme měli,	me smě m'yelli	my měli,	we have had; we had;
já jsem šel,	yá sēm shell	já šel,	I have gone; I went;
my jsme šli,	me smě shli	my šli,	we have gone; we went.

u mě	ūm'yě	by me,	with me,	at my house (or place)
u tebe	ūtěbě	by thee,	with thee,	at thy house
u něho	ūñehō	} by him,	with him,	at his house
u něj	ūñey			
u ní	ūñee	by her,	with her,	at her house
u nás	ūnáss	by us,	with us,	at our house
u vás	ūváss	by you,	with you,	at your house
u nich	ūñikh	by them,	with them,	at their house
rodiče	rod'ichě	parents	celý den	tsēlee den all day
domu	dōmū	home	až	āsh till, until
nic než	ñits nēsh	nothing but	pak	pāk then

EXERCISES.

Já byl doma, I was at home.

Byl jsem doma celý den, I was at home all day.

Byl jsem pořád doma, I have been at home all the time.

Byl otec doma? was father at home?

Ano, byl; yes, he was.

A kdy byl doma? and when was he at home?

Skoro celý den, nearly all day.

Já šel domu ráno, I went home in the morning

Kdy sestra šla domu? when did sister go home?

Ona šla domu večer, she went home in the evening.

Nešla domu až večer, she didn't go home till evening.

Byl strýc doma? was uncle at home?

Nebyl; he was not.

Byl's u něho? wast thou at his house?

Byl jste u něho? were you at his house?

Ano, byl jsem tam; yes, I was there.

Sestra byla zde, sister was here.

Byla u mě, she was at my house.

Byla také u vás? was she also at your house?

Byla tam v poledne, she was there at noon.

Teta u nás nebyla, aunt was not at our house.

Ale její hoch tam byl, but her boy was there.

My byli včera u ní, we were at her house yesterday.

Rodiče byli včera ráno doma, our parents were at home yesterday morning.

Pak šli pryč, then they went away.

A my jsme šli taky pryč, and we went away, too.

Byl někdo u nich? was anybody at their house?

Žádný u nich nebyl, nobody was at their house.

V poledne někdo tam byl, ale šel pryč; at noon somebody was there, but went away.

Já měl dnes maso a pivo, I had today meat and beer.

Sestra měla maso a chleba, sister had meat and bread.

Ten malý hoch neměl nic, that little boy had nothing.

Proč neměl nic? why did he have nothing?

Neměli jsme nic pro něho, we had nothing for him.

Byl zde ten chlapec? was that boy here?

Byl tu, he was here.
 Co měl? what did he have?
 Nic neměl; he had nothing.
 Byl zde pořád? has he been here all the time?
 Ano, byl tu stále; yes, he has been here all the time.
 Kdy šel pryč? when did he go away?
 Šel večer, he went in the evening.
 Šel sám? did he go alone?

Docela sám, all alone.
 Měli jste dnes víno? have you had wine to-day?
 Ne, my jsme měli pivo; no, we had beer.
 A co oni měli? and what did they have?
 Také pivo; beer, also.
 My neměli nic, we had nothing.
 Ale pranic! not a thing!

LESSON XI.

Budu	<i>bůdů</i>	{	I shall be	budeme	<i>bůdemě</i>	{	we shall be
			„ will „	budem	<i>bůdem</i>		„ will „
budeš	<i>bůdesh</i> ,		thou will be	budete	<i>bůdětě</i>		you will be
bude	<i>bůdě</i>		he (she, it) will be	budou	<i>bůdů</i>		they will be

nebudu *něbůdů*, I shall (will) not be; etc.

neb	<i>neb</i>	{	or	snad	<i>snād</i>		perhaps
nebo	<i>něbō</i>			sotva	<i>sōtvā</i>		hardly
brzo	<i>br-zō</i>	{	soon	zítra	<i>zeetrā</i>	{	to-morrow
brzy	<i>br-ze</i>			zejtra	<i>zeytrā</i>		
hned	<i>hned</i>		presently, right away	letos	<i>letōs</i>		this year
až	<i>āsh</i>	{	when	dobře	<i>dobrshě</i>	{	well, right, it is
když	<i>gdiž</i>				well, all right.		

dělati	<i>d'elā-ti</i>	to do	prodávati	<i>prodávā-ti</i>	to sell; to be
platiti	<i>plāti-ti</i>	to pay			selling;
kupovati	<i>kūpovā-ti</i>	to buy; to be	chtíti	<i>kh'tee-ti</i>	to want.
		buying;			

Note 1. English verbs in the infinitive have various endings : *to do, to pay, to sell, to speak, to converse, to understand, etc.*

Bohemian verbs invariably end in **ti**. However, in ordinary discourse the final **i** is nearly always dropped, and very often it is also omitted in spelling; the preceding **t** in such cases should indeed be written and pronounced **ṭ**; but it generally retains its common *hard* sound:

dělat	dělaṭ	to do	kupovat	kŭpovāt	to buy
platit	platiṭ	to pay	prodávat	prodávāt	to sell
	chtít	kh'tēet			to want.

Note 2. **Budu, budeš, etc.**, connected as an auxiliary with the infinitive of another verb forms the future tense of this verb :

budu dělati	{	I shall (will) do	bude kupovat	he will buy
„ dělat	{		budeme prodávat	we shall (will) buy
budeš platit		thou wilt pay	budete chtít	you will want
			budou chtít	they will want.

Zde jsem, here I am.

Už jste tu? are you here already?

Je zde taky bratr? is brother also here?

Není, ale bude tu hned; he is not, but he will be here presently.

To bude dobře, that will be all right.

Kdy zde bude otec? when will father be here ?

Dnes sotva, hardly to-day.

Snad zejtra, perhaps to-morrow.

Proč tu bude? why will he be here?

Kupovat obilí a seno, to buy grain and hay.

Budete mít letos víno? will you have wine this year?

Nebudeme mít žádné víno, we shall have no wine.

Co budou u vás prodávat? what will they sell at your place?

Nebudou nic prodávat, they will sell nothing.

Máte čerstvé*) máslo? have you fresh butter?

Dnes nemáme, to-day we have not.

Nemáme žádné, we have none.

Ale budeme mít zejtra, but we shall have (some) to-morrow.

*) See lesson VI, note 2.

Co budete dělat dnes večer? what
will you do this evening?

Nebudu dělat nic, I shall do nothing.

A proč? and why?

Nemám co dělat, I have nothing
to do.

Až bude zase práce, budu dělat;
when there will be work again, I
shall work.

LESSON XII.

Míti	<i>meet'i</i>	}	to have	chtíti	<i>kh'teet'i</i>	}	to want
mít ¹⁾	<i>meet</i>			chtít ¹⁾	<i>kh'teet</i>		

chei	<i>khtsi</i>	I want	chceme	<i>khtsěmě</i>	we want
chceš	<i>khtsěsh</i>	thou wantst	chcete	<i>khtsětě</i>	you want
chce	<i>khtsě</i>	he wants	chtějí	<i>kh'te-ye</i>	they want

chtěl jsem ²⁾	<i>kh'tel sěm</i>	I wanted	chtěli jsme	<i>kh'teli smě</i>	we wanted
--------------------------	-------------------	----------	-------------	--------------------	-----------

budu	chtíti ³⁾	<i>bŭdŭ</i>	<i>kh'teet'i</i>	}	I shall (will) want
,,	chtít	,,	<i>kh'teet</i>		

budeme	chtíti	<i>bŭděmě</i>	<i>kh'teet'i</i>	}	we shall (will) want.
,,	chtít	,,	<i>kh'teet</i>		

Note 1. Irregular verbs in the Bohemian language are far less numerous than in English. There is not a full dozen of them, whereas in English we find nearly two hundred. On the other hand, regular verbs have only one conjugation in English, whereas in Bohemian there are several conjugations, as we shall see in due time.

Chtíti and **míti** are irregular verbs.

1) See Lesson XI, Note 1.

2) See Lesson IX. **Chtěl** simply takes the place of **byl**.

3) See Lesson XI, Note 2.

Od	<i>od</i>	since, from	nůž	<i>noož</i>	knife
pro	<i>pro</i>	for	vidlička	<i>vidlichkă</i>	fork
více	<i>veetsě</i>	more	jídlo	<i>yeedlô</i>	{ something to eat; victuals; meal
ještě	<i>yesh-tě</i>	{ still, more, another	jíst (jísti)	<i>yeest</i>	to eat
trochu	<i>trokhŭ</i>	some, somewhat	krájet (i)	<i>kráyet</i>	to cut
spolu	<i>spôlŭ</i>	together	mluvit (i)	<i>mlăvît</i>	to speak
dlouho	<i>dloŭhō</i>	long	dát (i)	<i>dât</i>	to give
už dávno	<i>ŭsh dăvnō</i>	{ already long (a long time	dejte mi	<i>deytě me</i>	give me
		already)	kůň	<i>kŭň</i>	horse
na prodej	<i>nă prodey</i>	for sale	koně*)	<i>koňe</i>	{ of the horse; for the „
nový, á, é	<i>nŏvee</i>	new	ani	<i>ănĭ</i>	{ not one; not even; neither
starý, á, é,	<i>stăree</i>	old	asi	<i>ăssi</i>	about, probably
dříví	<i>drshee-vee</i>	wood	se, s	<i>sě</i>	with
stavivo	<i>stăvivō</i>	lumber	opravdu	<i>oprăvdŭ</i>	truly, really
míti hlad	<i>meet'i hlăd</i>	to be hungry	muž	<i>moož</i>	man

EXERCISES.

Máte peníze? have you money?

Mám asi dollar, I have about a dollar.

Nic více? nothing more?

Ani cent, not a cent.

Co s dollarem? what (can you do) with a dollar?

Aha, zde je ještě půl dolaru; ah, here is half a dollar more.

Bude to dost? will that be enough?

Sotva, hardly.

Ani to nebude dost, even that will not be enough.

Já mám hlad (literally: *I have hunger*), I am hungry.

Chei něco jíst, I want something to eat.

Máte nějaké jídlo? have you something to eat?

Tu máte maso, here you have (some) meat.

Dejte mi nůž, give me a knife.

Zde máte nůž a tu je vidlička; here you have a knife and here is a fork.

Nožem můžete dobře krájet, with the knife you can cut well.

Tu je kůň a vůz, here is a horse and a wagon.

Vy máte zde koně, you have a horse here.

*) The plural of the noun kůň is also koně, koňe (the horses).

Ano, jsem tu s koněm; yes, I am here with the horse.

To je dobrý kůň, that is a good horse.

Tuže dobrý; a také není na prodej; very good; and he is not for sale.

Máte nový vůz? have you a new wagon?

I ne; to je starý vůz; o no; that is an old wagon.

Ale jako nový; but (it looks) like a new one.

Opravdu? really?

Co máte na voze (ve voze)? what have you got in the wagon?

Dříví, wood.

Stavivo, lumber.

Trochu obilí je tam, some grain is in there.

Budete něco kupovati? will you buy something (will you make some purchases)?

Koně pro syna a vůz pro strýce, a horse for my son and a wagon for my uncle.

Chci dáti synovi dobrý potah, I want to give my son a good team.

Chtěl jsem to už dávno; I wanted (to do) it long ago.

On je zde se strýcem, he is here with uncle.

Jsou tu spolu, they are here together.

Jak dlouho jsou tu? how long are they here?

Od večera, since evening.

A jak dávno vy jste tu? and how long are you here?

Od poledne, since noon.

Tam ten muž má koně na prodej, that man there has a horse to sell.

Chečete vidět toho (těhō) muže? do you want to see that man.

Chci mluvit s tím (stím) mužem; I want to speak with that man.

Je na koni, he is on horseback.

Dobře že je tu s tím koněm; it is well he is here with that horse.

Je to velký kůň; it is a big horse.

Note 2. In the English language the noun remains nearly unchanged in all its relations, there being only a slight change in the genitive or possessive case: *brother, brother's* (of the brother); but this form of the possessive case is being more and more limited. The relations of one person or thing to another are expressed by separate words, called prepositions: *of a brother; to a brother; with a brother.*

In Bohemian these relations are expressed by changes in the termination of the noun, which process is called declension: *bratr, brother; —bratra, of a brother; bratru, to a brother; bratrem, with a brother.*

This is a heavy encumbrance which the Bohemian language shares with the German and Latin. The declension of the nouns is followed by that of the adjectives joined to the nouns, which are subject to corresponding changes in their terminations. Pronouns also have declensions, and these continue to exist even in the English tongue.

Note 3. The declension of Bohemian nouns varies according to their gender and the termination of their nominative; there is, besides, a slight variation between animate and inanimate nouns of the masculine gender.

The following table will bring before the student's eyes the different changes of the termination of Bohemian masculine nouns, in the singular, omitting the vocative case. A glance over the same now and then may assist him to become more rapidly familiar with the different endings and their signification in English; but only frequent use in common sentences during the further progress of these lessons will make them handy to him.

Inanimate nouns:

Dollar,	vůz	<i>dolár,</i>	<i>vooz</i>	the dollar, the wagon;
dollaru,	vozu	<i>dolárů,</i>	<i>vůžů</i>	of the dollar, the dollar's; of the wagon, the wagon's; (v dollaru, in the dollar; ve voze, in the wagon; etc.)
dollarem,	vozem	<i>dolárem,</i>	<i>vözem</i>	(or s dollarem, s vozem), with the dollar, with the wagon.

Animate nouns:

Syn,	muž	<i>syn,</i>	<i>moož</i>	the son, the man;
syna,	muže	<i>syně,</i>	<i>moožě</i>	{ of the son, the son's; of the man, the man's; also in the <i>accusative</i> : the son, the man);
synu,	muži	<i>syně,</i>	<i>mooži</i>	
—ovi,	—ovi	<i>synovi,</i>	<i>moožovi</i>	{ to the son, to the man; (v synu, v synovi, in the son; etc.)
synem,	mužem	<i>synem,</i>	<i>moožem</i>	(or se synem, s mužem), with the son, with the man.

Note 4. It will be observed that the letter **ň** in the nominative case of a monosyllable changes into **o** in the inflected cases :

vůz,	the wagon;	vozu, -e	of the wagon;
kůň,	the horse;	koně,	of the horse;
nůž,	the knife;	nože,	of the knife;

Nůž and similar nouns (masculine inanimate and ending in a soft consonant) are declined just like **muž**; only in the dative and locative case we cannot use the long form like **mužovi, v mužovi** (to the man, in the man), but must always employ only the short form: **noži, v noži, nůž, v nůž** (to the knife, in the knife); and the accusative agrees with the nominative: **nůž—nůž**.

Note 5. Prepositions consisting of a single consonant (**v, s, k**, simply abbreviations of **ve, se, ke**, — in, with, to) are always joined in pronunciation to the succeeding syllable; hence we write: **v synu, s koněm**; and pronounce: *vsynů* (or *fsinů*), *skoňem*; in the son, with the horse.

It may hardly be necessary to mention that the locative case does not always appear with the preposition **v** or **ve**, but employs also different other prepositions. For instance: **ve voze**, in the wagon; **na voze**, on the wagon; **o voze**, about the wagon.

LESSON XIII.

Museti	<i>mŭsetʹi</i> *)	} must, to have to	jíti	<i>yeeʹi</i>	} to go, to come.
	<i>mŭset</i>			<i>yeeʹ</i>	
musiti	<i>mŭsiʹi</i>				
musím	<i>mŭseem</i>	I must	jdu	<i>dŭ</i>	I go
musíš	<i>mŭseesh</i>	thou must	jdeš	<i>děsh</i>	thou goest
musí	<i>mŭsee</i>	he must	jde	<i>dě</i>	he goes
musíme	<i>mŭseemě</i>	we must	jdeme	<i>děmě</i>	we go
musíte	<i>mŭseetě</i>	you must	jdete	<i>dětě</i>	you go
musí	<i>mŭsee</i>	} they must	jdou	<i>doŭ</i>	they go
musí	<i>mŭsee</i>				
musejí	<i>mŭsě-yee</i>				

*) The letter **s** has the same sharp sound as in *must*.

muset platiti	to have to pay	šel	<i>shell</i>	he has gone;
budu museti	<i>bŭdŭ mŭset</i> , I shall have to; I shall be obliged.			he went
musel jsem	<i>mŭsell sĕm</i> I was obliged	pŭjdu	<i>pŭyďŭ</i> (colloquially <i>pŭďŭ</i>) I shall go	
musel	<i>mŭsell</i> he was obliged	pŭjdeš, pŭjde, pŭjdeme, pŭjdete, pŭjdou;	<i>pŭyďesh, pŭyďe, pŭyďemě, pŭyďetě, pŭyďou;</i> (colloquially: <i>pŭdesh, pŭďe, pŭďemě, pŭďetě, pŭďou;</i>)	
muset jíti	to have to go, to be obliged to go	jdi	<i>ďi</i>	go (thou)
šel jsem	<i>shell sĕm</i> I have gone; I went	jděte	<i>ďetě</i>	go (you)

Note 1. All Bohemian verbs in the infinitive (as stated in Lesson XI, Note 1) end in **ti**, which becomes a simple **t** in ordinary discourse :

dělati, to do, to make; **platiti**, to pay; **kupovati**, to buy, to be buying; **prodávati**, to sell, to be selling; **museti**, must.

Note 2. Leaving out **ti** and putting **l** in its place (**la** for the feminine, **lo** for the neutre gendre), we get the past tense of every regular verb, using the auxiliary **jsem, jsi** in the first and second person singular, **jme, jste** in first and second person plural, and changing **l** into **li** in the plural (feminine **ly**, neutre **la**, — of no account in ordinary conversation); in the third person singular and plural no auxiliary is used:

dělal	<i>d'elŭl</i>	he made;	he has made;
dělali	<i>d'elŭli</i>	they made;	they have made;
dělal jsem	<i>d'elŭl sem</i>	I made;	I have made;
dělal jsi	<i>d'elŭl si</i>	thou madest;	thou hast made;
dělali jsme	<i>d'elŭli smě</i>	we made;	we have made;
dělali jste	<i>d'elŭli stě</i>	you made;	you have made;
platil	<i>plŭtŭl</i>	he paid;	he has paid;
kupoval	<i>kŭpovŭl</i>	he was buying;	he has been buying;
prodával	<i>prodŭvŭl</i>	he was selling;	he has been selling;
musel	<i>mŭsell</i>	he had to;	he was obliged.

Ho	<i>hŏ</i>	him, it; of it;	žena	<i>ženā</i>	woman
ven	<i>ven</i>	} out	služka	<i>slūshkā</i>	servant girl
venku	<i>venkū</i>		země, f.	<i>zemýě</i>	land, earth
prý	<i>pree</i>	} they say;	snídaně, f.	<i>sñeedañe</i>	breakfast
(colloq. prej) prey			oběd, m.	<i>ob.yěd</i>	dinner
náš, m.	<i>nāsh</i>	our, ours	večeře, f.	<i>věchershě</i>	supper
naší, f.	<i>nāshee</i>	of our	košť, f.	<i>kōst</i>	bone
dobře	<i>dobrshě</i>	well; right	kus, m.	<i>kūss</i>	piece
tuze dobře	<i>toozě dobrshě</i>	very well	oděv, m.	<i>oďef</i>	clothing
časně	<i>chāssñe</i>	early	oblek, m.	<i>oblěk</i>	suit of clothes
nějaký, á, é	<i>ñeyākee</i>	} some	kabát, m.	<i>kābāt</i>	coat
(colloq. ňákej) ňákej	<i>ñākey</i>		kálhoty, pl.	<i>kālhoty</i>	pants
pohromadě	<i>pŏ-hromāďe</i>	} together	vesta, f.	<i>vestā</i>	vest
najednou	<i>nāyednoŭ</i>		klobouk, m.	<i>kloboŭk</i>	hat
dál	<i>dāl</i>	in, farther	boty, pl.	<i>bottý</i>	boots
ať	<i>āť</i>	} let him be, let her be, let it be	škoda	<i>shkōďā</i>	pity
po	<i>pŏ</i>		hotov, a, o	<i>hōtof</i>	ready
do	<i>dŏ</i>	to, before	ke	<i>kě</i>	to

podívat se	<i>poďeevāt se</i>	to take a look	dělati	<i>ďelāťi, ďelāt</i>	to make
spáti	<i>spāťi, spāt</i>	to sleep	myslím	<i>mýsleem</i>	I think
státi	<i>stāťi, stát</i>	to stand	koupiti	<i>koŭpīt</i>	to buy
čekati	<i>chekāťi, čekāt</i>	to wait	kupovati	<i>kŭpŏvāt</i>	to be buying
viděti	<i>viďetĭi, viďet</i>	to see	prodati	<i>prodāt</i>	to sell
divati se	<i>ďeevāt sě</i>	to look, to be looking	prodávati	<i>prodāvāt</i>	to be selling

EXERCISES.

Musím jít ven.	I must go out.	Kdo je venku?	Who is out of doors?
Půjdu se podívat ven.	I shall go and look out.	Nějaká žena je tam.	Some woman is there.
Je někdo venku?	Is somebody out of doors?	Co chce ta žena?	What does that woman want?

Chee viděti deern. She wants to see (her) daughter.

Je to matka naší služky. It is the mother of our servant girl.

Ať jde dál. Let her come in.

Proč nejde dál? Why doesn't she come in?

Chee něco jíst? Does she want anything to eat?

Dejte ženě jíst a pít. Give that woman to eat and to drink.

Maso na kosti a pivo. Meat on the bone and beer.

Až bude oběd. When dinner is (shall be) ready.

Bude zde spáti? Will she sleep here?

Já myslím. I think so.

Dobře teda. Very well, then.

Musí spáti se služkou. She must sleep with the servant girl.

Chei něco koupit. I want to buy something.

Chei si něco koupit. I want to buy me something.

Co si chcete koupit? What do you want to buy (yourself)?

Myslím že nějaký oděv. I think (that) some clothing.

Už jdu. I am going already.

Jdete taky? Are you going, too?

My taky jdeme. We are going, too.

Oni všichni jdou. They are all going.

Holka má mnoho práce. The girl has much to do.

Bude sotva do večera*) hotova. She will hardly be done before evening.

Myslím že bude s prací hotova. I think she will be done with the work.

Po večeri nemusí dělat nic. After supper she need not do anything.

Ať je večere brzy hotova. Let supper be soon ready.

Bude zde ta ženská ke snídani? Will that woman be here to breakfast?

Myslím že bude. I think (that) she will.

Budeme mítí snídani brzy ráno. We shall have breakfast soon in the morning.

Ano, časně ráno. Yes, early in the morning.

Kabát, kalhoty, vestu, klobouk. A coat, (a pair of) pants, a vest, a hat.

Snad také boty. Perhaps also (a pair of) boots.

Celý oblek. A whole suit.

Pravda, bude dobře koupit oblek. True, it will be well to buy a suit.

Myslím že sestra půjde taky. I think that sister will go, too.

Ano, půjde s tetou. Yes, she will go with auntie.

*) **Do večera**, instead of **do večeru**. — **Večer** has the same endings in the singular as the animate noun **syn**, excepting **-ovi** in the dative and locative.

Půjdeme všichni pohromadě. We will all go together.	Jděte se tam zase podívat. Go (you) there and see again.
Jdi se podívat zdali jsou hotovi. Go (thou) and see if they are ready.	Už jdou; tu jsou. They are coming already; here they are.
My zde nebudeme stát a čekat. We shall not stand here and wait.	Půjdou všichni najednou. They will all go together.

Ten dům chci prodat. That house I want to sell.	Škoda že museli sme ho prodat. It is a pity we had to sell it.
A proč to? And why?	Náš nový dům nebude na prodej. Our new house will not be for sale.
Je malý; musím ho prodat. It is small, I must sell it.	Není dobře prodávat nový dům. It is not well to sell (to be selling) a new house.
Myslím že je trochu malý. I think it is somewhat small.	Budeme mít u domu kus země. We shall have by (our) house a piece of land.
Ten starý dům byl dost velký. The old house was large enough.	

Note 3. The changes of endings of feminine nouns, excepting the vocative case, are shown in the following exhibit:

- Žena** *ženā*, the woman;
ženy *ženy*, of the woman;
ženu *ženǔ*, the woman, (accusative);
ženě *žeňe*, to the woman, (**v ženě**, in the woman, etc.);
ženou *ženoů*, (or **se ženou**) with the woman.
- Země** *země* the earth, of the earth;
zemi *zemi*, to the earth, (**v zemi**, in the earth, etc.);
zemí *zemee*, (or **se zemí**) with the earth.
- Košť** *kōst*, the bone;
kosti *kostĭ*, of the bone, to the bone, (**v kosti** *fkostĭ*, in the bone, etc.);
kostí *kostĕe* (or **s kostí** *skostĕe*) with the bone.

Nouns ending in **e** (like **růže** *roožě*, the rose) agree with **země**.

Nouns ending in **ka** change the hard consonant **k** into **c** *ts*, when the final **a** changes into **e** :

matka, **služka**, *mātkā*, *slūshka*, the mother, the servant girl
matce, **služce**, *mātsě*, *slūshtsě*, to the mother, to the servant girl

Nouns ending in **st'**, like **košť**, are ALWAYS of the feminine gender.

Note 4. The verb **jíti** is irregular. Its future tense is formed by the prefix **pů**, and not by the auxiliary **budu**. The formation of the future by means of prefixes occurs quite often, as will be seen hereafter.

Note 5. The verbs **prodávati**, **kupovati** (to be selling, to be buying) are in fact reiterative forms of **prodati** (to sell, to make a sale) and **koupiti** (to buy, to make a purchase).

Common indefinite verbs, denoting a continuous action, may, as a rule, be changed into REITERATIVES, denoting a repeated action, by inserting **va** before the final syllable **ti** (or the final **t**) and lengthening the preceding vowel, if it be short. For instance:

dělati, to make; **dělávati**, *dělavāti* or *dělavāt*, to use to make,
to be in the habit of making;

platiti, to pay; **platívati**, *plāteevāt*, to use to pay;

spáti, to sleep; **spávati**, *spāvāt*, to use to sleep;

jísti, to eat; **jídávati**, *yeedāvāt*, to use to eat; (irregular verb).

Note 6. In English, verbs are sometimes formed by prefixes joined to other verbs, to vary their signification; for instance:

to deck — to bedeck	to judge — to prejudge	to sell — to undersell
to grow — to outgrow	to stand — to withstand	to turn — to overturn.

The same rule finds application in Bohemian in a much higher degree. Prefixes may be joined to most of the verbs in order to modify or change their meaning; and it is astonishing how many new verbs are sometimes derived from the original verb by that process. As an example, let us take the verb **jíti**, to go :

dojíti,	<i>dō-yeet'i,</i>	to go (get, reach) somewhere; to make an errand;
najíti,	<i>nā-yeet'i,</i>	to find;
nadejíti,	<i>nādē-yeet'i,</i>	to gain, to get ahead, to head off;
obejíti,	<i>obē-yeet'i,</i>	to go round;
odejíti,	<i>odē-yeet'i,</i>	to go away, to leave;
pojíti,	<i>pō-yeet'i,</i>	to perish, to die;
podejíti,	<i>podē-yeet'i,</i>	to deceive, to cheat;
přejíti,	<i>prshē-yeet'i,</i>	to pass over, to pass by;
předejíti,	<i>prshēdē-yeet'i,</i>	to come before, to get ahead, to anticipate;
přijíti,	<i>prshi-yeet'i,</i>	to come;
projíti,	<i>pro-yeet'i,</i>	to pass through;
rozejíti se,	<i>rōzē-yeet'i sē,</i>	to part, to disperse;
ujíti,	<i>ū-yeet'i,</i>	to escape;
vejíti,	<i>vē-yeet'i,</i>	to go in, to come in;
vyjíti,	<i>vy-yeet'i,</i>	to go out, to come out;
zajíti,	<i>zā-yeet'i,</i>	to go down, to set, to pass behind;
zajíti si,	<i>zā-yeet'i si,</i>	to go out of one's way.

This shows the immense adaptability of the Bohemian verb, and certainly looks somewhat perplexing at first sight; but it is only necessary to fix in one's mind the meaning of a dozen of prefixes, which recur in all such cases, in order to have a key to the whole system. The same is true in English; a knowledge of the signification of the prefixes used in connection with verbs explains the modified meaning. Verbs formed by prefixes are in most cases contained separately in Bohemian dictionaries, the same as in English.

Note 7. An indefinite verb like **jíti**, *to go*, denotes a continuous action. When a new verb is formed by means of a prefix, it is definite, denoting a completed action: **dojíti**, *to go (get, reach) somewhere*; **najíti**, *to find*; etc. The present form of these verbs denotes, in fact, a *future* action: **dojdu**, *I shall go or get somewhere*; **najdu**, *I shall find*. Hence it is actually the future tense, there being no present, and the

auxiliary **budu** can never be used. Such compound verbs have therefore only a past with the auxiliary **jsem**, and a simple future:

došel jsem , <i>dōshell sem</i> , I went (got, reached) somewhere;	dojdu , <i>doydŭ</i> , I shall go (get, reach) somewhere;
našel jsem , <i>nāshell sem</i> , I found;	najdu , <i>nāydŭ</i> , I shall find.

LESSON XIV.

Slovo , n. <i>slovō</i>	word	teprv <i>tep^{er}f</i>	only, not before
horko , n. <i>horkō</i>	heat; hot	vedle <i>vědlě</i>	beside, next to
teplo , n. <i>teplō</i>	warmth; warm	nebe , n. <i>něbě</i>	heaven, sky
chladno , n. <i>khlādno</i>	cool	slunce , n. <i>slŭntsě</i>	sun
blato , n. <i>blātō</i>	mud	měsíc , m. <i>myě-seets</i>	moon, month
město , n. <i>myěs-tō</i>	city	počasí , n. <i>pōchāssee</i>	weather
pšenice , f. <i>pshě-ñitsě</i>	wheat	znamení , n. <i>znāmeñee</i>	sign
pole , n. <i>polě</i>	field	dešť , m. <i>deshť</i>	rain
poupě , n. <i>poŭpyě</i>	bud	stín , m. <i>sťeen</i>	shade, shadow
dítě , n. <i>děetě</i>	child	vítr , m. <i>vee-ter</i>	wind
den , m. <i>den</i>	day	pěkný , á, é <i>pyěk-nee</i>	nice, fine
noc , f. <i>nots</i>	night	jasný , á, é <i>yāss-nee</i>	clear, bright
týden , m. <i>teeden</i>	week	hezky , <i>hessky</i>	nice
odpoledne <i>ōdpoledně</i>	afternoon	zle <i>zlě</i>	bad, badly
půlnoc , f. <i>poolnots</i>	midnight	posud <i>pōsŭd</i>	till now, still
dnes v noci <i>dness vnotsi</i>	to-night	okolo <i>ōkolō</i>	about
západ slunce <i>zāpād slŭntsě</i>	sunset	na <i>nā</i>	on, in
cesta , f. <i>tsestā</i>	way, road	s tím <i>sťeem</i>	with that
radost <i>rādost</i>	pleasure	za <i>zā</i>	behind, beyond
les <i>less</i>	forest, timber	zase, zas <i>zāssě, zāss</i>	again
		o <i>ō</i>	at, on.

vidím <i>vid'eem</i>	I see	svítiti <i>sweet'it</i>	to shine
pršetí <i>pershěťi</i>	to rain	svítí <i>sweet'ee</i>	shines
prší <i>pershee</i>	it rains	už není <i>ŭsh neyñee</i>	is no more

choditi	<i>khōďit</i>	to walk	dej mu	<i>dey mŭ</i>	give (thou) him
chodím	<i>khōďeem</i>	I walk	dejte mu	<i>deytě mŭ</i>	give (you) him
chodí	<i>khōďee</i>	he (she, it) walks			

Note 1. Pršetí, pršet, *persheťi, pershet.* to rain; vítr, *veeter*; *e* is silent and placed there simply to elucidate the pronunciation. See Sec. 4, Part I.

EXERCISES.

Včera byl špatný den. Yesterday was a bad day.	Nebude tak zle s tím horkem. It won't be so bad with the heat.
Dnes je hezky. To-day is nice.	Cesta je pěkná. The road is fine.
Opravdu, je pěkné počasí. Truly, it is fine weather.	Není žádné blato. There is no mud.
Myslím že bude tak celý den. I think it will be so all day.	Včera bylo ještě dost blata. Yesterday there was still enough mud.
Bude teplo celý den. It will be warm all day.	Nerad chodím v blatě. I do not like to walk in mud.
Odpoledne bude horko. In the afternoon it will be hot.	Náš hoch rád chodí blatem. Our boy likes to walk through mud.
Rád jsem venku za tepla. I like to be out when (it is) warm.	To snad každé dítě. Perhaps every child (likes that).
V horku nerad jdu do města. In the heat I do not like to go to town.	To je radost dítěte. That is a child's pleasure.
Já také ne. Neither do I.	Ano, to dělá radost dítěti. Yes, it makes pleasure to a child.

Je nebe jasné? Is the sky clear?	Je skoro chladno ve stínu. It is almost cool in the shade.
Bylo, ale už není. It was, but is no more.	No slunci je posud horko. In the sun it is still hot.
Vidím na nebi znamení deště. I see in the sky a sign of rain.	Dnes v noci svítí měsíc. To-night the moon shines.
Ale slunce ještě svítí. But the sun is still shining.	Teprv o půlnoci. Only at (i. e. not before) midnight.
Po slunce západu snad bude pršet. After sunset perhaps it will rain.	Ano, okolo půlnoci. Yes, about midnight.
Je silný vítr. There is a strong wind.	

Zde je náš dům. Here is our house.

Vedle domu je stodola. Beside the house there is a barn.

Za stodolou máme pole. Behind the barn we have a field.

Na tom poli je pšenice. On that field there is wheat.

Za tím polem máme kus lesa. Beyond that field we have a piece of timber.

Je to dobrý kus lesa. It is a good piece of timber.

Pak je zase kus pole s obilím. Then there is again a piece of a grain-field (*literally*: of a field with grain).

Jděte na pole. Go to (on) the field.

Jdi s tím dítětem. Go (thou) with the child.

Dej dítěti poupě z růže. Give (thou) the child a rose-bud (*literally*: a bud from the rose).

Otec je na poli. The father is in the field.

Note 2. The following little scheme shows the changes of the endings of *neutre* nouns, which in the nominative always end in **o**, **e**, **ě** or **í**:

slovo, *slŏvŏ*, the word;

slova, *slŏvǎ*, of the word;

slovu, *slŏvŭ*, to the word;

ve slovu, *vě slŏvǎ* } in the word;(o
,, slově, *vě slŏvyě* } **slovu,** about
the word);

slovem, *slŏvem*, (or **se slovem**) by
or with the word.

poupě, *poŭpyě*, the bud;

poupěte, *poŭpyetě*, of the bud;

poupěti, *poŭpyet'i*, to the bud; (**v**
poupěti, in the bud; etc.)

poupětem, *poŭpyetěm* (or **s poupě-**
tem) with the bud.

pole, *pŏľě*, the field; of the field;

poli, *pŏľi*, to the field; (**v poli**,
in the field; etc.)

polem, *polem*, (or **s polem**) with
the field.

znamení, *znǎměne*, the sign; of
the sign; (**ve znamení**,
in the sign; etc.);

znamením, *znǎmě-neem* (or **se zna-**
mením), with the sign.

LESSON XV.

Jeden	<i>yěden</i>	one	můj, m.	<i>mooy</i>	my, mine
jedna, f.	<i>yědnā</i>	,,	moji, pl.	<i>moye</i>	my, mine, pl.
dva	<i>dwā</i>	two	mých, pl.	<i>meekh</i>	of my
dvě, f. & n.	<i>dwyě</i>	,,	mým, pl.	<i>meem</i>	to my
tři	<i>trshi</i>	three	mými, pl.	<i>meemi</i>	with my
čtyry	<i>shtiri</i>	four	ty	<i>ty</i>	those
pět	<i>pyět</i>	five	k těm	<i>křem</i>	to those
šest	<i>shěst</i>	six	těch	<i>těkh</i>	} of those, from those
sedm	<i>sedŭm</i>	seven	z těch	<i>sřekh</i>	
osm	<i>osŭm</i>	eight	v těch	<i>fřekh</i>	in those
devět	<i>dev-yet</i>	nine	od nás	<i>od nás</i>	from us, from our place
deset	<i>desset</i>	ten			
oba, m.	<i>obā</i>	} both	jaký, á, é	<i>yākee</i>	what, what kind
obě, f. & n.	<i>obyě</i>		tamhle	<i>támlě</i>	there, over there
pár	<i>pār</i>	} some, a few	hned	<i>hněd</i>	right away
několik	<i>ñekolik</i>		a sice	<i>ā sitsě</i>	that is, namely
mnoho	<i>mnohō</i>	a good deal	možná	<i>mōžná</i>	perhaps, possibly
mnoho-li	<i>mnohō-li</i>	how much	dokonce	<i>dōkontsě</i>	perhaps even
kolik	<i>kōlik</i>	how many	ještě něco?	<i>yeshře ñetso</i>	anything else?
asi tak	<i>āsi tāk</i>	about			
tolik	<i>tōlik</i>	so many, so much	nejmín	<i>neymeeñ</i>	at least, least of all
k, ke, ku	<i>kě, kŭ</i>	to, unto	mu, jemu,	<i>mŭ, yěmŭ,</i>	to him
i	<i>e</i>	oh! well	v, ve	<i>vě</i>	in
s, se	<i>sě</i>	with	z, ze	<i>zě</i>	from, of

Mluviti	<i>mlŭvit</i>	to speak	utratil	<i>ŭtrāřil</i>	spent
mluvil *)	<i>mlŭvil</i>	spoke	prodati	<i>proďāt</i>	to sell
utratiti	<i>ŭtrāřit</i>	to spend	prodal	<i>proďāl</i>	sold

*) See Lesson XIII, Note 2.

koupiti	<i>koŭpit</i>	to buy	hospoda , f.	<i>hŏspodā</i>	saloon, tavern
koupil	<i>koŭpil</i>	bought	mouka , f.	<i>moŭkā</i>	flour
koupím	<i>koŭpeem</i>	I shall buy	cena , f.	<i>tsěná</i>	price, value
rozuměti	<i>rozŭmyet</i>	to understand	podpora , f.	<i>pŏdporā</i>	support
rozuměl	<i>rozŭm'yell</i>	understood	drobné , pl.	<i>drŏbné</i>	change
rozumím	<i>rozŭmeem</i>	understand	výběr , m.	<i>veeb-yer</i>	choice
jezditi	<i>yezďit</i>	to drive, to ride	tucet , m.	<i>tŭtset</i>	dozen
jezdil	<i>yezďil</i>	drove, rode	domu	<i>domŭ</i>	home
jezdím	<i>yezďeem</i>	I drive, I ride	na venku	<i>nā venkŭ</i>	in the country
znám	<i>znām</i>	I know, I am acquainted	spokojen	<i>spŏkŏyēn</i>	satisfied
vím to	<i>veem tŏ</i>	I know it	můžete	<i>moožětě</i>	you can, you may
dělá	<i>ďelá</i>	makes	počítejme	<i>pocheeteymě</i>	let us count
člověk , m.	<i>chlŏ-vyěk</i>	man	sto	<i>stŏ</i>	a hundred
pán	<i>pán</i>	gentleman	víc, více	<i>veets, veetsě</i>	more
farma , f.	<i>farmā</i>	farm	stojí	<i>stŏyee</i>	costs

EXERCISES.

Tady jsme zas. Here we are again.

Jaký pěkný den! What a nice day!

Máte ještě peníze? Have you still (some) money?

I ještě něco mám. Well, I have still something.

Mnoho-li asi máte? About how much have you?

Ne mnoho. Not much.

Mám ještě dva dollarů. I have still two dollars.

Já taky mám pár dollarů. I also have a few dollars.

Kolik dollarů? How many dollars?

Asi tak čtyry dollarů. About four dollars.

Žádné drobné? No change?

Mám také pár centů. I have also a few cents.

Utratil jsem mnoho. I have spent a good deal.

Jak mnoho asi? About how much?

Nejmín pět nebo šest dollarů. At least five or six dollars.

Já také utratil několik dollarů. I also spent a few dollars.

Víc než já? More than I?

Možná asi sedm dollarů. Perhaps about seven dollars.

Nebo dokonce osm. Or perhaps even eight.

K dollarům počítejme čas. To the dollars let us count the time.

Ten má taky cenu v dollarech. It also has a price (value) in dollars.

To dělá mnoho. That makes much.

Děvět nebo deset dollarů je pryč.

Nine or ten dollars are gone.

Co stojí ten vůz? How much is that wagon? (*literally*: what costs that wagon?).

Sto dolarů. A hundred dollars.

Za sto dolarů můžete koupit dva vozy. For a hundred dollars you can buy two wagons.

Dost možná.

Very likely.

Já rozumím vozům. I understand wagons.

Je velký rozdíl ve vozech. There is a great difference in wagons.

Já jezdím s vozy už dávno. I drive wagons a long time already.

Zde je můj syn. Here is my son.
Oba moji synové jsou tu. Both my sons are here.

Ano, myslím že jsou. Yes, I think (that) they are.

Jeden z mých synů právě šel ven.

One of my sons has just gone out.

Dejte mým synům oběd; a sice hned. Give (to) my sons a dinner; I mean right away.

Ano, dáme pánům dobrý oběd. Yes, we shall give to the gentlemen a good dinner.

V synech (mých) mám nyní podporu. In my sons I have now a support.

To je dobře. That is well.

Jsem spokojen se syny. I am satisfied with (my) sons.

Jsmě všichni na farmě. We are all on the farm.

Synové jsou rádi na farmě. My sons like it on the farm.

Jsmě všichni rádi na venku. We all like it in the country.

Koupil jsem mouku. I bought (some) flour.

Chcete koupit ještě něco? Do you want to buy anything else?

Půjdu a koupím dva nože. I shall go and buy two knives.

Já půjdu taky a koupím deset nožů. I shall go, too, and buy a dozen knives.

Ale k nožům také vidličky. But to the knives also forks.

Tamhle mají velký výběr v nožích. Over there they have a large choice in knives.

Ano, vím to; mají tuze dobré nože. Yes, I know it; they have very good knives.

Máte pravdu. You are right (*literally*: you have right).

Tamhle v hospodě jsou tři muži.

Over there in the saloon there are three men.

Znám ty muže. I know those men.

Jeden z těch mužů je od nás. One of those men is from our place.

Prodal jsem mu koně. I sold (to) him a horse.

Jaký je to člověk? What kind of a man is that?

Je dobrý muž. He is a good man.

Jděte k těm mužům. Go to those men.

Půjdu; chci mluvit s těmi muži. I will go; I want to speak with those men.

Myslím že ti mužové půjdou brzy domů. I think that those men will soon go home.

Note 1. The formation of the *plural* of masculine inanimate and animate nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, are seen in the following table:

dollar, dollár, the dollar; **vůz, vooz,** the wagon; **syn, syn,** the son;
muž, moož, the man;

dollary *dolláry* the dollars

vozy *vůzy* the wagons

syni *syni* } the sons
—**ové** *synové* }

muži *mooži* } the men;
—**ové** *moožové* }

REMARK. The long termination **ové** belongs to animate nouns; only in poetic language or solemn expression does it sometimes appear connected with inanimates.—

In the accusative or objective case animate nouns have **syny, muže**: **Mám syny zde,** I have my sons here; **vidím ty muže,** I see those men.—

S dollary, s vozy, se syny, s muži; *sdolláry, svůzy, se syny, smooži;* with the dollars, with the wagons, with the sons, with the men.

dollarů *dollároo* } of the dollars
—**ův** *dollároof* }

vozů *vůzoo* } of the wagons
—**ův** *—f* }

synů *synoo* } of the sons
—**ův** *—f* }

mužů *můžoo* } of the men
—**ův** *—f* }

REMARK. Both animate and inanimate nouns use the long termination **ův**, — but never in ordinary discourse and seldom in the spoken language generally.

dollarŭm <i>dollāroom</i> to the dollars	synŭm <i>synoom</i> to the sons
vozŭm <i>vōzoom</i> to the wagons	mužŭm <i>mŭžoom</i> to the men;

v dollarech <i>vdollāreckh</i> in the dollars	REMARK. Also with other prepositions: o dollarech , about the dollars; po dollarech , after the dollars (<i>or</i> dollar by dollar); etc.
ve vozech <i>vě vōžech</i> in the wagons	
v synech <i>vsyněkh</i> in the sons	
v mužích <i>vmŭžeeekh</i> in the men.	

Note 2. The prepositions **k**, **s**, **v**, **z**, consisting of a single consonant, are simply abbreviations of **ke**, **ku**, **se**, **ve**, **ze**, as before explained. Their use is almost arbitrary, in cases where they can easily be connected and pronounced with the succeeding syllable; hence they are nearly always used when the following word begins with a vowel or with a consonant followed by a vowel: **v obleku**, *vō-blě-kŭ*, in the suit of clothes; **v dollarech**, *vdol-lā-rěkh*, in the dollars; **v synech**, *vsy-někh*, in the sons; — **s oblekem**, *sō-blě-kem*, with the suit of clothes; **s dollarem**, *sdol-lā-rem*, with the dollar; **s mužem**, *smoo-žem*, with the man; — **k obleku**, *kō-blě-kŭ*, to the suit of clothes; **k vozu**, *kvō-zŭ*, to the wagon; etc.

We can never say **v vozu**, **s synem**, **k koni** (in the wagon, with the son, to the horse), because it could not be pronounced; the letter **e** has to be retained and it is ridiculous to leave it out in writing as a silent letter, as it can never be silent. We speak and write: **ve vozu** (or **ve voze**), *vě vōzŭ* (*vōžě*), in the wagon; **se synem**, *sě syněm*, with the son (*or* with my son); **ke koni**, *kě kōñi*, to the horse.

On the other hand, the long form **ke**, **ku**, **ve**, **ze** may nearly always be employed, when the following word begins with a consonant; we can say and write **ve dollarech**, **ve synech**; but it is not customary. The sound of **v** connects easily with every other consonant without the help of an **e**. However, the short prepositions **k**, **s**, **z** are being limited in their use and the proper long form **ke**, **ku**, **se**, **ze** is employed wherever practicable.

Note 3. The letters **h**, **ch**, **k**, **r** are called *hard* consonants “par excellence”. When they occur in a MASCULINE ANIMATE noun, or

in its ultimate syllable, they are changed or softened in the nominative plural after the following manner:

h	changes	into	z		k	changes	into	c
ch	„	„	š		r	„	„	ř

The following examples will explain it:

soudruh , <i>soŭdrŭh</i> (<i>soŭdrŭkh</i>),	a comrade;	soudruzi , <i>soŭdrŭzi</i> ,	comrades;
hoch , <i>hŏkh</i> ,	a boy;	hoši , <i>hŏ-she</i> ,	boys;
kluk , <i>klŭk</i> ,	a boy, an urchin;	kluci , <i>klŭtsi</i> ,	boys, urchins;
bratr , <i>brater</i> ,	a brother;	bratři , <i>brăt-rshi</i> ,	brothers;

But whenever the long form of the nominative plural (**ové**) is employed, the hard consonant remains unchanged: **soudruhové**, the comrades; **bratrové**, the brothers. In the other cases (excepting the vocative, which is like the nominative: **o soudruzi!** o comrades!) the hard consonant also retains its place: **soudruhŭ**, **hochŭ**, **klukŭ**, **bratrŭ**, of the comrades (boys, brothers); **soudruhŭm**, and so forth.

LESSON XVI.

Líbí se mi <i>leebee sě me</i>	I like it (him, her, etc)	dejte <i>deytě</i>	give, put
nésti <i>nesťi</i>	to bring, to yield	posázím <i>posázeem</i>	I shall set out
nesou <i>nessoŭ</i>	they bring, they yield (or pay)	povídá <i>poveedá</i>	says
přines <i>prshi-ness</i>	bring (thou)	letos <i>letoss</i>	this year
přinesu <i>prshi-nessŭ</i>	I shall bring	v loni <i>vloňi</i>	last year
vede se <i>vědě sě</i>	thrives	hodaě <i>hodňe</i>	{ much, many, a good deal
čítám <i>cheetám</i>	I read (i. e. I use to read)	(the same as mnoho)	
rád čítám <i>rád cheetám</i>	I like to read	třeba <i>trshě-bă</i>	{ it needs, need- ed, necessary
sednu <i>sednŭ</i>	I sit down	i třeba <i>e trshě-bă</i>	
bavím se <i>băveem sě</i>	I amuse myself	všeho druhu <i>vshěhŏ drŭhŭ</i>	of all kinds
		krajina , f. <i>krăyiniă</i>	country

soused, m.	<i>soŭsed</i>	neighbor
užitek, m.	<i>ŭžitek</i>	profit
kukuřice, f.	<i>kŭkŭrshitsě</i>	} corn
korna, f.	<i>kornā</i>	
brambory, pl.	<i>brāmbory</i>	potatoes
oves, m.	<i>ovess</i>	oats
ječmen, m.	<i>yěchmen</i>	barley
sklizeň, f.	<i>sklizeň</i>	crop
slad, m.	<i>slād</i>	malt
trh, m.	<i>terh</i>	market
u cesty	<i>ŭ tsěsty</i>	} by the road near the road

pŭda, f.	<i>poodā</i>	land, soil
prairie, f.	<i>prairiě</i>	prairie
bahno, n.	<i>bāhnō</i>	swamp
řezník, m.	<i>rshěz-ñeek</i>	butcher
kniha, f.	<i>kñihā</i>	book
knihovna, f.	<i>kñihōvnā</i>	library
milovník, m.	<i>milōv-ñeek</i>	lover
záliba, f.	<i>zálíbā</i>	pleasure
růže, f.	<i>roože</i>	rose
pivonka, f.	<i>pivonkā</i>	piony
okno, n.	<i>oknō</i>	window
poklad, m.	<i>poklād</i>	treasure

samý, á, é	<i>sāmee</i>	nothing but
úrodný, á, é	<i>oo-rodnee</i>	fertile
obzvláště	<i>ob-zlášťe</i>	} especially, particularly
obzvlášť	<i>ob-zlášť</i>	
zvláštní	<i>zlášť-ñee</i>	special, particular
zpátky	<i>spátke</i>	back

kdykoli	<i>gdí-kolí</i>	whenever
ještě jeden	<i>yeshťe yěden</i>	one more, another
před	<i>prshěd</i>	before
bez	<i>běz</i> or <i>bess</i>	without
za	<i>zā</i>	beyond, behind

EXERCISES.

Zde se mi líbí. I like it here.

Zde je pěkná krajina. This is (here is) a nice country.

Každý to povídá. Everybody says so.

My máme zde farmu. We have a farm here.

Strýc je náš soused. Uncle is our neighbor.

On má zde dvě farmy. He has two farms here.

Má velký užitek z těch farem? Has he a large profit from those farms?

Myslím že má. I think (that) he has.

Myslím že nesou mu hodně. I think (that) they yield (i. e. pay) him a good deal.

V loni měl mnoho sklizně (skliz-ñe, of the c.) všeho druhu. Last year he had a large crop of all kinds.

Je to tuze úrodná farma. It is a very fertile farm.

Měl mnoho sena, pšenice, kukuřice i brambor. He had a great deal of hay, wheat, corn and potatoes.

Letos bude mítí také oves, ječmen a žito. This year he will also have oats, barley and rye.

Ječmen na slad má vždycky (dýcky, *dit-skí*) dobrý trh. Barley for malt has always a good market.

Na farmách zde ječmen vede se dobře. On the farms here barley thrives well.

Za farmami u cesty je kus špatné půdy. Beyond the farms by the road there is a piece of bad land.

Já myslel, že je to úrodná prairie. I thought (that) it was a fertile prairie.

Není; je to skoro samé bahno. It is not; it is almost nothing but swamp.

Knihy jsou poklad. Books are a treasure.

Rád čítám knihy. I like to read books.

Obzvláště když jsem doma. Especially when I am at home.

Jste teda milovník knih. You are then a lover of books.

To je pravda. That is true.

Máte mnoho knih? Have you many books?

Má knihovna je veliká. My library is large.

Jaké knihy máte? What books have you?

Mám knihy všeho druhu. I have books of all kinds.

Sednu ke knihám kdykoli mám čas. I sit down to the books whenever I have time.

Teda máte zálibu ve knihách. Then you have (you find) pleasure in books.

Ano, tuze rád bavím se s knihami. Yes, I like very much to amuse myself with books.

Máte růže před oknem. You have roses before the window.

Máme tam hodně růží. We have many roses there.

K růžím dejte pivoňky. To the roses put pionies.

V růžích mám zvláštní zálibu. In roses I have (I take) particular pleasure.

Posázím ještě jeden záhon růžemi. I shall plant another bed with roses.

Byl jsem u řezníka. I was at the butcher's.

Koupil jsem maso od řezníka. I bought (some) meat from the butcher.

Tu je to maso. Here is that meat.

To je samá kost. That is nothing but bone.

Jsou tu nějaké kosti. There are some bones here.

Ano, kostí je dost. Yes, there are bones enough.

K těm kostím třeba více masa. To the bones (besides the b.) we need more meat.

Na těch kostech není ho mnoho. On these bones there is not much of it.

Co s kostmi? What (can we do) with the bones?

Nechceme tolik kostí. We do not want so many bones.

Přines maso bez kostí. Bring meat without bones.

Půjdu zpátky a přinesu ho. I shall go back and bring it.

Note 1. The formation of the plural of feminine nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, are shown in the following table:

cena, *tsěná*, the price; **růže,** *roožě*, the rose; **kost',** *kěst*, the bone;

ceny *tsěny* the prices

růže *roožě* the roses

kosti *kost'i* the bones;

cen *tsěn* of the prices

růží *roožee* of the roses

kostí *kost'ee* of the bones;

REMARK. When two consonants terminate the noun in the genitive, an e is interpolated: **farmy**, the farms; **farem** (instead of **farm**), of the farms;—**matky**, the mothers; **matek** instead of **matk**), of the mothers.

cenám *tsěnám* to the prices

růžím *roožeem* to the roses

kostem *kostem* to the bones;

v cenách *ftsě-nákh* in the prices

v růžích *vroo-žeekh* in the roses

v kostech *fkos-těkh* in the bones;

REMARK. Also with other prepositions: **o cenách**, about prices; **při cenách**, at the prices; etc.

cenami	<i>tsěnámi</i>	with the prices
růžemi	<i>roožemi</i>	with the roses
kostmi	<i>kostmi</i>	with the bones.

REMARK. Usually with the proposition *s* (with): *s cenami*, *stsě-námi*; *s růžemi*, *sroo-žemi*; *s kostmi*, *skost-mi*.

LESSON XVII.

Vám	<i>vám</i>	to you
jím	<i>yim</i>	to them
mi, mě	<i>me, myě</i>	to me
moje, mé	<i>moyě, mé</i>	mine, my
naše	<i>náshě</i>	our, ours
vaše	<i>vášhě</i>	your, yours
s těmi	<i>sťemi</i>	with those
tohle	<i>tōhlě</i>	this here
tam ty	<i>tám ty</i>	those over there
tuze	<i>toozě</i>	very much
blíže	<i>bleežě</i>	nearer
nikoli	<i>nikoli</i>	no, not at all
kolem	<i>kōlem</i>	round
pojd'me	<i>poď'mě</i>	let us go
jde	<i>dě</i>	comes
hled'te	<i>hled'tě</i>	see, look
vidím	<i>viď'eem</i>	I see
vidíte	<i>viď'eetě</i>	you see
znám	<i>znám</i>	I know
znáte	<i>znátě</i>	you know
přidám	<i>prshí-dám</i>	I shall add
řeknu	<i>rshek-nū</i>	I shall tell
slyšet	<i>slishet</i>	to hear
postačí	<i>postā-chee</i>	is sufficient
roste	<i>rostě</i>	grows

bohactví, n.	<i>bōhāts-tvee</i>	richness
štěstí, n.	<i>shťess-t'i</i>	happiness, luck, good fortune
moudrost, f.	<i>moūdrost</i>	wisdom
váha, f.	<i>váhā</i>	weight
poupě, n.	<i>poūpyě</i>	bud
poupata	<i>poūpātā</i>	buds
plot, m.	<i>plōt</i>	fence
obtíž, f.	<i>ob-t'eež</i>	trouble
mýlka, f.	<i>meelkā</i>	mistake
máte pravdu	<i>máte prāvdu</i>	you are right (literally: you have right;)
není třeba	<i>neñi trshě-bā</i>	it is not necessary
obalený, á, é	<i>obālěnee</i>	covered
drátěný, á, é	<i>drá-t'enee</i>	of wire
hluboký, á, é	<i>hlūbōkee</i>	deep, pro- found.
zdravý, á, é	<i>zdrāvee</i>	healthy, well, sound
děvče	<i>d'ef-chě</i>	girl
děvčata	<i>d'ef-chātā</i>	girls
dobře	<i>dobrshě</i>	well, all right
slovem	<i>slōvem</i>	in a word

EXERCISES.

Já vám něco řeknu. I will tell you something.

Bohatství není štěstí. Riches are not happiness.

To jsou slova moudrosti. These are words of wisdom.

Znáte váhu těch slov? Do you know the weight of those words?

K těm slovům nic více není třeba.
To those words nothing more is needed.

V těch slovech je hluboká pravda.
In those words there is a profound truth.

Chcete slyšet více? Do you want to hear more?

Nikoli; ta slova postačí. Not at all; those words suffice.

Jsem spokojen s těmi slovy. I am satisfied with those words.

Slovem: máte pravdu! In a word: you are right!

Tam ty růže už mají poupata. The roses over there already have buds.

Ano, mají mnoho poupat. Yes, they have many buds.

Letos jsou obaleny poupaty. This year they are covered with buds.

V loni byly skoro bez poupat. Last year they were almost without buds.

Pojďme blíže k těm poupatům. Let us go nearer to those buds.

Vidím něco na těch poupatech. I see something on the buds.

To není nic. That is nothing.

Máte pravdu; poupata jsou zdravá.
You are right; the buds are sound.

Ano, jsou; yes, they are.

Aha, zde je moje děvče! Ah, here is my girl!

Jsou vaše děvčata zdravá? Are your girls well?

Obě naše děvčata jsou zdravá. Both our girls are well.

Přines děvčeti poupě. Bring (thou) to the girl a bud.

Jsou zde dvě děvčata. There are two girls here.

Přineste jim několik poupat. Bring (you to) them some buds.

Tady jde s těmi poupaty. Here he comes with the buds.

Tu je pár poupat. Here are some buds.

Dobře. All right.

Hleďte!

Ty pole co vidíte jsou moje. The fields you see are mine.

See!

Kolem těch polí je nový plot. Around those fields there is a new fence.

Je to drátěný plot. It is a wire fence.
K těm polím je dobrá cesta. To those fields there is a good road.
Co bude na těch polích? What will there be on those fields?
Na těch polích bude obilí a kukuřice. On those fields there will be grain and corn.

Jste spokojen s těmi poliemi? Are you satisfied with those fields?
Jsem tuze spokojen. I am very much satisfied.
Všechno dobře roste na těch polích. Everything grows well on those fields.

Co je tohle? What is this here?
Nějaká znamení. Some signs.
To jsou moje znamení. These are my signs.
Já něco přidám k těm znamením. I shall add something to those signs.

Není mýlka v těch znameních? Is there no mistake in those signs?
S těmi znameními je někdy obtíž. With those signs there is sometimes trouble.
Pravda, je někdy obtíž. True, there is sometimes trouble.

Note. The formation of the plural of neutre nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, will appear from the following table:

slovo	<i>slůvč</i>	the word	pole	<i>polě</i>	the field
poupě	<i>poŕpyč</i>	the bud	znamení	<i>známěňee</i>	the sign;
slova	<i>slůvč</i>	the words	pole	<i>pěle</i>	the fields
poupata	<i>poŕpčtč</i>	the buds	znamení	<i>známěňee</i>	the signs;
slov	<i>slůf</i>	of the words	polí	<i>pělee</i>	of the fields
poupat	<i>poŕpčt</i>	of the buds	znamení	<i>známěňee</i>	of the signs;
slovům	<i>slůvcom</i>	to the words	polím	<i>pěleem</i>	to the fields
poupatům	<i>poŕpčtoom</i>	to the buds	znamením	<i>známěňeem</i>	to the signs;

ve slovech *vě slůvěkh* in the words
v poupatech *v poŕpčtěkch* in the buds
v polích *v poleekh* in the fields
ve znameních *vě známěňeekh* in the signs;

REMARK. Also with other prepositions: **o polích**, about the fields;
na polích, on the fields.

slovy *slůvy* with the words
 poupaty *poŭpáty* with the buds
 poli (-emi) *poli* (-ěmi) with the fields
 znameními *známěněemi* with the
 signs.

REMARK. Also with the preposition
 se, s: se slovy, *se slůvy*; s poupaty,
spoŭpáty; s polemi, *společmi*; se zna-
 meními, *sě známěněemi*.—Instead of
 polemi, the short forms *polmi* and
 poli (*polmi*, *polli*) are also used.

LESSON XVIII.

Mrak, m. *mrāk* cloud
 mráček, m. *mrā-chek* little cloud
 žena *ženā* wife
 míle*), f. *meelē* mile
 hodina*), f. *hōd'inā* hour, o'clock
 jízda, f. *yeezdā* drive, ride
 k večeru *kwěchěrū* toward evening
 za světla *zā swyēt-lā* by daylight
 tma *tmā* dark, darkness
 pozdě *pōzdē* late
 dobrá! *dobrá* very well!
 krásný, á, é *krássnee* beautiful
 s námi *snāmi* with us
 brzy *ber-zy* soon
 po svém *pō svém* after one's
 ještě *yeshťe* business
 still, yet.

já pravil *yá prāvil* I said
 jářku *yā-rshkū* I said, I say
 (like the colloq. 'says I'.)
 jeti *yet'i*, yet to drive, to ride
 pojedem *pōyēdem* we shall drive,
 we shall ride
 pojed'me *poyēd'mē* let us drive,
 let us ride
 vyjeti *ve-yet'i*, ve-yet to drive
 out, to ride out, to start
 vyjeli jsme *ve-yelli smē* we started
 vrátíme se *vrāťeemē sē* we shall re-
 turn, we shall come back
 vrátil mi *vrāťil me* he returned
 to me (something);
 půjčené peníze *pŭychēné peñeezē*
 the money loaned;

*) Jedna, dvě, tři, čtyry míle, *yednā, dwyē, trshi, shtiri meelē*, one, two, three, four miles; pět mil, *pyēt mill*, five miles; šest mil, *shēst mill*, six miles; and so forth.

Jedna hodina, *yednā hōd'inā*, one hour, one o'clock; dvě, tři, čtyry hodiny, *dwyē, trshi, shtiri hōd'iny*, two, three, four hours; two, three, four o'clock; pět hodin, *pyēt hōd'in*, five hours; five o'clock; šest hodin, *shēst hōd'in*, six hours, six o'clock; — and so forth.

EXERCISES.

Včera byl krásný den; — nebe bylo jasné, — ani mráčku nikde.

Jářku, ženo! dnes pojedem do města.

Ano, pojedme! pravila žena; — je den tak krásný!

Máme deset mil do města.

Brzy po snídani vyjeli jsme; — bylo právě osm hodin.

Soused pan Rohan byl s námi.

Já pravil: sousede, jak brzy budeme ve městě?

V deset hodin jsme tam! pravil pan Rohan.

A byli jsme.

Je to as dvě hodiny jízdy, když cesta je dobrá.

Ve městě soused šel kupovat něco a my také šli po svém.

Půjčil jsem mu pět dollarů.

Jářku, sousede! kdy se vrátíme?

Myslím pozdě odpoledne, nebo k večeru; — to bude dost času.

Dobrá; vrátíme se asi v sedm hodin večer, — ještě za světla.

Ale bylo už tma, když jsme se vrátili.

Yesterday was a beautiful day; — the sky was clear, — not a cloud anywhere.

I said: wife, to-day we will drive to town.

Yes, let us drive! said (my) wife; — the day is so beautiful!

It is ten miles to town (*literally*: we have ten miles to town).

Soon after breakfast we drove out (we started); — it was just eight o'clock.

(Our) neighbor Mr. Rohan was with us.

I said: neighbor, how soon shall we be in the city?

At ten o'clock we are there! said Mr. Rohan.

And we were.

It is about a two hours' ride, when the road is good.

In the city, the neighbor went to buy something, and we also went after our business.

I loaned to him five dollars.

I said: neighbor, when shall we return?

I think late in the afternoon or towards evening; — that will be time enough.

Very well; we shall return about seven o'clock in the evening, — still by daylight.

But it was already dark, when we returned.

Soused šel domu a vrátil mi půjčené peníze.

The neighbor went home and returned to me the money I loaned him.

Note 1. The noun **mráček** is a diminutive of **mrak**. In English only a few nouns have their proper diminutives; for instance: man, *manikin*; eagle, *eaglet*; river, *rivulet*; goose, *gosling*.

In Bohemian, diminutives are exceedingly numerous; and very often a noun has two, sometimes three diminutives, differing in degree. For example:

dům, m. *dům*, a house; **domek**, *děměk*, a small house; **domeček**, *děmčech*, a very small house.

hoch, *hókh*, a boy; **hošík**, *hósheek*, a small boy; **hošíček**, *hósheechek*, a very small boy.

ruka, f. *rúkhá*, a hand; **ručka**, *rúchká*, a small hand; **ručička**, *rúchich-ká*, a very small hand.

oko, n. *ókš*, an eye; **očko**, *óch-kš*, a small eye; **očíčko**, *óchich-kš*, a very small eye.

Diminutives, however, are often used simply as expressions of fondness and endearment, apart from any relation of size or degree.

Note 2. The genitive or possessive case of **mráček** is **mráčku**, not **mráčeku**. All nouns ending in **ek** drop the letter **e** in their declension. They are all of the masculine gender (as observed in Lesson I, Note 5), and the animate have **ka**, the inanimate **ku** in the genitive:

ptáček, *ptáček* (colloq. *ftáček*), a small bird; **ptáčka**, *ptáchká* (*ftáchká*), a small bird's;

svátek, *svátek*, a holiday; **svátku**, *swát-kš*, a holiday's.

Note 3. Reflexive verbs in English are followed by reflexive pronouns; for instance: to forswear *one's self*; I forswore *myself*; he forswore *himself*; they forswore *themselves*; etc.

In Bohemian, the reflexive pronoun is always *se*, without any variation. But many verbs, which are reflexive in Bohemian, are not so in English; and vice versa.

Vrátiti se, *vrátit se* (to return, to come back), is a reflexive verb; we say: **vrátím se**, *vrátěem se*, I shall return; **vrátíme se**, *vrátěemě se*, we shall return; **vrátíte se**, *vrátěetě se*, you will return; **vrátí se**, *vrátěe se*, they will return.

Note 4. In the foregoing exercises, **sousedé**, **ženo**, are the vocative cases of **soused** (neighbor), **žena** (wife). The noun is put in the vocative case, when the person or thing is addressed: o Lord! o heavens!

In Bohemian, the vocative case in the singular is very often, in the plural *always* like the nominative, as will be seen from the following comparison :

Nominative.

Vocative.

soused ,	<i>sošsed</i> ,	the neighbor	sousedé!	<i>sošsedě</i> ,	o neighbor!
muž ,	<i>moož</i> ,	the man	muži!	<i>mooži</i> ,	o man!
žena ,	<i>ženā</i> ,	the woman	ženo!	<i>ženě</i> ,	o woman!
kost , f.	<i>kōst</i> ,	the bone	kosti!	<i>kōstě</i> ,	o bone!
růže , f.	<i>roožě</i> ,	the rose	růže!	<i>roože</i> ,	o rose!
slovo , n.	<i>slōvō</i> ,	the word	slovo!	<i>slōvě</i> ,	o word!
pole , n.	<i>pōlē</i> ,	the field	pole!	<i>pōlē</i> ,	o field!
znamení ,	<i>znāmeñee</i> ,	the sign	znamení!	<i>znāmeñee</i> ,	o sign!

In the plural number, the nominative and vocative always agree :

sousedí *)	<i>sošsedě</i> ,	the neighbors;	o neighbors!
muži (-ové)	<i>mooži</i> ,	the men;	o men!
ženy ,	<i>žěny</i> ,	the women;	o women!
kosti ,	<i>kōstě</i> ,	the bones;	o bones!
růže ,	<i>roožě</i> ,	the roses;	o roses!
slova ,	<i>slōvā</i> ,	the words;	o words!
pole ,	<i>pōlē</i> ,	the fields;	o fields!
znamení ,	<i>znāmeñee</i> ,	the signs;	o signs!

*) **Sousedé**, *sošsedé*, is the proper grammatical form, this noun forming an exception; but **sousedí** is the common usage.

Note 5. The Latin noun has six cases; the Bohemian noun has six cases corresponding perfectly with the Latin, and an additional case called "instrumental", because it denotes by whom, with whom or through whom (by means of what or through what) something happens or is done: **mužem, s mužem**, by the man, with the man; **dollarem, s dollarem**, with the dollar.

The nature of the six cases of the Bohemian noun apart from the vocative will appear more distinctly by stating the questions to which they respond.

The *nominative* case, of course, responds to the question **kdo? co? gďŏ, tsŏ**; who? what?

dollar, muž, žena, slovo; the dollar, the man, the woman, the word;—
dollary, muži, ženy, slova; the dollars, the men, the women, the words.

The *genitive* or *possessive* case responds to the question **čí? čeho? chee, chěhŏ**; whose? of what?

dollaru, muže, ženy, slova; of the dollar, the man's, the woman's, of the word;—**dollarů (-ův), mužů (-ův), žen, slov**; of the dollars, the men's, the women's, of the words.

The *dative* case responds to the question **komu? čemu? kŏmŭ, chěmŭ**; to whom? to what?

dollaru, muži, ženě, slovu; to the dollar, to the man, to the woman, to the word;—**dollarům, mužům, ženám, slovům**; to the dollars, to the men, to the women, to the words.

The *accusative* or *objective* case responds to the question **koho? co? kŏhŏ, tsŏ**; whom? what?

dollar, muže, ženu, slovo; the dollar, the man, the woman, the word;—**dollary, muže, ženy, slova**; the dollars, the men, the women, the words.

The *locative* case responds to the question **v kom? v čem? (na kom? na čem? — o kom? o čem?)**, **fŏm, fchěm**; in whom? in what? (on whom — what? about whom — what?)

v dollaru, v muži, v ženě, ve slovu (-ě); in the dollar, in the man,

in the woman, in the word; — **v dollarech, v mužích, v ženách, ve slovech**; in the dollars, in the men, in the women, in the words.

The *instrumental* case responds to the question **kým? čím? — s kým? s čím?** *keem, cheem, skeem, scheem*; by whom? by what? with whom? with what?

dollarem, mužem, ženou, slovem; with the dollar, with the man, with the woman, with the word; — **dollary, muži, ženami, slovy**; with the dollars, with the men, with the women, with the words.

LESSON XIX.

Pan	<i>păn</i>	Mr. (mister)	blízky, á, é	<i>bleskee</i>	near
pán	<i>pán</i>	gentleman	hodný, á, é	<i>hodnee</i>	nice, good
paní	<i>pănee</i>	Mrs. (missis); lady	jiný, á, é	<i>ye-nee</i>	another
člověk	<i>chľovýk</i>	man; one;	letný, á, é	<i>letnee</i>	aged
Karel	<i>kărell</i>	Charles	bohatý, á, é	<i>bôhătee</i>	rich
Anna	<i>ănă</i>	Anna	chudý, á, é	<i>khűdee</i>	poor
Marie	<i>mariě</i>	Mary	poctivý, á, é	<i>pots-tivee</i>	honest
dceruška	<i>tserűshkă</i>	little daughter	mladý, á, é	<i>mlădee</i>	young
hošík	<i>hűsheek</i>	little boy	četný, á, é	<i>chetnee</i>	numerous
sousedka	<i>soűsedkă</i>	female neighbor	pilný, á, é	<i>pillnee</i>	industrious
vдова	<i>vdűvă</i>	widow	poslušný, á, é	<i>poslűshnee</i>	obedient
vdovec	<i>vdű-vűts</i>	widower	ještě tři	<i>yesh'te trshi</i>	} three other } three more
domov, m.	<i>dűmof</i>	home	usazen	<i>űssăzen</i>	
rok, m.	<i>rűk</i>	year	jmenuje se	<i>menűyű sű</i>	is called
leta	<i>letă</i>	} years*)	v skutku	<i>fskűt-kű</i>	} indeed, in } fact, really
let	<i>let</i>		opravdu	<i>oprăvdű</i>	
náklonnost, f.	<i>năklűnost</i>	inclination	má být	<i>mă beet</i>	ought to be
několik	<i>űnekolik</i>	several, some, a few	máte rád	<i>mătű rád</i>	you like

*) **Dvě leta**, *dwűyű letă*, two years; **tři leta**, *trshi letă*, three years; **čtyry leta**, *shtiri letă*, four years; **pět let**, *pyűt let*, five years; **šest let**, *shűst let*, six years; **sedm let**, *sűdűm let*, seven years; and so forth.

Máte to rád? <i>mátě to rád?</i> do you	nesklame se, <i>nessklámě se,</i> will not
like it?	be disappointed;
mám vždycky rád, <i>mám dit-ski rád,</i>	jednám, <i>yed-nám,</i> I deal;
I always like;	jedná, <i>yed-ná,</i> deals;
dávno, <i>dávně,</i> a long time;	váš, <i>vášh,</i> your, yours;
jak dávno, <i>yák dávně</i> how long;	její, <i>yěyee,</i> her, hers.

EXERCISES.

Tak zde je váš domov!
 Kdo je váš soused?
 Pan Hodan je můj soused.
 On je náš blízký soused.
 Je pan Hodan hodný muž?
 Ano, je hodný muž; a paní Hodanová je hodná žena.
 Mají děti?
 Mají jednu dcerušku.
 Jak se jmenuje?
 Myslím že jmenuje se Marie; je to hodné dítě.
 Jiný soused náš je pan Braun.

Jak dávno je zde usazen?

Je zde usazen asi rok nebo dvě leta.

Je pan Braun bohatý?

Není; on je chudý člověk.

Je chudý a tuze poctivý.

Je letný muž?

Ne, pan Braun je mladý muž a paní Braunová je mladá žena.

Ale rodina je už četná.

Mají několik dětí.

So here is your home!
 Who is your neighbor?
 Mr. Hodan is my neighbor.
 He is our near neighbor.
 Is Mr. Hodan a nice man?
 Yes, he is a nice man; and Mrs. Hodan is a nice woman.
 Have they children?
 They have one little daughter.
 What is her name?
 I think she is called Mary; she is a nice child.
 Another neighbor of ours is Mr. Brown.
 How long is he (has he been) settled here?
 He has been settled here about a year or two (years).
 Is Mr. Brown rich?
 He is not; he is a poor man.
 He is poor and very honest.
 Is he an aged man?
 No; Mr. Brown is a young man, and Mrs. Brown is a young woman.
 But the family is already numerous.
 They have several children.

Karel je asi deset let a pak mají ještě tři děti.

Karel je poslušný a pilný hoch.

Anna je také poslušná a pilná.

Je jí asi osm let.

Dítě má být poslušné a pilné.

Ano, má být; ale někdy není.

Vdova Borošová je také naše blízká sousedka.

Její bratr, pan Bloch, je také vdovec.

Charles is about ten years, and then they have three more children.

Charles is an obedient and industrious boy.

Anna is also obedient and industrious.

She is (*literally*: it is to her) about eight years.

A child should be obedient and industrious.

Yes, it ought to be; but sometimes it is not.

The widow Borosh is also our near neighbor.

Her brother, Mr. Bloch, is also a widower.

Teda máte rád pana Hodana? (*pěňň hoděňň*,—accusative).

Mám vždycky rád hodného muže, a hodnou ženu také.

K hodnému muži a k hodné ženě máme vždy náklonnost.

A je také pravda, že v hodném muži a v hodné ženě se člověk nikdy nesklame.

S hodným mužem a hodnou ženou každý rád jedná.

Těž rád jedná s hodným dítětem.

Pana Brauna hošík je v skutku hodné dítě.

So you like Mr. Hodan?

I always like a nice man, and a nice woman too.

Toward a nice man and a nice woman we always have an inclination.

And it is also true, that in a good man and in a good woman one is never disappointed.

With a nice man and a nice woman everybody likes to deal.

I also like to deal with a nice child.

Mr. Brown's little boy is really a good child.

Note 1. In Lesson VI, Note 2, it was explained that the termination of adjectives changes according to the gender of the nouns which they qualify:

hodný muž,	<i>hodnee moož,</i>	a nice man;
hodná žena,	<i>hodná ženě,</i>	a nice woman;
hodné dítě,	<i>hodné d'eeťe,</i>	a nice child (in ordinary discourse hodný dítě , like the masculine).

Adjectives, also, are declined and agree in number and case with the nouns. The changes of termination in the singular number appear in the following table:

hodný muž,	<i>hodnee moož,</i>	a nice man;
hodné dítě,	<i>hodné d'eeťe,</i>	a nice child;
hodného muže,	<i>hodného moožě,</i>	of a nice man,
„ dítěte,	„ <i>d'eeťetě,</i>	of a nice child;

REMARK. The accusative or objective agrees with the possessive in the masculine, and with the nominative in the neutre gender:

vidím hodného muže, *vid'eem hodného moožě,* I see a nice man;
vidím hodné dítě, *vid'eem hodné d'eeťe,* I see a nice child.

hodnému muži,	<i>hodnému mooži,</i>	to a nice man,
„ dítěti,	„ <i>d'eeťeti,</i>	to a nice child;
v hodném muži,	<i>vhodném mooži,</i>	in a nice man,
„ „ dítěti,	„ <i>d'eeťeti,</i>	in a nice child;
s hodným mužem,	<i>shodneem moožem,</i>	with a nice man,
„ „ dítětem,	„ <i>d'eeťetem,</i>	with a nice child.

hodná žena,	<i>hodná ženě,</i>	a nice woman;
hodné ženy,	<i>hodné ženy,</i>	of a nice woman;
„ ženě,	„ <i>žeňe,</i>	to a nice woman;
v „ ženě,	v „ „	in a nice woman;
hodnou ženu,	<i>hodnou ženě,</i>	a nice woman (<i>accusative</i>);
s hodnou ženou,	<i>shodnou ženě,</i>	with a nice woman.

Note 2. In common discourse no distinction whatever is made between the masculine and neutre gender, and the terminal *ý* does not change. We hear :

hodný muž,	hodný dítě;	a nice man,	a nice child;
hodného muže,	hodného dítěte;	of a nice man,	of a nice child;
hodnému muži,	hodnému dítěti;	to a nice man,	to a nice child;
hodného muže,	hodný dítě;	(<i>accusative</i>); a nice man,	a nice child;
v hodném muži,	v hodném dítěti;	in a nice man,	in a nice child;
s hodným mužem,	s hodným dítětem;	with a nice man,	with a nice child.

In the feminine gender, we hear : *hodná žena, hodnou ženu* (*accus.*), *s hodnou ženou*; but in the other cases :

hodný žený,	of a good woman;
hodný ženě,	to a good woman;
v hodný ženě,	in a good woman.

The ordinary usage of the people evidently rejects all artificial, and unnecessary grammatical distinctions, always tending to simplicity; and it will be noticed that there is much more consistency in this common rule as applied to the declension of adjectives, when we come to treat of their plural number.

Note 3. In Bohemian, the adjective may be placed either before or after the noun, according to the speaker's pleasure :

pan Hodan je hodný muž;	}	Mr. Hodan is a nice man;
pan Hodan je muž hodný;		

je to letný muž;	}	he is (<i>literally</i> , it is) an aged man.
je to muž letný;		

It is usually placed after the noun when the speaker wishes to lay particular stress upon the adjective (*hodný, letný*) qualifying the noun.

LESSON XX.

Sousedstvo , n. <i>soŭsedstvŏ</i> neighbor- hood	vejde <i>veydě</i> enters, calls
celý , á, é <i>tsellee</i> whole, all	rád vejde , <i>rád veydě</i> , likes to call
milý , á, é <i>millee</i> pleasant, pleas- ing, dear	rád promluví , <i>rád promlŭvee</i> , likes to talk (to have a chat)
přijemno , f. <i>prshee-yěmnŏ</i> agreea- ble, pleasant	má rád <i>má rád</i> he likes
nehodný <i>něhodnee</i> naughty	má ráda <i>má rádā</i> she likes
bydleti <i>bidlet</i> to live, to reside	doufám <i>doŭfám</i> I hope
vše <i>fshě</i> } everything,	ba právě <i>bā právyě</i> that is so; to be sure;
všechno <i>fshekh-nŏ</i> } all	ba věru <i>bā vyěrŭ</i> certainly; no doubt of it;
však <i>fshāk</i> but	v pořádku <i>fpo-rshád-kŭ</i> right; all right;
však je <i>fshāk yě</i> but there is (there are)	dobrá vůle <i>dobrá voolě</i> good will
nad <i>nād</i> over	na štěstí <i>nā sh'test'ī</i> happily, fortunately;
není nad <i>něni nād</i> there is nothing better than; nothing like;	je na to čas , <i>yě nā tŏ chäss</i> , there is time for it.
velmi <i>velmi</i> very	že ne? <i>žě ně?</i> } isn't it so? is it not? are they not?
jich <i>yikh</i> of them	to víš <i>tŏ veesh</i> thou knowest
nám <i>nám</i> to us	to víte <i>tŏ veetě</i> you know
vám <i>vám</i> to you	

REMARK. When standing alone and used as a rejoinder, **to víš** and **to víte** signify: *Of course; to be sure.*

EXERCISES.

Myslím že všichni vaši sousedi jsou hodní.

Pravda; celé sousedstvo je hodné.

Pak je příjemno bydlet zde.

Opravdu, velmi příjemno.

A jaké je sousedstvo vaše?

My také máme pár hodných sousedů.

Myslím že je vám to také milé.

Je nám to tuze milé.

Člověk rád vejde k hodným sousedům.

Každý má rád hodné sousedy.

Ba právě; a v hodných sousedech vždycky (*dit-skí*) má podporu.

Když je na to čas, člověk rád promluví s hodnými sousedy.

Není nad hodné sousedy!

Má žena je zde velmi spokojena.

Vaše sousedky jsou všechny hodné, že ne?

Naše sousedky jsou hodné.

To víte, že mezi hodnými sousedkami je dobrá vůle.

Není nad dobrou vůli v sousedstvu.

To víte.

Když sousedi také mají hodné děti, všechno je v pořádku.

I think that all your neighbors are nice.

True; the whole neighborhood is nice.

Then it is agreeable to live here.

Truly, very agreeable.

And what kind is *your* neighborhood?

We also have some nice neighbors (i. e. some *of* the nice neighbors).

I think (that) it is also agreeable to you.

It is very agreeable to us.

One likes to call on nice neighbors; (*literally*: one likes to enter to nice neighbors).

Everybody likes good neighbors.

To be sure; and in good neighbors one always has (finds) a support.

When there is time for it, one likes to have a chat with good neighbors.

There is nothing like good neighbors!

My wife is very much satisfied here.

Your female neighbors are all nice, are they not?

Our female neighbors are nice.

You know that among nice female neighbors there is good will.

There is nothing like good will in a neighborhood.

Of course (i. e. you know).

When the neighbors also have nice children, everything is all right.

Máme opravdu mnoho hodných dětí v sousedstvu.

Však je také několik nehodných.

Doufám že není jich mnoho.

Na štěstí není jich mnoho.

Je jich jen pár; ale je to dost.

Ba věru.

We have indeed many nice children in the neighborhood (i. e. many of the nice children*).

But there are also a few naughty (ones).

I hope (that) there are not many of them.

Fortunately there are not many of them.

There are only a few; but it is enough.

No doubt of it.

Note 1. In the plural, the masculine gender of an adjective changes the terminal *ý* into an *í*:

hodný muž, *hodnee moož*, a nice man; **hodní muži**, *hodñee mooži*, nice men.

The feminine gender changes the terminal *á* into an *é*:

hodná žena, *hodná ženā*, a nice woman; **hodné ženy**, *hodné ženy*, nice women.

The neutre gender changes the terminal *é* into an *á*:

hodné dítě, *hodné d'et-sko*, a nice child; **hodná děcka**, *hodná d'et-skā*, nice children.

Dítě, *d'et'e*, (child,) follows the feminine in the plural: **hodné děti**, *hodné d'et'i*, nice children.

Note 2. Adjectives containing in their last syllable the hard consonants **h, ch, k, r**, change these consonants in the plural of the masculine animate gender into **z, š, c, ř**, in the same manner as stated in Lesson XV, Note 3. For example:

*) **Mnogo, málo, pár, kolik, několik**, (many, few, a few, how many, some), as well as all numbers after "four" (see foot-notes in Lessons XVIII and XXIX) govern the *genitive or possessive* case; hence the noun, or pronoun, adjective, which follows them, must always appear in that case.

dlouhý had, *dloũhee hăd*, a long snake; **dlouzí hadi**, *dloũzee hăďi*, long snakes;
hluchý muž, *hlũkhee moož*, a deaf man; **hluší muži**, *hlũshee mooži*, deaf men;
velký hoch, *velkee hõkh*, a big boy; **velcí hoši**, *veltsee hõ-she*, big boys;
dobrý soused, *dobree soũsed*, a good neighbor; **dobří sousedi**, *dob-rshee soũsed'i*, good neighbors.

Note 3. The following table presents a complete view of the plural number of adjectives ending in *ý* (*á*, *é*).

The *nominative* and *accusative* cases :

hodní muži (*accus. hodné muže*), *hodněe mooži*, (*hodné moožě*), nice men;
hodné ženy, *hodné žěny*, nice women;
hodná děcka, *hodná ďetskă*, nice children.

The *genitive* or *possessive* case :

hodných mužů, žen, děcek, *hodneekh moožoo, žen, ďetsek*, of the nice men, women, children.

The *locative* case :

o hodných mužích, ženách, děckách, *o hodneekh moožeeekh, ženákch, ďetskákch*, about the nice men, women, children.

The *instrumental* case :

s hodnými muži, ženami, děcky, *shodneemi mooži, ženămi, ďetski*, with the nice men, women, children.

Note 4. In common discourse, however, the grammatical distinction of gender in the nominative plural of this class of adjectives is treated as perfectly useless, which in fact it is. The Bohemian language, as it lives in the daily intercourse of millions, employs the masculine singular form of the adjective in all three genders of the plural, recognizing only one form of declension :

hodný muži, hodný ženy, hodný děti (or děcka); the nice men, women, children;

hodných mužů, žen, dětí; of the nice men, women, children;
and so forth.

LESSON XXI.

Sousedův, m. *soŭsedoof* } the
sousedova, f. *soŭsedŏvǎ* } neigh-
sousedovo, n. *soŭsedŏvŏ* } bor's.
sousedovi, pl. *soŭsedŏvi* }

bratrův, m. *brǎtroof*, the brother's
plný, á, é *pl-nee* full
nový, á, é *nŏvee* new
falešný, á, é *fǎleshnee* false
co nového? *tsŏ nŏvéhŏ*, what is
the news?

noviny, pl. *nŏviny* news, news-
paper

tiskárna, f. *tiskárnǎ* printing office
list *list* paper, sheet, leaf

hlas, m. *hlǎss* voice

sloupec, m. *sloŭpets* column

sloupce *sloŭp-tsŏ* columns

čísti *cheest'i, cheest*, to read

čteme *chtěmě* we read

v tom, m. & n. *ftŏm* } in that

v té, f. *fté* }

proto *prŏtŏ* hence, therefore

proto ale přece, *prŏtŏ alě prshě-tsě*,

in spite of that, notwith-

standing that

denní *děňee* daily

týdenní *teeděňee* weekly

denník, m. *děňeek*, daily paper

týdenník, m. *teeděňeek* weekly „

dnešní *dnes-h-nee* to-day's

včerejší *fchěreyshee* yesterday's

poslední *pŏsledňee* last

volba, f. *volbǎ* election

zpráva, f. *sprǎvǎ* advice

den co den, *den tsŏ den*, day by day

co, něco *tsŏ, ňetsŏ* something

brzo hotovi, *berzo hotŏvi*, soon done

přinesl *prshi-nessl* he brought

dopadnouti, *dŏpǎdnoŭt*, to come

out, to result

podívej se, *pŏd'eevey sě*, look (thou)

podívejte se, *pŏd'eeveytě sě*, look

(you)

pokaždé, *pŏkǎždě*, every time

též *těž* also

věřiti, *vyě-rshi'ti, vyě-rshit*, to be-

lieve

nesmíte *něsmeetě* you must not

pracovati *prǎtsŏvǎt* to work

pracuje *prǎtsŭyě* works

EXERCISES.

Kdo to byl?
 To byl sousedův syn.
 Přinesl něco?
 Přinesl nám noviny.
 Sousedovy noviny?
 Ano, sousedovy noviny.
 Jsou to denní nebo týdenní noviny?
 Je to denník.
 Jaký je to denník?
 Je to Denní Hlas.
 Bratrův hoch pracuje v té tiskár-
 ně, myslím.
 Ano, a sousedova dcera též.
 Bratrova dcera chce tam pracovat
 též.
 A Hodanova Marie také.

Who was it?
 That was (our) neighbor's son.
 Has he brought something?
 He brought (to) us a newspaper.
 Our neighbor's newspaper?
 Yes, our neighbor's paper.
 Is it a daily or a weekly newspaper?
 It is a daily.
 What daily is it?
 It is the Daily Voice.
 My brother's boy works in that
 printing-office, I think.
 Yes, and (our) neighbor's daughter
 also.
 My brother's daughter wants to
 work there also.
 And Mary Hodan too.

Je to dnešní list?
 Je dnešní; ale sousedův Jan také
 přinesl včerejší list.
 Co je nového? Podívej se do dnešní-
 ho listu.
 Ve dnešním listu není mnoho nově-
 ho; — jen něco o poslední volbě.
 Jak dopadla poslední volba?
 Hned to budu čísti.
 Budeme brzy hotovi s dnešním
 listem.

Is it to-day's paper?
 It is to-day's; but (neighbor's) John
 also brought yesterday's paper.
 What is the news? Look (thou) into
 to-day's paper.
 In to-day's paper there is not much
 news; only something about the
 last election.
 How did the last election come out?
 I shall read it right away.
 We shall soon be done with to-day's
 paper.

Denní listy vždycky (*dít-ski*) mají
 něco nového.
 Pravda, v denních listech je po-
 každé co čísti.

Daily papers always have some-
 thing new.
 To be sure, in daily papers there is
 every time something to read.

Ale nesmíte vždy věřiti denním listům.

S denními listy je to tak : sloupce musí býti plné den co den.

Proto jsou někdy falešné zprávy v denních listech.

Proto ale přece rádi čteme denní listy.

Čteme několik denních listů (*genit. case*, — “of the daily papers”).

But you must not always believe the daily papers.

With the daily papers it is so: the columns must be full day by day.

Hence there are sometimes false advices in daily papers.

In spite of that we like to read the daily papers.

We read several daily papers.

Note 1. Adjectives ending in **í**, like **denní**, **dnešní**, **poslední**, **včerejší**, have the same termination in all genders and both numbers; and in the singular of the feminine gender they remain unchanged in all cases; in the masculine and neutre gender the genitive case is characterized by the termination **ího**, the dative by **ímu**, the locative and instrumental by **ím**, — corresponding with **ého**, **ému**, **ém** & **ým** of the main order of adjectives.

In the plural, their declension is the same in all three genders, showing the termination **ích** in the genitive and locative, **ím** in the dative, and **ími** in the instrumental case.

Note 2. There is also a class of adjectives derived from nouns denoting persons or animals, by means of the suffixes **ův**, **ova**, **ovo**, according to gender. They are called “possessive adjectives”, and their sense is rendered in English by the “possessive case” of the noun :

sousedův syn,	<i>soŭsedoof syn,</i>	the neighbor's son;
sousedova dcera,	<i>soŭsedďvǎ tsěřǎ,</i>	the neighbor's daughter;
sousedovo dítě,	<i>soŭsedďvǒ d'et'e,</i>	the neighbor's child;
sousedovi synové,	<i>soŭsedďvi synďvė,</i>	the neighbor's sons;
sousedovy dcery (dětí),	<i>soŭsedďvi tsěry (d'et'i),</i>	the neighbor's daughters (children).

From feminine nouns they are derived by the suffixes **in**, **ina**, **ino** (**iny** in the plural, in colloquial usage):

ženin klobouk, *žeň'in klobouk*, the woman's (or wife's) bonnet;
ženiny šaty, pl. *žeň'iny sháty*, the woman's (or wife's) clothes or dress.

Grammatically, these adjectives have their own mode of declension; but colloquially, they are declined just like adjectives of the main order : **hodný, á, é.**

Note 3. A few more examples of such possessive adjectives as are commonly in use, in connection with nouns of different gender, will make the student sufficiently familiar with them:

Otec, *otěts*, the father :

otecův klobouk , m.	<i>otsoof klobouk</i> ,	the father's hat;
otecova čepice , f.	<i>otsová chěpitsě</i> ,	the father's cap;
otecovo místo , n.	<i>otsově meestě</i> ,	the father's place;

Matka, *mātkā*, the mother;

matčín pokoj , m.	<i>mātchin pōkoy</i> ,	the mother's room;
matčina stoličice , f.	<i>mātchinā stolitsě</i> ,	the mother's chair;
matčino slovo , n.	<i>mātchinō slovō</i> ,	the mother's word.

Sestra, *sestrā*, the sister :

sestrín šál , m.	<i>sest-rshin shawl</i> ,	the sister's shawl;
sestrčina taška , f.	<i>sest-rshinā tāshkā</i> ,	the sister's satchel;
sestrčino piano , n.	<i>sest-rshinō piāno</i> ,	the sister's piano.

Hoch, *hōkh*, the boy :

hochův míč , m.	<i>hōkhoof meech</i> ,	the boy's ball;
hochova mapa , f.	<i>hōkhovā mǎpā</i> ,	the boy's map;
hochovo pero , n.	<i>hōkhovō perō</i> ,	the boy's pen;

Holka, *holkā*, the girl :

holčín kufr , m.	<i>holchin kūffer</i> ,	the girl's trunk;
holčina postel , f.	<i>holchinā postell</i> ,	the girl's bed;
holčino prádlo , n.	<i>holchinō prádlō</i> ,	the girl's linen.

REMARK. It will be noticed that in the derivatives from feminine nouns ending in **ka, ra**, the hard consonants **k, r**, change into the soft consonants **č, ř**: **matka, matčín**; **sestra, sestřín**.

LESSON XXII.

Mladý, á, é	<i>mládee</i>	young	přítel, m.	<i>prshee-tel</i>	friend
mladší	<i>mlád-shee</i>	younger	obchod, m.	<i>ob-khōd</i>	business
nejmladší	<i>ney-mlád-shee</i>	youngest	obchodník, m.	<i>ob-khōd-ñeek,</i>	mer-
starý, á, é	<i>stáree</i>	old		<i>chant, business man;</i>	
starší	<i>stār-shee</i>	older	kram, m.	<i>krám</i>	store
nejstarší	<i>ney-stār-shee</i>	oldest	sklad, m.	<i>sklād</i>	warehouse
bohatší	<i>bohāt-shee</i>	richer	zboží, n.	<i>zbožee</i>	goods, stock
nejbohatší	<i>ney-bohāt-shee</i>	richest			of goods;
chudší	<i>khūd-shee</i>	poorer	železný, á, é	<i>želēznee,</i>	of iron;
nejchudší	<i>ney-khūd-shee</i>	poorest	železné zboží,	<i>želēzné zbožee,</i>	hard-
nejposlednější	<i>ney-posled-ñeyshee</i>				ware;
	last of all, the very last		konkurent, m.	<i>concūrent,</i>	compet-
jak se jmenuje?	<i>yāk sě menūyě,</i>				itor;
	what is his name?		lidi, lidé,	<i>līd'i, līdé,</i>	people
bud' jak bud',	<i>būd' yāk būd',</i>	be it	jeden z (ze),	<i>yēden z (zě),</i>	one of
	as it may; no matter how it is;		jeho	<i>yěhō</i>	his
není-li pravda?	<i>neyñi-li prāvda,</i>		zatím	<i>zāt'eem</i>	} on the contrary
	isn't it so?		naopak	<i>nā-opāk</i>	
je-li možná!	<i>yelli mōžná,</i>	is it pos-	mezi	<i>mězi</i>	among
	sible!		přes	<i>prshēs</i>	over, across
já myslel,	<i>yá mis-lēl,</i>	I thought	skoupý, á, é	<i>skoūpee</i>	miserly
oni myslí,	<i>oñi mislee,</i>	they think	štědrý, á, é	<i>sh'tedree</i>	liberal
bydlíte	<i>bīdleetě</i>	you live (reside)	patri	<i>pātrshee</i>	belongs.

známý, á, é *známee,* known; (used as a noun) acquaintance;

půl leta, *pool letě,* half a year;

ze všech, *zě fshěkh,* of all.

EXERCISES.

Jsem rád že jste tu.

Vy bydlíte teda v B.?

Ano; už přes rok.

Já mám přítele*) v B.

Je bohatý obchodník; — má veliký sklad — a krám plný zboží na Washington ulici.

Jaký má obchod?

Železné zboží. (Obchod v železném zboží).

Jak se jmenuje?

Jmenuje se Josef Baldwin; — znáte ho?

Znám ho; — je bohatý, — ale jeho konkurent p. Adams je bohatší, — a pan Fleming je nejbohatší.

Buď jak buď, pan Baldwin patří mezi nejbohatší obchodníky ve městě B.

Ano, jest jeden z nejbohatších obchodníků, — to je pravda.

Ale není pravda, že je skoupý; — naopak, — on je tuze štědrý.

Jeho soused přes ulici, pan Wild, je také můj známý; — myslím že je posud chudý muž.

Ano, je prý chudší než lidi myslí; — však není ten nejchudší obchodník ve městě.

I am glad that you are here.

You live, then, in B.?

Yes; already over a year.

I have a friend in B.

He is a rich merchant; — he has a large warehouse — and a store full of goods on Washington street.

What business has he?

Hardware. (A hardware business).

What is his name?

His name is Joseph Baldwin; — do you know him?

I know him; — he is rich, — but his competitor Mr. Adams is richer, — and Mr. Fleming is the richest.

Be it as it may, Mr. Baldwin belongs among the richest business men in the city of B.

Yes, he is one of the richest merchants, — that is true.

But it is not true, that he is miserly; — on the contrary, — he is very liberal.

His neighbor across the street, Mr. Wild, is also my acquaintance; — I think that he is still a poor man.

Yes, he is said to be poorer than people think; — but he is not the poorest business man in town.

*) The noun **přítel** is somewhat irregular in its declension: **přítele**, *prshee-telě*, in the genitive and accusative case (of a friend; a friend); **příteli**, the dative, also the vocative (to a friend; friend!). The plural is **přátelé**, *prshá-telé*, the friends; **prátele**, *prshá-tel*, of the friends.

Váš Robert je klerkem*), není-li pravda?

Ano, je**) klerkem už půl leta.

Myslím že Robert bude dobrý obchodník (or dobrým obchodníkem).

Robert je pilný hoch, — ale Frank je pilnější, — a Edward je nej-pilnější ze všech.

Není Frank starší než Robert?

Ne; Robert je starší a Edward je nejstarší.

Je-li možná! — Já myslel, že Robert je mladší než Frank, — a Frank zatím je nejmladší.

Your Robert is a clerk, is he not?

Yes, he has been a clerk for half-a-year.

I think that Robert will be a good business man.

Robert is an industrious boy, — but Frank is more industrious, — and Edward is the most industrious of all.

Is not Frank older than Robert?

No, Robert is older, and Edward is the oldest.

Is it possible! — I thought that Robert was younger than Frank, — and Frank, on the contrary, is the youngest.

*) The noun **klerk** is here used in the instrumental case, answering the question **čím je?** *cheem yě*, what is he?

This is a common construction. — We may ask: **Co je váš syn?** *what is your son?* — The answer would be: **On je klerk,** *he is a clerk.*

We may also ask: **Čím je váš syn?** (which, in English, is identical with the first question;) the answer would be: **On je klerkem,** *he is a clerk.*

In a similar manner we say in Bohemian, using the instrumental case:

Jsem farmerem,	I am a farmer;
on je farmerem,	he is a farmer;
on je obchodníkem,	he is a merchant;
je generalem,	he is a general; etc.

) **Je, on je, on jest, *he is,* the simple present tense of **býti,** *to be,* is also used in Bohemian for the perfect tense *he has been.* (See Lesson IX, Note 1.) Similarly we say:

jsem tu rok, I have been here a year;

já jsem tu rok, “ “ “ “ “ “

jsem farmerem deset let, I have been a farmer for ten years;

j sme doma týden, we have been at home a week;

j sme sami přes rok, we have been alone over a year; etc.

Máte také dcery?

Mám dceru; je ještě mladší než hoch Frank.

To je nejposlednější dítě.

To je má celá rodina.

Have you also daughters?

I have a daughter; she is still younger than the boy Frank.

That is the very last child.

That is my whole family.

Note 1. In the English language, the comparative degree of adjectives is formed either by adding **er**, or by placing **more** before them: young, *younger*; industrious, *more industrious*.

The superlative degree is formed either by adding **est (st)**, or by placing **most** before the adjective: *youngest*; *most industrious*.

In Bohemian, the comparative degree is formed by adding **ší** or **ější** (sometimes **ejší**) in place of the final **ý** (**á**, **é**):

mladý, **á**, **é** *mláde*, young; mlad-ší, *mládshee*, younger;

pilný, **á**, **é** *pillnee*, industrious; piln-ější, *pillñeyshee*, more industrious.

The superlative degree is always formed by prefixing **nej**, *ney*, to the comparative degree:

nej-mladší, *neymládshee*, youngest;

nej-pilnější, *neypillñeyshee*, most industrious.

Note 2. Some adjectives, in Bohemian as well as in English, have an irregular comparison. The most common of them are the following:

dobrý,	<i>dobree</i> ,	good;	lepší,	<i>lepshee</i> ,	better;
zlý,	<i>zlee</i> ,	bad;	horší,	<i>horshee</i> ,	worse;
malý,	<i>málee</i> ,	small;	menší,	<i>menshee</i> ,	smaller;
velký,	<i>velkee</i> ,	large;	větší,	<i>vyětshee</i> ,	larger;
dlouhý,	<i>dloýhee</i> ,	long;	delší,	<i>delshee</i> ,	longer;
vysoký,	<i>visōkee</i> ,	high;	vyšší,	<i>vishee</i> ,	higher;
hluboký,	<i>hlūbokee</i> ,	deep;	hlubší,	<i>hlūbshee</i> ,	deeper;
široký,	<i>shirokee</i> ,	wide;	širší,	<i>shirshee</i> ,	wider;
daleký,	<i>dālekee</i> ,	far;	další,	<i>dālshee</i> ,	farther;

blízký,	<i>bleskee,</i>	near;	bližší,	<i>blishee,</i>	nearer;
hezký,	<i>hesskee,</i>	pretty, (nice);	hezčí,	<i>hess-chee,</i>	prettier;
lehký,	<i>lēhkee,</i>	light;	lehčí,	<i>lēh-chee,</i>	lighter;
měkký,	<i>myěkee,</i>	soft;	měkkí,	<i>myěk-chee,</i>	softer.

The superlative is formed without exception by prefixing **nej** to the comparative.

LESSON XXIII.

Já jel,	<i>yá yell,</i>	I rode, I went;	domov, m.	<i>dōmof,</i>	a home;
čekal,	<i>chekāl,</i>	(he) waited;	obydli, n.	<i>ōbidlee,</i>	dwelling;
pravil,	<i>prāvil,</i>	(he) said;	světnice, f.	<i>swyētñitsě</i>	} room;
vešel,	<i>věshell</i>	went in;	sednice, f.	<i>sedñitsě</i>	
psala,	<i>psālā,</i>	(she) wrote;	ložnice, f.	<i>lož-ñitsě,</i>	bedroom;
neviděl jsem,	<i>nēvid'el sem,</i>	I did not see;	dráha, f.	<i>dráhā,</i>	road, railroad;
milujem se,	<i>milūyem se,</i>	we love each other;	po dráze,	<i>pō drázě,</i>	by railroad;
postavím si,	<i>postāveem si,</i>	I shall build for myself;	nádraží, n.	<i>nádrā-žee,</i>	depot;
at' to stojí,	<i>at' tō stoyee,</i>	let it cost;	pohodlí, n.	<i>pōhodlee,</i>	comfort;
řka,	<i>rshkā,</i>	saying;	pohodlný, á, é,	<i>pōhode'nee,</i>	comfortable;
řekl jsem,	<i>rshēkl sem,</i>	I said, I told;	švagrová,	<i>shvāgrová,</i>	sister-in-law;
		I have said (told);	dítko, n.	<i>d'eetkō,</i>	child, baby;
mluvil jsem,	<i>mlūvil sem,</i>	I have spoken; I spoke;	nemoc, f.	<i>nēmots,</i>	sickness;
slyšel jsem,	<i>slishell sem;</i>	I have heard; I heard;	všelico,	<i>fshellitsō,</i>	different things;
sednouti si,	<i>sednoūt si,</i>	to sit down;	dlouho,	<i>dloūhō,</i>	long, a long time;
tázati se,	<i>tázāt sě,</i>	to ask, to inquire;	onehdy,	<i>ōněh-de,</i>	the other day;
			zdráv, a, o,	<i>zdrāv,</i>	well, healthy;
			unaven, a, o,	<i>ūnāven,</i>	tired;
			takový, á, é,	<i>tākovee,</i>	such;
			vedle,	<i>vě-dlē,</i>	next to; side by side;
			věru,	<i>vyěrū,</i>	indeed;

zůstati , <i>zoostăt</i> , to stay, to remain;	pro ,	<i>prŏ</i> ,	for.
svlékni se , <i>svlékni se</i> , undress;	napřed ,	<i>năprshed</i> ,	first, ahead;
lehl jsem si , <i>lě-hl sem si</i> , I lied down;			

se, sebe, *sě, sěbě*, oneself; myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself;
ourselves, yourselves, themselves;

si, sobě, *si, sŏbyě*, to oneself; to myself, etc. etc.

sebou, *sěboŭ*, by or with oneself; etc. etc.

EXERCISES.

Já jel*) onehdy do Chicago; — mám tam bratra; — chtěl jsem ho vidět, — též jeho obydlí; — on čekal na mě v nádraží. — **Já přijel** po dráze C. & NW.

Pravil mi: “Rád tě vidím, bratře! — Čekal jsem tebe; — ukážu ti můj domov. — Dáme tobě naši největší ložnici.

Musíš zůstat u mě aspoň týden; — tak teda pojď se mnou.”

Řekl jsem mu, že já také rád ho vidím. — **Jsi zdrav?** tázal jsem se ho.

“**Ano, jsem tuze zdrav**”, pravil on; “**má žena je také zdráva**

I went the other day to Chicago; — I have a brother there; — I wanted to see him, — also his dwelling; — he waited for me at the depot. — I came by the C. & NW. railroad.

He said to me: “I am glad to see thee, brother! — I have been expecting thee; — I will show to thee my home. — We shall give (to) thee our largest bedroom.

Thou must stay with me (i. e. at my house) at least a week; — so, then, come with me.”

I told him that I also was glad to see him? — Are you well? I asked him.

“Yes, I am very well”, said he; “my wife is also well and the baby

*) **Jeti**, *yet'i* (commonly *yet*), to ride, to go by railroad or otherwise. **Já jsem jel**, *yá sem yell*, I rode, I went, — I have gone; **já jel**, *yá yell*, is the past tense with the auxilliary **jsem** left out, as explained in Lesson X. The same applies to **já přijel**, *yá prshi-yell*, I came (by train or other means of conveyance). From the verb **jeti**, *yet'i* (or *yet*), to ride, or to go by some conveyance, about as many new verbs can be derived by prefixes as from **jíti**, *yeet'i* (or *yeet*) to go. See Lesson XIII, Note 6.

a dítě je také zdravo. — Jsme spokojeni a milujem se.”

A věru, na něm neviděl jsem žádnou nemoc. — Švagrová psala pravdu o něm, že je zdrav.

Šel jsem s ním. — Za půl hodiny byli jsme u něho. — Já šel napřed, on za mnou. — Jeho žena též ráda mě viděla; — ona také mě čekala.

Přinesl jsem jí všelico; — něco pro ní, něco pro její dítě. — Mluvil jsem s ní dlouho o všeličem, — a slyšel jsem od ní mnoho nového. — Ono bylo skoro všecko nové pro mě.

Myslil jsem si: Mají pěkný dům, — pohodlný domov. — Tolik světla! — Já si postavím takový dům; — malou ložnici pro sebe a dvě veliké ložnice pro rodinu. — Postavím sobě též vedle písárnu.

Ať to stojí něco; — postavím to pro sebe. — Anebo koupím si pěkný dům.

Sedl jsem si na sofa, řka: Jsem unaven!

“Udělej si pohodlí, — svlékni se,” — pravil bratr.

Já se svlékl a lehl jsem si.

is well, too.—We are contented and we love each other.”

And indeed, on him I didn't see any sickness.—Sister-in-law wrote the truth about him that he was well.

I went with him.—In half an hour we were at his house.—I went in first, he (followed) after me. — His wife also was glad to see me; — she also expected me.

I brought to her different things; —something for her, something for her baby.—I spoke with her long about different things, — and I heard from her many news.—It was nearly all news to me.

I thought to myself: They have a nice house,—a comfortable home. —So many rooms!—I shall build me such a house;—a small bedroom for myself, and two large bedrooms for the family. — I shall build myself also next to it an office.

Let it cost something; — I shall build it for myself.—Or, I shall buy me a nice house.

I sat down on the sofa, saying: I am tired!

“Make thyself comfortable,—undress (thyself),” — said my brother.

I undressed and lay (myself) down.

Note 1. The personal pronouns *já, ty, on (ona, ono)*, show the following variation :

Já,	yá,	I;	ty,	te,	thou;
mě,	myě,	me;	tě, tebe,	tě, těbě,	thee;
mi, mně,	me, mñe,	to me;	ti, tobě,	ti, tōbyě,	to thee;
se mnou,	sě mnoů,	with me;	s tebou,	stěboů,	with thee;
on, ono,	ōn, ōnō,	he, it;	ona,	ōnā,	she;
ho,	hō,	him, it;	ji, jí,	ye, yee,	her, to her;
jeho,	yěhō,	his, its;	její,	yěyee,	her, hers;
mu, jemu, němu,	mů, yěmů, ñěmů,	to him, to it;			
v něm,	vñem,	in him, in it;	v ní,	vñee,	in her;
s ním,	sñem,	with him, with it;	s ní,	sñee,	with her.

Note 2. Adjectives sometimes take an indefinite form:

on je zdrav, ōn yě zdráv, he is well (or healthy);

ona je zdráva, ōnā yě zdrávā, she is well;

ono je zdravo, ōnō yě zdrávō, it is well;

but when placed before a noun, the adjective must always have its definite form: **zdravý muž,** zdrávee moož, a healthy man; **zdravá žena,** zdrávā ženā, a healthy woman; **zdravé dítě,** zdrávē d'eeťe, a healthy child.

The following indefinite adjectives are of common occurrence:

nemocen,	němotsen,	instead of	nemocný,	němotsnee,	sick;
mrtev,	mertev,	“ “	mrtvý,	mertvee,	dead;
stár,	stár,	“ “	starý,	stāree,	old;
mocen,	mōtsen,	“ “	mocný,	motsnee,	capable;
znám,	znám,	“ “	známý,	známee,	known;
vesel,	vě-sell,	“ “	veselý,	vesselee,	cheerful;
práv,	práv,	“ “	pravý,	právvee,	just;
bos,	bōs,	“ “	bosý,	bosee,	barefoot.

Adjectives ending in **vý** and **ný** frequently take the indefinite form in the nominative case, changing their termination into **v** and **en** (**va**, **na** in the feminine, **vo**, **no** in the neutre gender).

Note 3. As observed in Note 2, Lesson XIII, the past tense of regular Bohemian verbs is formed from the infinitive by an **l** in place of the usual termination **ti** :

jeti ,	<i>yet'i or yet</i> ,	to ride;	jel ,	<i>yell</i> ,	rode;
čekati ,	<i>chekăt</i> ,	to wait;	čekal ,	<i>chekăl</i> ,	waited;
mluviti ,	<i>mlůvit</i> ,	to speak;	mluvil ,	<i>mlůvil</i> ,	spoke;

But some verbs ending in **outi** show a slight deviation from this rule, changing **outi** into **ul**, and having besides a short form of the past tense, in which the letter **l** is substituted for the whole termination **nouti**, being attached immediately to the stem of the verb :

lehnouti ,	<i>leh-noŭti</i> (or <i>leh-noŭt</i>),	to lie down;	lehnul ,	lehl ,	<i>leh-nŭl</i> , <i>lě-hl</i> ,	lay down;
sednouti ,	<i>sednoŭt</i> ,	to sit down;	sednul ,	sedl ,	<i>sednŭl</i> , <i>sedl</i> ,	sat down;
svléknouti ,	<i>svlék-noŭt</i> ,	to undress;	svléknul ,	svlékl ,	<i>svléknŭl</i> , <i>svlékl</i> ,	undressed.

The verb **svléknouti** has also an irregular form of the infinitive: **svléci**, *svlé-tsi*. In common conversation we hear **slíknout**, **slíkl**, **slečeny**, *sleeknoŭt*, (to undress), *sleekl*, *slěchěnee* (undressed, — as past participle and adjective).

LESSON XXIV.

Ať jde ,	<i>ăt dě</i> ,	let him (her, it) come, or go;	to je škoda ,	<i>tě yě shkodă</i> ,	that is a pity;
zůstanem ,	<i>zoostānem</i> ,	we shall stay;	pohostění , n.	<i>pohōstěnee</i> ,	hospitality;
zůstaň ,	<i>zoostāň</i> ,	stay (thou);	návštěva , f.	<i>náfshťevă</i> ,	visit;
ukáž ,	<i>ŭkăsh</i> ,	show (thou), let see;	často ,	<i>chăstŏ</i> ,	often;
přijeti , <i>prshi-yet</i> ,	to come (by rail-way, etc);		buď...nebo ,	<i>bŭď...nebŏ</i> ,	either...or;
přijedem , <i>prshi-yědem</i> ,	we shall come (by some conveyance);		nemám co ,	<i>nemám tsŏ</i> ,	I have nothing (to....);

líbí se mi, *leebee sě me,* I like it
(him, her); it pleases me;
bude se jim líbit, *bŭdě sě yim lee-bit,*
they will like it; it will please them;
bude jim milé, *bŭdě yim milé,* it will
please them:
doufám, *doŭfám,* I hope;
v Chicagu*), *fchicago,* in Chicago.

přijedou, *prshi-yědoŭ,* they will
come;
povídal jsem, *poveedál sem,* I said;
slíbiti, *slee-bit,* to promise;
tajiti, *táyit,* to hide;
ukrývati, *ŭkreewăt,* to cover up,
to hide, to conceal;
nemůžem, *nemoožem,* we can not;

EXERCISES.

My zůs anem v Chicagu, — pravil bratr; — pro nás je to dobré místo; — ukaž nám lepší! — Ať rodina jde sem, — a zůstaň zde s námi.

Já pravil: Vy máte zde pěkný domov; — líbí se mi u vás; — myslím že často přijedem k vám, —

We shall stay in Chicago. — said (my) brother; — for us it is a good place; — show (to) us a better one! — Let (your) family come here, — and stay here with us.

I said: You have here a nice home; — I like it here (i. e. at your house, with you, — u vás); — I think that we

*) If we insist upon declining **Chicago** like a Bohemian noun of the neutre gender (ending in **o**), we should say in the locative case: **v Chicagu, fchicagŭ.** However, this is rather an exception among the Bohemians in America, names of places of foreign origin being usually left unchanged, the same as in English. This may not exactly satisfy unyielding grammarians, but it is a rule dictated by common sense, the inflection of such proper names being not only useless, but in many cases perfectly absurd, and often impossible. Hence we say: **do Milwaukee, v Milwaukee, za Milwaukee** (to Milwaukee, in M., beyond M.); **do Kewaunee, do Spring Valley, do Dubuque, do Des Moines,** etc. To attempt an inflection of such names, according to the rules of some declension of Bohemian nouns, would be an intolerable absurdity. The name of **Chicago**, indeed, yields easily to the Bohemian declension, and hence it is now and then declined; the same is true of some other names. There are also a few names of places well known throughout the world, which are always declined in Bohemian, presenting no difficulty to such a process; such are for instance: **New York, — v New Yorku, do New Yorku, za New Yorkem** (in New York, to N. Y., beyond N. Y.); **Boston, — v Bostonu, do Bostonu, za Bostonem; Washington, do Washingtonu;** and some others. — These names are masculine, by force of their termination.

buď já, nebo jeden z nás. — Ale zůstatí s vámi nemůžem. — Náš domov je na venku.

Oni oba pravili: To je škoda!

Tázal jsem se jich, kdy přijedou k nám na návštěvu; — povídal jsem, že dáme jim také hezkou světnici; — že se jim bude líbit u nás, — jako se mně líbí u nich.

Slíbili přijeti na návštěvu. — Doufám že pohostění od nás bude milé jim, jako je milé mně od nich.

Ten den mluvil jsem s nimi dlouho; — nemám co tajiti před nimi; — nemám co ukrývati. — Tak mluvili jsme, až nebylo už co mluvíti.

shall often come to you, — either I, or one of us. — But to stay with you we can not. — Our home is in the country.

They both said: That is a pity!

I asked them, when they would come to us on a visit; — I said, that we should give (to) them also a nice room; — that they will like it at our place (u nás), — as I like it at their house (u nich).

They promised to come on a visit. — I hope that hospitality from us will be pleasing *to them*, as it is pleasing *to me from them*.

That day I spoke with them a long time; — I have nothing to hide from them; — I have nothing to conceal. — So we spoke, until there was nothing further to speak about.

Note. The personal pronouns **my, vy, oni** (ony f., ona, n.) show the following variation, which has already become somewhat familiar to the student from the preceding lessons :

my,	me,	we;	vy,	ve,	you;
nás,	nás,	us;	vás,	vás,	you;
nám,	nám,	to us;	vám,	vám,	to you;
s námi,	snámi,	with us;	s vámi,	svámi,	with you;

oni, (ony, ona), *oňi*, (*oňe, oňě*), they;

jich, *yikh*, of them, them;

jim, *yim*, to them;

je, *yě*, them;

v nich, *vñikh*, in them, (*o nich*, about them; *od nich*, from them; etc.)

s nimi, *sñime*, with them; (*za nimi*, behind or after them, etc.)

LESSON XXV.

Státi,	<i>stát'i (stát),</i> to stand; to cost;	tisíc, m.	<i>tiseets,</i>	thousand;
stojí,	<i>stoyee,</i> stands; costs;	stát, m.	<i>stát,</i>	state;
stál,	<i>stál,</i> stood; cost;	úcta, f.	<i>ootstá,</i>	respect;
mluví,	<i>mlúvee,</i> speaks;	rozprávka, f.	<i>ros-práfká,</i>	} talk, conversation, discourse;
půjčil,	<i>půychil</i> (colloquially : <i>přichil</i>), lent, loaned;	hovor, m.	<i>hōvor,</i>	
snáší se,	<i>snáshee sě,</i> agrees;	zoubek, m.	<i>zoūbek,</i>	little tooth;
smál se,	<i>smál sě,</i> he laughed;	něco,	<i>ñetsō,</i>	some;
podívej se,	<i>pod'eevey sě,</i> look (thou);	než,	<i>nesh,</i>	than;
podívejte se,	<i>pod'eeveytě sě,</i> look (you);	rozen, a, o	<i>rōzen</i>	} born
sejde se,	<i>seydě sě,</i> (he, she, it) will meet;	narozen, a, o	<i>nārōzen</i>	
		právě jako,	<i>právyě yákkō,</i>	same as;
		nebyla u nás,	<i>nebillā ůnáss,</i>	she was not at our house; she has not been to see us.

EXERCISES.

Můj bratr je posud mladý; — je mladší než já. — Já jsem o dvě leta starší než on.

Dům mého bratra stojí teprv rok; — stál pět tisíc*) dollarů; — sou sed půjčil něco peněz mému bratru.

On má rád mého bratra; — on mluví o mém bratru s úctou. — S mým bratrem každý se snáší dobře.

My brother is still young; — he is younger than I. — I am (by) two years older than he.

The house of my brother stands only a year; — it cost five thousand dollars; — the neighbor loaned some money to my brother.

He likes my brother; — he speaks of my brother with respect. — With my brother everybody agrees well.

*) Jeden tisíc, *yěden tiseets*, one thousand; dva, tři, čtyry tisíce, *dwā, trshi, shtiri tiseetsě*, two, three, four thousand; pět tisíc, *pyět tiseets*, five thousand; šest tisíc, *shěst tiseets*, six thousand; and so forth.

Moje švagrová je ze státu Indiana*), — rozena v Terre Haute; — má žena je z Ohio.

Mojí švagrově**) líbí se v Chicagu tuze; — mé ženě líbí se více na venku.

Rozprávka neb hovor s mojí švagrovou jest milý, — velmi milý, — právě jako s mojí ženou. — Nevím kdy sejde se s mou ženou zas; — nebyla u nás dávno.

Podívejte se na moje dítě, — má už zoubek! — pravila švagrová a smála se. — Hošík také smál se na mě. — To je mé dobré dítě! pravila matka.

My sister-in-law is from the state of Indiana, — born in Terre Haute; my wife is from Ohio.

My sister-in-law likes it in Chicago very much; — my wife likes it more in the country.

A conversation or discourse with my sister-in-law is pleasant, — very pleasant, — the same as with my wife. — I don't know when she will meet (with) my wife again; — she has not been to see us a long time.

Look at my baby, — he has already a tooth! — said my sister-in-law and laughed. — The little boy also smiled at me. — That is my good baby! said (his) mother.

Note 1. The so-called possessive pronoun *můj, můj* (my, mine), takes in the feminine gender the form *moje, má*, and in the neutre gender *moje, mé*. Hence we say: *můj bratr*, my brother; *moje sestra* or *má sestra*, my sister; *moje dítě* or *mé dítě*, my child. — The variation of this pronoun is shown in the following table :

<i>můj, m.</i>	<i>můj;</i>	<i>moje, má, f.</i>	<i>moyě, má;</i>	my, mine;
<i>mého,</i>	<i>méhě;</i>	<i>mojí, mé,</i>	<i>moyee, mé;</i>	of my;
<i>mému,</i>	<i>mémě;</i>	<i>mojí, mé,</i>	“ “ ;	to my;
<i>v mém,</i>	<i>vmém;</i>	<i>v mojí, v mé,</i>	<i>v “ v “ ;</i>	in my;
<i>s mým,</i>	<i>smeem;</i>	<i>s mojí, s mou,</i>	<i>smoyee, smou,</i>	with my.

*) Or **Indianny**. See foot note in Lesson XXIV.

**) - *Mojí švagrově, mé ženě*, is the dative case, responding to the question *komu?* (to whom?) *Komu se líbí?* (to whom is it pleasing? (whom does it please?) — *Líbí se mé švagrově;* — *líbí se mé ženě;* — it pleases (to) my sister-in-law; it pleases (to) my wife.

The neutre gender **moje, mé**, shows in the other cases the same variation as the masculine **můj**, excepting the accusative (or objective) and the vocative case, which are like the nominative: **to je mé dítě**, this is my child; **vidím mé dítě**, I see my child; **ó mé dítě!** oh my child!

Note 2. The possessive pronoun **tvůj**, m., *tvůj* (**tvoje** or **tvá**, f., *tvěřě, tvá*; **tvoje** or **tvé**, n., *tvé*), thy, thine, — agrees in its declension perfectly with **můj** (**moje, má, mé**).

The same is true of the possessive pronoun **svůj** (**svoje, svá**, f.; **svoje, své**, n.), *svůj* (*svově, svá, své*), which means "one's own", but frequently stands for **můj, tvůj, jeho, její** (my, thy, his, her), **náš, váš, jich** (our, your, their).

Moji lidé, *moye lidé*, my folks;
půda, f. *poodā*, ground, soil;
krov, m. *krof*, roof;
příbuzný, á, *prshee-bůznee*, relative,
 kinsman, relation;
vlastní, *vlast-ñee*, own;
šťasten, *shťāsten*, happy;
nazpět, *nāspyět*, back;
spěchám, *spyě-khām*, I hasten, I
 hurry;

radši jsem, *rāchi sem*, I like better
 to be;
nejradši jsem, *neyrāchi sem*, I like
 best to be;
nerad jsem, *nerād sem*, I do not
 like to be;
sejdu se, *seydū sě*, I meet;
kolem sebe, *kolem sěbě*, around me
 (him, her, us, etc.)

EXERCISES.

Mí přátelé*) v Chicagu všichni rádi mě viděli; — škoda že moji lidé nebyli se mnou.

Nerad jsem pryč od mých lidí; — pokaždé spěchám nazpět k mým lidem.

Rád vidím své přátele; — rád se sejdu se svými příbuznými; — ale

My friends in Chicago all liked (were glad) to see me; — it is a pity that my folks were not with me.

I do not like to be away from my folks; — every time I hasten back to my folks.

I like to see my friends; — I like to meet (with) my relatives; — but I like

*) See foot-note in Lesson XXII.

radši jsem doma. — Opravdu, nejradši jsem doma s mými lidmi.

Nejradši vidím kolem sebe své lidi. — Jsem šťasten se svými lidmi ve svém vlastním domově, — na své vlastní půdě, — pod svým vlastním krovem.

better to be at home. — Truly, I like best to be at home with my folks.

I like best to see around me my folks. — I am happy with my folks in my own home, — on my own ground, — under my own roof.

Note 2. The plural of **můj** m., **moje** or **má** f., and **moje** or **mé** n., is as follows: **moji**, **mí**, *moye*, *mee*, m.

moje, **mé**, *moyě*, *mé*, f.

moje, **má**, *moyě*, *má*, n.

In common discourse **moje**, **mé** is used in the neutre as well as in the feminine gender. In English, we invariably employ *my* and *mine*.

In the plural number the following variation takes place :

moji, **mí**; **moje mé**; *moyi*, *mee*; *moyě*, *mé*; — my, mine;

mých, *meekh*, of my (**od mých**, from my; **v mých**, in my; etc.), of mine;

mým, *meem*, to my, to mine;

s mými, *smeeme*, with my, with mine; (**za mými**, after or behind mine, etc.)

The plural of **tvůj** m., **tvoje**, **tvá** f., **tvoje**, **tvé** n. (thy, thine) is perfectly analogous: **tvoji**, **tví** m., *tvoyi*, *twee*; **tvoje**, **tvé** f. & n. *tvoyě*, *twé* (thy, thine); **tvých**, *tweekh*, of thine; **tvým**, *tweem*, to thine; **s tvými**, *stweemě*, with thine.

LESSON XXVI.

Základ, m. *záklād*, foundation;

kolik světnic, *kōlik swyēt-nits*, how

many rooms;

kuchyně, f. *kūkhñe*, kitchen

sklep, m. *sklep*, cellar

zahrada, f. *zāhrādā*, garden

zahrádka, f. *zāhrádka*, small garden

strom, m. *strom*, tree

stromy, pl. *stromy*, } trees

stromoví, n. *stromōvee*, }

patro, n.	<i>pátrō,</i>	story	ovoce, n.	<i>ōvotsě,</i>	fruit
studně, f.	<i>stūdñe,</i>	well	ovocné,	<i>ōvotsné,</i>	fruit-bearing
cisterna, f.	<i>tsisternā,</i>	cistern	nesou,	<i>nesou,</i>	they bear
altán, m.	<i>áltán,</i>	bower	mrva, f.	<i>mervá,</i>	manure
plot, m.	<i>plot,</i>	fence	v letě,	<i>vleťe,</i>	in summer
docela,	<i>dotselā,</i>	quite	v zimě,	<i>vzimyě,</i>	in winter
úplně,	<i>oopleñe,</i>	perfectly	z jara,	<i>zyď-rā,</i>	in the spring
dříve, <i>drshee-vě</i> (or <i>drsheel</i>)	}	be-	půda, f.	<i>poodā,</i>	land
prve, <i>pervě,</i>		fore	akr, m.	<i>āker,</i>	acre
je-li pravda? <i>yelli právdā</i>	}	isn't it	zbytek, m.	<i>zby-tek,</i>	remainder
že ne? <i>žě ně?</i>		so?	je, jest, <i>yě, yest,</i>	there is, there are;	
			pouze,	<i>použě,</i>	only.

EXERCISES.

Váš dům je nový, je-li pravda?
 Ano, náš dům je docela nový.
 Základ našeho domu je dobrý.

Ten velký lot patří k vašemu domu, že ne?

Ten lot patří k našemu domu; — je to zbytek akru půdy co jsme měli dříve.

Co je ve vašem domě? kolik světnic máte?

V našem domě je kuchyně, pět světnic a dobrý sklep, — studený v letě, teplý v zimě.

Doufám že jste spokojeni s vaším domem (or se svým domem).

Ano, jsme úplně spokojeni s naším domem.

Váš dům má dvě patra, že ne?

Ne; pouze jedno patro.

Your house is new, isn't it?

Yes, our house is quite new.

The foundation of our house is good.

That large lot belongs to your house, does it not?

That lot belongs to our house; — it is a remainder of the acre of land (what) we had before.

What is in your house? how many rooms have you?

In our house there is a kitchen, five rooms and a good cellar, — cold in summer, warm in winter.

I hope that you are satisfied with your house.

Yes, we are perfectly satisfied with our house.

Your house has two stories, hasn't it?

No; only one story.

Myslím že máte u vašeho domu malou zahradu a za vaším domem studni, též cisternu.

Ano, naše místo je pěkné; — na naší zahradě máme altán; — kolem naší zahrady je vysoký plot. — Je to příjemná zahrádka.

I think that you have by your house a small garden and back of your house a well, also a cistern.

Yes, our place is nice; — in our garden we have a bower; — around our garden there is a high fence. — It is a pleasant little garden.

Naši lidé mají rádi stromoví*). — Naše stromy jsou ovocné. — Z jara dáváme**) mrvu k našim ovocným stromům. — Rád sedám**) s našimi lidmi ve stínu našich stromů.

Our folks like trees. — Our trees are fruit-bearing. — In the spring we put manure to our fruit-trees. — I like to sit with our folks in the shadow of our trees.

Note 1. The possessive pronoun *náš*, (*naše*, f. and n.) shows the following variation:

(*Masculine and neutre gender.*)

<i>náš</i> , m. <i>naše</i> , n.	<i>násh</i> , <i>náshě</i> ,	our, (ours);
<i>našeho</i> ,	<i>náshěhě</i> ,	of our; our (in the accus. or objective case);
<i>našemu</i> ,	<i>náshěmě</i> ,	to our;
<i>v našem</i> ,	<i>vnáshěm</i> ,	in our, (o <i>našem</i> , about our; etc);

(*Feminine gender.*)

<i>naše</i> ,	<i>náshě</i> ,	our, ours;
<i>naši</i> ,	<i>náshi</i> ,	our (in the accus. or objective case);
<i>naši</i> ,	<i>náshée</i> ,	of our, to our; (v <i>naši</i> , in our; s <i>naši</i> , with our; etc.)

*) *Stromoví*, *stromovee*, is a collective noun and means trees (stromy) in general.

**) *Dáti*, *dát'i*, to give; *dávati*, *dávăt'i*, to give repeatedly, to use to give; *dáváme*, *dávámě*, we use to give; we are giving. See Lesson XIII, Note 5. — *Seděti*, *sedět'i*, to sit; *sedati*, *sedăt'i*, to sit repeatedly, to use to sit; *sedám*, I use to sit.

(Plural of all genders.)

naši, m. **naše**, f. & n. *nāshi, nāshě*, our, ours;

našich, *nāshikh*, of our; (**v našich**, in our; etc.)

naším, *nāshim*, to our;

s našimi, *snāshimi*, with our; (**za našimi**, beyond or back of our; etc.)

Note 2. The pronoun **váš** (*vaše*, f. and n.) is perfectly analogous with **naš** in its declension. (Instrumental case m. & n. gender singular, omitted above: **s naším**, **s vaším**, *snāsheem, svāsheem*, with ours, with yours.)

The English words *their* and *theirs* are both expressed by **jich**, — in common discourse nearly always **jejich**; *yikh, yěyikh*. This is in fact the genitive of the personal pronoun **oni** (*ony, ona*), *they*, and naturally remains unchanged. For instance:

Jich dům, **jich domy**, or **jejich dům**, **jejich domy**; *yikh dům, dōmi; yěyikh dům, dōmi*; their house, their houses.

Ten dům jest jejich, *ten dům yest yěyikh*, that house is theirs. — **Ty domy jsou jejich**, *ty dōmi soŭ yěyikh*, those houses are theirs.

LESSON XXVII.

The student is already somewhat acquainted with the indicative pronouns **ten**, **ta**, **to**, this or that; plural: **ti**, **ty**, **ta**, *t'i, ty, tš*, these or those (in common discourse **ty** for all genders). Hence, in a short practical review of their variations he will only meet old acquaintances.

Lidé ,	<i>lidé</i> }	people	kuželna ,	<i>kůželnā</i> ,	bowling-alley;
lidi ,	<i>lidi</i> }		zábava ,	<i>zábāvā</i> ,	amusement;
stavěti ,	<i>stāv'yět</i> ,	to build	bydlí ,	<i>bidlee</i> ,	lives; they live;
stavení ,	<i>stāvě'nee</i> ,	building	co bydlí ,	<i>tsō bidlee</i> ,	who lives
zděný dům ,	<i>zd'enee dům</i> }	brick			(lit. what lives);
cihelný dům ,	<i>tsihelnee dům</i> }		nic nechybí ,	<i>ñits nēkhībee</i> ,	nothing
střecha ,	<i>strshě-khā</i> ,	roof			is wanting;

šindel,	<i>shindell,</i>	shingle	může,	<i>moožě,</i>	can, may;
učitel,	<i>učitell,</i>	teacher	býti za dobré,	<i>beeťi zǎ dobré,</i>	to be
pokojný, á, é,	<i>pokoynee,</i>	quiet			on good terms;
prázny, á, é,	<i>práznee,</i>	vacant	na pravo,	<i>ňǎ právǒ,</i>	to the right;
jistě,	<i>yistě,</i>	surely, certainly;	na levo,	<i>ňǎ ľěvǒ,</i>	to the left.

EXERCISES.

Ten dům je věru pěkný; — je to zděný dům.

Střecha toho domu je ze šindele, není?

Myslím že je. — Nic nechybí tomu domu; — jest příjemno bydleti v tom domě; — s tím domem každý může býti spokojen.

That house is indeed nice; — it is a brick house.

The roof of that house is of shingle (i. e. covered with shingles), is it not?

I think it is.—Nothing is wanting to that house; — it is agreeable to live in that house;—with that house everybody can be satisfied.

Ta zahrada má velkou cenu. — V té zahradě je mnoho ovocného stromů.

Tu zahradu mám radši než park. — Máme také kuželnu v té zahradě, pro naši (or pro svou) zábavu.

To místo s tím stavením a s tou zahradou má vysokou cenu.

That garden has a large value. — In that garden there are many fruit-trees.

That garden I like better than a park.—We have also a bowling-alley in that garden, for our amusement.

That place with the building and garden has a high value.

Ti lidé co bydlí vedle nás, jsou pokojní sousedé; — žádný z těch lidí není zlý; — se všemi těmi lidmi jsme za dobré.

Viděl jsem doktora jíti k těm lidem na pravo od nás; — jistě někdo je nemocen.

The people who live next to us, are quiet neighbors; — nobody (not one) of those people is bad;—with all those people we are on good terms.

I saw the doctor go to those people to the right of us;—surely somebody is sick.

Kdo jsou ti lidé na levo? — Na levo od nás bydlí učitel, pan Stanton, se svou (i. e. s jeho) rodinou.

Ty loty za námi jsou prázdné; — ale budou prý stavět na těch lotech.

Kolik těch lotů je? — Myslím že je šest těch lotů.

Who are those people to the left? — To the left of us lives a teacher, Mr. Stanton, with his family.

Those lots back of us are vacant; — but, it is said, they will build on those lots.

How many of those lots are there? — I think that there are six of those lots.

Note 1. The variation of the indicative pronouns employed in the foregoing is shown to be as follows :

ten, m. **to**, n. *těn*, *tě*, this, that;
toho, *těh*, of this, of that;
tomu, *těm*, to this, to that;
v tom, *těm*, in this, in that;
 (o **tom**, about that; etc)
s tím, *s těm*, with this, with that; (za **tím**, beyond that; etc.

ta, f. *tě*, this, that;
tu, *tě*, this, that (accus. or objec. case);
té, *tě*, to this, to that; **v té**, in that; o **té**, about that; etc.
s tou, *stě*, with this, with that;
za tou, behind that; etc.

Plural :

ti, **ty**, **ta**, these, those;
těch, *těkh*, of those; **v těch**, *vtěkh*, in those; etc.
těm, *těm*, to those;
s těmi, *stěmi*, with those;
za těmi, behind those; etc.

These indicative pronouns often occur in a compound form: **tento**, **tato**, **toto**, always meaning “this one”; in the plural: **tito**, **tyto**, **tato**, “these ones”. Their inflection remains the same, with the suffix **to** attached to the original pronoun in every case: **tohoto**, to this one; **tomuto**, of this one; and so forth.

Note 2. The numeral **jeden** (f. and n. **jedna, jedno**), *yěden, yědnā, yědnō*, one, — agrees perfectly with **ten**, (**ta, to**) in its inflection:

jeden člověk tam byl, one man was there;

viděl jsem jen jednoho (accus. or objective case), I saw only one;

dal jsem to jednomu z nich (*zñíkh*), I gave it to one of them;

v jednom z nich se mejlím*, in one of them I am mistaken;

šel jsem s jedním z nich, I went with one of them.

Jedna žena je zde, one woman is here; — **vidím jednu ženu**, I see one woman; — **mám to od jedné z nich**, I have it from one of them (f.); — **mluvil jsem s jednou**, I spoke with one (f.).

LESSON XXVIII.

Sem ,	<i>sēm</i> ,	hither, here;	lék , m.	<i>lék</i> ,	medicine;
sám ,	<i>sám</i> ,	alone;	lahév , f.	<i>lāhev</i> ,	bottle;
čekáte ,	<i>chēkátě</i> ,	you expect, you await (<i>or</i> you wait);	v lahvi ,	<i>vlāh-vi</i> ,	in the bottle;
nečekám ,	<i>nēchekám</i> ,	I do not ex- pect;	dávka , f.	<i>dāfkā</i> ,	dose;
že přijde ,	<i>žě prshiy-dě</i> ,	that he will (<i>or</i> would) come;	po dávkách ,	<i>pō dāfkākh</i> ,	in doses;
na ulici ,	<i>nā ūlitsi</i> ,	on the street;	nastuzen ,	<i>nāstūzen</i> ,	having a cold;
že jste?	<i>žě stě?</i>	you say you are?	jste nastuzen ,	<i>stě nāstūzen</i> ,	you have a cold;
že s nikým?	<i>žě sñiikeem</i> ,	(literally: that with nobody?) you say with nobody?	nastuzení , n.	<i>nāstūzeñee</i> ,	a cold;
			kašel , m.	<i>kāshell</i> ,	cough;
			dátí vinu ,	<i>dāťi vinū</i> ,	to charge to; to blame (for);
			mysliti ,	<i>mysliti</i> ,	to think;

*) **Mejliti se, mýliti se**, *meylit sě, meelit sě*, to be mistaken; **mej-
lím se, meyleem sě**, I am mistaken. — **Zmejliti se, zmýliti se**, *zmeylit sě,
zmeelit sě*, to make a mistake; **zmejlil jsem se, zmeylil sem sě**, I made a
mistake.

neotevru, *něo-tev-rů*, I shall not
open;
jindy, *yindy*, before; at other
times;
tohle, *těhle*, this here;

mazati se, *mázati se*, to rub oneself;
užívat, *žeevat*, to take medicine,
(otherwise: to use);
mazat se, *mázat se*, to rub one's
self.

EXERCISES.

Myslím že někdo jde sem; — kdo je to?

Nevím; — koho čekáte?

Nečekám nikoho; — dnes chci být sám; — nechci vidět nikoho.

Komu poslal jste to pozvání? — Nikomu.

O kom myslil jste včera, že přijde? — O nikom.

S kým mluvil jste dnes ráno na ulici? — S nikým.

Že s nikým? — Vy se mejlíte. — Viděl jsem vás stát s někým na ulici.

Pravda; ale dnes nečekám nikoho. — Je někdo zde, opravdu?

I ne; žádný tu není. — Nevidím žádného a neotevru žádnému. — Já vím, že dnes nechte mluvit se žádným.

I think that somebody is coming here; — who is it?

I do not know; — whom do you expect?

I do not expect anybody; — to-day I want to be alone; — I do not want to see anybody.

To whom did you send that invitation? — To nobody.

Of whom did you think yesterday, that he would come? — Of nobody.

With whom did you speak this morning on the street? — With nobody.

You say, with nobody? — You are mistaken. — I saw you standing with somebody on the street.

That is true; but to-day I do not expect anybody. — Is somebody here, really?

O no; nobody is here. — I do not see anybody, and I shall not open to anybody. — I know that to-day you do not want to speak with anybody.

Zde něco máte; — co to je?

To je lék.

Jste nemocen?

Mám nastuzení a zlý kašel.

Že jste nastuzen? — od čeho to je?

Nevím čemu dáti vinu.

K čemu je ten lék?

Budu ho užívat po dávkách.

A co je v tom? — V čem? — V té malé lahvi. — To je liniment.

Co s tím budete dělat? — S čím? S tím linimentem.

Tím se budu mazat.

Čím jste se jindy mazal? — Ničím.

Here you have something;—what is it?

That is medicine.

Are you sick? .

I have a cold and a bad cough.

You say you have a cold?—what is it from?

I do not know, to what I should charge it.

What is that medicine for?

I shall take it in doses.

And what is in that?—In what?—In that small bottle. — That is a liniment.

What will you do with that? — With what?—With that liniment.

With that I shall rub myself.

With what did you rub yourself before? — With nothing.

Note. The student is, by this time, quite familiar with the interrogative pronouns **kdo, co, gdě, tsě**, (who, what). This lesson is designed simply to serve as a review of their variation, already shown in Note 5, Lesson XVIII.

Kdo, co, *gdě, tsě*, who, what;

koho, čeho, *kěhě, chěhě*, whose, whom; of what; **od koho, (čeho),** from whom (what);

komu, čemu, *kěmů, chěmů*, to whom, to what; **k čemu, k chěmů** what for;

v kom, v čem, *fkom, fchem*, in whom, in what; **o kom, o čem,** about whom (what); etc.

kým, čím, *keem, cheem*, by whom, by what; **s kým, s čím,** with whom, with what.

sto dva,	<i>stō dwā,</i>	one hundred
		and two
sto dvacet,	<i>stō dwāitset,</i>	one hundred
		and twenty
dvě stě,	<i>dwyyē st'e,</i>	two hundred
tři sta,	<i>trshi stā,</i>	three hundred
čtyry sta,	<i>shtiri stā,</i>	four hundred
pět set,	<i>pyēt set,</i>	five hundred;
šest set,	<i>shest set,</i>	six hundred; etc.

čtyry miliony, *shtiri milliŏny*, four
millions;
pět milionů, *pyět milliŏnoo*, five mil-
lions;
šest milionů, *shest milliŏnoo*, six
millions; etc.

Jednotka,	<i>yědnoutkǎ,</i>	a unit;
dvojka,	<i>dwoykǎ,</i>	a two; the figure two;
trojka,	<i>troykǎ,</i>	a three;
čtyrka, čtverka,	<i>shtirkǎ, shtwerka,</i>	a four;
pětka,	<i>pyětkǎ,</i>	a five;
desítka,	<i>děseet-kǎ,</i>	a ten;
dvacítká,	<i>dwǎtseetkǎ,</i>	a twenty;
třicítka,	<i>trshitseetkǎ,</i>	a thirty;
čtyrycítka,	<i>shtirítseetkǎ,</i>	a forty;
padesátka,	<i>pǎdēsátkǎ,</i>	a fifty; etc.
stovka,	<i>stofkǎ,</i>	a hundred;
tisícovka,	<i>tiseetsofkǎ,</i>	a thousand.

EXERCISES.

Kolik je nás u stolu? — Je nás dvanáct. — To je dobře; já myslel že je nás třináct a to prý je nešťastné číslo.

I, to je pouhá pověra!

How many are we at the table?— There are twelve of us. — That is right; I thought there were thirteen of us, and that is said to be an unlucky number.

O, that is a mere superstition.

Kolik akrů má vaše farma? — Sto šedesát akrů. — A farma vašeho otce? — Otec má tři čtyřicetky; já mám o čtyřecet akrů více.

Moje farma stála o tisíc dolarů více, nežli farma otcova.

Oba máte dobré farmy; — obě farmy jsou dobré. — To jsou dvě pěkné farmy.

Jaká je asi nynější cena těch dvou farem? — Asi devět tisíc dolarů.

Nám dvoum*) také patří osmdesátka lesa v sousedním townshipu.

Vám oboum*)? — Ano, nám dvoum*) společně.

Kdy jste se tu usadili?

Otec usadil se tu před čtyřmi lety; — já též; strýc před dvouma*) nebo třemi lety.

How many acres has your farm?— One hundred and sixty acres.—And the farm of your father? — Father has three forties; I have forty acres more.

My farm cost one thousand dollars more than my father's farm.

Both of you have good farms; — both farms are good. — Those are two nice farms.

What is about the present price of those two farms?—About nine thousand dollars.

To us two also belongs an eighty of forest in the neighboring township.

To both of you? — Yes, to us two jointly.

When did you settle here?

Father settled here four years ago; — I also; uncle two or three years ago.

*) In ordinary discourse always: *dvoum*, *oboum*, *dvořm*, *obřm*, to the two, to both; *před dvouma*, *před obouma*, *pršhěd dvořmā*, *pršhěd obřmā*, before two, before both. — The precise grammatical form is: *dvěma*, *oběma*, *dvořmā*, *obřmā*; *před dvěma*, *před oběma*.

Nám třem zdálo se, že musíme
bydleti pohromadě.

My vystěhovali se z Evropy²⁾ do
Ameriky²⁾, — usadili se v Ohio, —
po roce přestěhovali jsme se do stá-
tu Illinois, odtud po dvou nebo
třech letech do Nebrasky²⁾, a od-
tud po pěti letech do Kansasu.

To us three it seemed that we
must live together.

We emigrated from Europe to A-
merica, — settled in Ohio, — after a
year we removed to the state of Illi-
nois, from there after two or three
years to Nebraska, and from there
after five years to Kansas.

Kdy jste narozen? — Roku tisíc
osm set padesát dva. — Teda je
vám třicet osm let.

Jak starý je váš otec? — Můj otec
je přes šedesát; — můj strýc je sko-
ro sedmdesát let starý; — je o pět
let starší než můj otec.

Já jsem jen o rok starší než má
sestra a o tři leta starší než můj
bratr.

When were you ("are you") born?
— In the year one thousand eight
hundred fifty two. — Then you are
thirty eight years.

How old is your father? — My
father is over sixty; — my uncle is
nearly seventy years old; — he is five
years older than my father.

I am only one year older than my
sister and three years older than my
brother.

Note 1. We have seen that the numeral **jeden** is declined (Note 2, Lesson XXVII). The same is true of the numerals **dva**, **tři**, **čtyry** and **oba**. The feminine and neutre gender of **dva** and **oba** is **dvě**, **obě**; but the inflected cases are the same in all three genders. **Čtyry** is used in the feminine and neutre gender, and in connection with *inanimate* nouns of the masculine gender: **čtyry ženy**, **čtyry děti**, **čtyry domy** (four women, four children, four houses); whereas the masculine animate use **čtyři**; for instance: **čtyři muži**, **čtyři hoši** (four men, four boys). Colloquially, however, **čtyry** is used without any discrimination.

²⁾ **Evropa**, **Amerika**, *evropě, amerikě*; **z Evropy do Ameriky**, *z evropy do ameriky*, from Europe to America. **Nebraska**, **do Nebrasky**, *to Nebraska*. **Kansas**, **do Kansasu**, *to Kansas*. — **Evropa**, **Amerika**, **Nebraska**, are feminine, **Kansas** is masculine, by reason of their termination. See also foot-note in Lesson XXIV.

The variation of these numerals is set forth in the following exposé:

dva, oba m., dvě, obě, (f. & n.) *dvā, obā, dwyĕ, obyĕ*, two, both;
dvou, obou, *dwou, obou*, of two, of both;
dvěma, oběma, (colloq. **dvoum, oboum**), *dwyĕmā, obyĕmā (dwoum, oboum)*,
 to two, to both; **se dvěma, s oběma,** (se **dvouma,**
s obouma) with two, with both; etc.

tři, čtyři (čtyry), *trshi, shtirshi (shtiri)*, three, four;
tří, třech; čtyr, čtyrech; *trshee, trshekh; shtir, shtirekh;* of three, of
 four; **ve třech, ve čtyrech,** in three, in four; etc.
třem, čtyrem, *trshem, shtirem*, to three, to four;
se třemi, se čtyrmi, *sĕ trshĕmi, sĕ shtirmi* (colloq. **se třema, se čtyrma**),
 with three, with four.

Note 2. The adverbial numerals *once, twice, three times, four times*, etc., are formed in Bohemian by adding the suffix **krát** to the cardinal number: **jedenkrát, dvakrát, třikrát, čtyrykrát**, etc.

In place of **jedenkrát, yĕdenkrát** (once), the shorter form **jednou, yĕdnoŭ**, is generally employed:

Kolikrát jste tam byl? how many times have you been there? — **Jen jednou;** only once.

Kolikrát se to stalo? how many times has it happened? — **Myslím že dvakrát;** I think (that) twice.

Note 3. The ordinal numbers are as follows:

první,	<i>p^{er}vñee,</i>	first	šestý,	<i>shĕstee,</i>	sixth
druhý,	<i>drŭhee,</i>	second	sedmý,	<i>sedmee,</i>	seventh
třetí,	<i>trshĕt'ee,</i>	third	osmý,	<i>osmee,</i>	eighth
čtvrtý,	<i>shtv^{er}tee,</i>	fourth	devátý,	<i>dĕvátée,</i>	ninth
pátý,	<i>pátée,</i>	fifth	desátý,	<i>dessátée,</i>	tenth

From eleven to nineteen they are formed by appending *ý* to the cardinal number (corresponding with the English *th*): **jedenáctý**, *yědenátstee*, eleventh; etc.

Dvacet, **řícet**, **čtyrycet** have **dvacátý**, **řicátý**, **čtyřecátý**, *dwátsátee*, *trshítsátee*, *shtírítsátee* (twentieth, thirtieth, fortieth). The rest of the tens are regular: **padesátý**, *păděsátee* (fiftieth), etc. — **Stý**, *stee*, one hundredth; **tisící**, *t'iseetsee*, one thousandth.

Dvacátý první, twenty first; **dvacátý druhý**, twenty second; etc. Both tens and units take the ordinal form.

There is also a distinction of gender, the feminine terminating in *á* and the neutre in *é* (in place of the masculine *ý*), corresponding exactly with the adjectives: **dobrý**, *á*, *é* (see Note 2, Lesson VI).

Hence we say: **druhý muž**, **druhá žena**, **druhé dítě**, the second man, the second woman, the second child.

The plural form **druzí**, **druhé**, *drůzee*, *drůhé*, means “the others”.

První, **třetí**, have the same termination in every gender, like adjectives ending in *í*. (See Note 1, Lesson XXI.)

Ordinal numbers are declined like adjectives of a corresponding termination: **prvního muže**, of the first man; **druhého dne**, of the second day (or: on the next day); **druhé ženy**, of the second woman (or wife); **druhého dítěte**, of the second child; **druhému**, to the second; **v druhém**, in the second; **s druhým**, with the second.

Note 4. The adverbs formed from cardinal numbers by means of the suffix **fold**, denoting multiplication, are in Bohemian called special numerals and formed as follows:

dvoji ,	<i>dwoyee</i> ,	twofold	paterý ,	<i>pătěree</i> ,	fivefold
trojí ,	<i>troyee</i> ,	threefold	šesterý ,	<i>shěstěree</i> ,	sixfold
čtverý ,	<i>shtvěree</i> ,	fourfold	sedmerý ,	<i>sedměree</i> ,	sevenfold;

and so forth, always appending **erý** to the cardinal number (in the feminine gender **erá**, in the neutre **eré**).

From these there is derived a distinct class of multiplicative numerals by changing **erý** into **ero** and appending **násobný** (which in English also means *fold*), only the first three forming an exception:

dvojnásobný,	<i>dvoyn-násobnee,</i>	twofold (double);
trojnásobný,	<i>troy-násobnee,</i>	threefold (treble);
čtvernásobný,	<i>shwer-násobnee,</i>	fourfold (quadruple);
pateronásobný,	<i>päterø-násobnee,</i>	fivefold (quintuple); etc.

LESSON XXX.

Všecek,	<i>fshëtsek,</i>	m.	} all, (whole)	silný,	<i>silnee,</i>	strong
všecka,	<i>fshëtškã,</i>	f.		silně,	<i>silně,</i>	strongly
všecko, vše,	<i>fshëtsko, fshë,</i>	n.		silněji,	<i>silněji,</i>	more strongly
prodej,	<i>proděy,</i>	m.		nejsilněji,	<i>neysilněji,</i>	most strongly
výprodej,	<i>veeproděy,</i>	m.		pěkně,	<i>pyěkne,</i>	nicely
zásoba,	<i>zásobã,</i>	f.		hluboký,	<i>hlūbokee,</i>	deep
látka,	<i>lâtčkã,</i>	f.		hluboko,	<i>hlūbôčkô</i>	} deeply
látka na šaty,	<i>lâtčkã nã shãte,</i>			hluboce,	<i>hlūbotse</i>	
				velice,	<i>vêlitsě,</i>	greatly
známka,	<i>znâmkã,</i>	f.		hezký,	<i>hesskee,</i>	nice, pretty, fine;
kupec,	<i>kūpets,</i>	m.		hezky,	<i>hesske,</i>	nicely, prettily, finely
(kupci,	<i>kūptsi)</i>	pl.		český,	<i>chesskee,</i>	Bohemian
odkupník,	<i>odkūpñeek,</i>	m.		česky (adv.),	<i>chesske,</i>	"
věc,	<i>vyěts,</i>	f.		po česku,	<i>pô chesskū,</i>	in Bohemian
výdělek,	<i>veedělek,</i>	m.		anglicky (adv.),	<i>ānglitske,</i>	English
vůle,	<i>voole,</i>	f.		francousky,	<i>frāntsoūske,</i>	French
základ,	<i>zâklâd,</i>	m.		španělsky,	<i>shpãñelske,</i>	Spanish
základní,	<i>zâklâdñee,</i>			německy,	<i>ñemetske,</i>	German
kámen,	<i>kâmen,</i>	m.		pozdě,	<i>pozďe,</i>	late
zármutek,	<i>zârmûtek,</i>	m.		později,	<i>pozďeyi,</i>	later

psáti,	<i>psáti, psát,</i>	to write	dal jsem,	<i>dál sěm,</i>	I gave, I put;
učiti se,	<i>učiti sě,</i>	to learn	ručím (za),	<i>ručím,</i>	I warrant;
vyprodán, a, o,	<i>veprodán, á, ō,</i>	sold out	dojat,	<i>doyát,</i>	moved
			trápilo*),	<i>trápilŏ,</i>	it grieved
kladli jsme,	<i>kládli smě,</i>	we were laying;	zbylo*),	<i>zbylŏ,</i>	remained, was left
			zemřel,	<i>zembršel,</i>	died
položili jsme,	<i>pŏložili smě,</i>	we laid	vál,	<i>vál,</i>	blew

EXERCISES.

Měl jsem výprodej. — Můj krám je všecek vyprodán; — všechna zásoba je vyprodána; — prodal jsem všechno zboží lacino. — Vyprodal jsem všechno za hotové.

Ze všeho zboží zbylo jen něco látky na šaty.

Ke všemu zboží dal jsem ceny; — známky byly na všem. — Jsem teď hotov se vším.

Všichni kupci, doufám, budou spokojeni; — všechny věci byly dobré; — na všech věcech měl jsem jen malý výdělek.

Všem svým odkupníkům ručím za zboží; — chci míti se všemi dobrou vůli.

I had a selling out. — My store is all sold out; — the whole stock is sold out; — I sold all goods cheaply. — I sold out every thing for cash.

Of all the goods there only remained some dress-goods.

To all the goods I put (i. e. attached) prices; — labels were on every thing. — I have now done with everything.

All the buyers, I hope, will be satisfied; — all articles were good; — on all articles I had only a small profit.

To all my customers I warrant my goods; — I want to have with all a good will.

*) Trápiti, *trápiti, (trápit),* to grieve, to trouble, to torment; trápil, a, o, (he, she, it) grieved, troubled, etc.

Zbýti, *zbeeti (zbeet),* to remain, to be left;

zbýl, a, o, (he, she, it) remained, was left;

zbylo, there remained. — See Note 2, Lesson IX.

Dnes je hezký den. — Ano, dnes je hezký; — slunce svítí hezky.

Doufám že zítra bude také pěkný den a že slunce bude pěkně svítit.

Včera byl silný vítr. — Ráno vítr vál silně, odpoledne ještě silněji a nejsilněji k večeru.

Váš dům má hluboký základ. — Ano, položili jsme základy hluboko.

Když jsme kladli základní kámen, náš hošík zemřel a byl jsem hluboce dojat.

Byl to veliký zármutek; — trá pilo nás to velice.

Kolik let mu bylo?*) — Bylo mu dvanáct let.

Mluvil anglicky i česky, — také psal po anglicku i po česku.

Později chtěl učit se též francousky, španělsky i německy, — aspoň čísti a psát trochu.

To-day is a fine day.—Yes, to-day it is nice;—the sun is shining nicely.

I hope that to-morrow will be also a nice day, and that the sun will shine nicely.

Yesterday there was a strong wind. — In the morning the wind blew strongly, in the afternoon more strongly yet, and most strongly toward evening.

Your house has a deep foundation. —Yes, we laid the foundations deep.

When we were laying the foundation stone, our little boy died, and I was deeply moved.

It was a great sorrow;—it grieved us greatly.

How old was he?—He was twelve years.

He spoke English and Bohemian, — he also wrote in English and in Bohemian.

Later he wanted to learn also French, Spanish and German, — at least to read and write a little.

Note 1. Grammarians call **všecek** (all) an indefinite numeral; it also takes the form of **všechen** or **všecken** (feminine, **všechna**, **všeckná**; neutre, **všechno**, **všeckno**). The plural is **všickni**, **všecky**, **všecka**, *všitckůi*, *vshětski*, *vshětská*. In common discourse **všecky** or **všeci** is used in the plural in all three genders.

*) **Kolik let mu bylo?** (*literally*: how many years was it to him?), the same as: **jak byl stár?** how old was he? **Bylo mu**, the same as **byl**, he was.

This numeral is also declined and presents the following variation of form :

Singular :

všeho, m. & n. *fshěhŏ* (**vší**, f. *fshēe*) of all (of the whole, of everything);
všemu, *fshěmŭ*, to all; **ve všem**, *vě fshěm*, in all; **se vším**, *sě fshēem*,
 with all.

Plural :

všech, *fshěkh*, of all; **ve všech**, *vě fshěkh*, in all; **všem**, *fshěm*, to all;
 se **všemi**, *sě fshěmi* with all.

Note 2. Adverbs (qualifying verbs) are often derived from adjectives, qualifying nouns. This rule obtains in Bohemian as well as in English.

Such adverbs are formed in English by adding **ly** to the adjective : *strong, strongly; nice, nicely*. In Bohemian, the terminal **ý** of the adjective is changed into an **ě** :

silný, silně; pěkný, pěkně.

In some cases, however, the final **ý** changes into an **o**, or the final syllable **ký** into **ce** : **hluboký, hluboko, hluboce**, *deep, deeply*; **veliký, velice**, *great, greatly*. In a few cases the formation of adverbs is wholly irregular: **dobrý, good; dobře, well**.

Sometimes the long **ý** simply changes into a short **y** : **hezký, hezky**, *nice, nicely*. This is generally the case, when the adjective is derived from the name of a nation : **anglický národ**, *the English nation*; **mluvím anglicky**, *I speak English*; — **český jazyk**, *the Bohemian tongue*; **mluvím česky**, *I speak Bohemian*. In these cases we can also use the form: **po anglicku, po česku**.

In common discourse, the distinction between such adjectives and adverbs as **hezký — hezky, český — česky**, etc., is obliterated, their pronunciation being the same.

Note 3. Many adverbs of quality have a comparison, like adjectives, in order to express various degrees of quality. In regular com-

parison, the second degree is formed by adding **ji** to the adverb, and the third degree by prefixing **nej** to the second degree: **silně**, *strongly*; **silněji**, *more strongly*; **nejsilněji**, *most strongly*. Some adverbs have an irregular comparison, which must be learned and remembered. The following are mostly in use:

- dobře**, *dobrshě*, well; **lépe**, *lépě*, better; **nejlépe**, *neylépě*, best;
líp, *leep*, " ; **nejlíp**, *neyleep*, " ;
- zle**, *zlě*, badly; **hůře**, *hoorshě*, worse; **nejhůře**, *neyhoorshě*, worst;
hůř, *hoorsh*, " ; **nejhůř**, *neyhoorsh*, " ;
- brzo**, *berzō*, soon; **dříve**, *drsheevě*, sooner; **nejdříve**, *neydrsheevě*, soonest;
dřív, *drsheef*, " ; **nejdřív**, *neydrsheef*, " ;
- dlouho**, *dloühě*, long; **déle**, *dělě*, longer; **nejdéle**, *neydělě*, longest;
dýl, *deel*, " ; **nejdýl**, *neydeel*, " ;
- blízko**, *bleskō*, near; **blíže**, *bleežě*, nearer; **nejblíže**, *neybleežě*, nearest;
blíž, *bleež*, " ; **nejblíž**, *neybleež*, " ;
- daleko**, *dālěkkō*, far; **dál**, *dál*, farther; **nejdál**, *neydál*, farthest;
- vysoko**, *vysōkkō*, high; **výše**, *veeshě*, higher; **nejvýše**, *neyveeshě*, highest;
- hluboko**, *hlūbōkkō*, deep, deeply; **hloub**, *hloūb*, deeper; **nejhloub**, *neyhloūb*,
 deepest;
- snadno**, *snādnō*, easily; **snáz**, *snáz*, more easily; **nejsnáz**, *neysnáz*, most
 easily;
- mnoho**, *mnōhō*, much; **víc**, *více*, *veets*, *veetsě*, more; **nejvíc**, *nejvíce*, *ney-*
veets, *neyveetsě*, most;
- málo**, *mālō*, little; **méně**, *miñ*, *měně*, *meeñ*, less; **nejméně**, *nejmiñ*, *ney-*
měně, *neymeeñ*, least;
- draho**, *drazē*, *drāhō*, *drāžě*, dear, dearly; **draže**, *drāžě*, dearer; **nejdraže**,
neydrāžě, dearest.

LESSON XXXI.*)

Nesti (or **nésti**), *to carry, to bear*, is a verb denoting a CONTINUOUS action.

By means of prefixes numerous other verbs are derived from it (see Note 6, Lesson XIII), denoting a FINITE or finished action, or a solitary act of that nature :

přinesti,	<i>prshinest'i,</i> or <i>prshinest,</i>	to bring, to fetch;
přenesti,	<i>prshě-nest,</i>	to carry over; to transplace;
nanesti,	<i>nānest,</i>	to bring a heap; to pile on;
odnesti,	<i>ōdnest,</i>	to carry away; to take away;
donesti,	<i>dōnest,</i>	to carry to a place; to carry to somebody;
podnesti,	<i>pōdnest,</i>	to carry under;
přednesti,	<i>prshed-nest,</i>	to carry before; (hence: to lay before, to submit, to deliver;)
pronesti,	<i>prōnest,</i>	to carry through; pronesti se, to grow heavy, to tire out (said of a burden which is carried);
roznesti,	<i>rōznest,</i>	to carry round; to scatter or spread; to deliver;
unesti,	<i>ūnest,</i>	to carry off, to kidnap; (also: to be able to carry);
vynesti,	<i>vīnest,</i>	to carry out;
zanesti,	<i>zānest,</i>	to carry behind, away, i. e. out of sight; (also: to enter in a book or list).

*) We bespeak the student's particular attention for this Lesson, designed as a systematic but easy and popular introduction to a complete mastery of the Bohemian verb, which is the most important and the most complicated part of the language. To a great extent, this introduction will only appear as a review of what has already been learned about the verb in the preceding lessons, and hence will be the more readily mastered by the student. There being only a few hundred verbs used in the ordinary intercourse in any language, their acquisition for practical every-day purposes is, after all, only a matter of a few weeks' application.

As before observed, the meaning of these derivatives becomes in most cases self-evident, when we bear in mind the signification of the prefixes, which constantly recur in this process of formation of new verbs:

do , <i>dŏ</i> , to;	pře , <i>prshě</i> , over;	pod , <i>pŏd</i> , under;
od , <i>ŏd</i> , from, off;	při , <i>prshi</i> , to, by, at;	nad , <i>năd</i> , over, up, above;
na , <i>nă</i> , on;	před , <i>prshed</i> , before;	pro , <i>prŏ</i> , through;
ve , <i>vě</i> , in;	ob , <i>ŏb</i> } round,	roz , <i>rŏz</i> , apart, asunder;
vy , <i>ve</i> , out;	o , <i>o</i> } about;	za , <i>ză</i> , behind, away, into.

The prefix **za** very often denotes a solitary action or sudden manifestation; for example:

pěti, *zpívati*, *pyětŭi*, *speevaťi*, to sing; **zapěti**, *zazpívati*, *zăpyět*, *zăspee-
văt*, to sing a song;
zvoniti, *zvoňit*, to ring; **zazvoniti**, *zăzvoňit*, to give a ring; to pull the
bell once.

The prefix **u** denotes: 1. an action separating a part from the whole: **seknouti**, *seknoutŭi*, to make a cut; **useknouti**, *ŭseknoutŭi*, to cut off; — 2. a diminutive, momentary, or solitary action: **šklebiti se**, *shklěbiťi sě*, to frown;— **uškľebiti se**, to make a frown; 3. a progressive destruction or disappearance: **páliti**, *pálitŭi*, to burn; **upáliti**, to burn up, to burn at the stake; — 4. a completion or carrying out of something: **dělati**, *dělatŭi*, to do, to make, to work; **udělati**, to make or finish something; to do a certain act.

These are the main modifications due to the prefix **u**, connected with verbs; there are, besides, two or three minor or incidental ones, which it is not necessary to mention.

The principal parts of a Bohemian verb, from which the entire conjugation may easily be formed by means of the proper endings, are the following:

The infinitive: **nesti**, to carry; | the perfect indicative: **nesl**, carried;
the present indicative: **nesu**, I carry; | the imperative: **nes**, carry (thou).

Nesu,	<i>nessŭ,</i>	I carry,	nesl*)jsem, <i>nessl sem,</i>	I carried,
neseš,	<i>nessesh,</i>	thou carriest,	nesl jsi, <i>nessl si,</i>	thou carriest,
nese,	<i>nessě,</i>	(he, she, it) carries,	nesl, <i>nessl,</i>	he carried,
neseme,	<i>nessěmě,</i>	we carry,	nesli**)jse, <i>nessli smě,</i>	we carried,
nesete,	<i>nessětě,</i>	you carry,	nesli jste, <i>nessli stě,</i>	you carried,
nesou,	<i>nessou,</i>	they carry;	nesli, <i>nessli</i>	they carried;

nes,	<i>ness,</i>	carry (thou),
ať nese,	<i>ěť nessě,</i>	let him (her, it) carry,
nesme,	<i>nessmě,</i>	let us carry,
neste,	<i>nesstě,</i>	carry (you),
ať nesou,	<i>ěť nessou,</i>	let them carry.

Note 1. The future tense of **nesti** is usually not formed by means of the auxiliary **býti** (to be) in connection with the infinitive: **budu nesti**, **budeš nesti**, etc.; but by means of the prefix **po**, connected with the present tense: **ponesu**, *pñessŭ*, I shall carry; **poneseš**, *pñessesh*, thou wilt carry; and so forth.

The derivatives mentioned above, formed by means of prefixes, have in fact no present, but only a past and a simple future tense; for example:

přinesti, to bring; **přinesl jsem**, I brought; **přinesu**, I shall bring; — **odnesti**, to carry away; **odnesl jsem**, I carried away; **odnesu**, I shall carry away. (See Notes 4 and 7, Lesson XIII.)

*) Feminine **nesla**, *nesslä*; neutre **neslo**; — see Note 2, Lesson IX. — **Já jsem nesl**, **já nesl**, I carried; **ty jsi nesl**, **ty's nesl**, thou carriedst; **vy jste nesli**, you carried. See Lesson X.

As already mentioned in Note 1, Lesson IX, the distinction between the perfect tense, so difficult and puzzling for the student of the English language, does not exist in Bohemian. **Nesl jsem** means both *I carried* and *I have carried*; it also means *I did carry*, and *I was carrying*, — when the latter relates to a separate action.

Likewise the present, **nesu**, means not only *I carry*, but also: *I am carrying*, *I do carry*; or, if used interrogatively: **nesu?** *do I carry?*

The same observations apply to all other verbs, there being *only one form* of the present tense, and of the past tense, in Bohemian.

) Feminine **nesly; neutre **nesla**; see Note 2, Lesson IX.

The verbs **lezu**, I crawl; **vezu**, I carry; **jedu**, I ride; **kvetu**, I blossom; **rostu**, I grow, — and some others, usually form their future in the same way as **nesu**, I carry. Hence we do not say **budu lezti**, etc; but we say:

polezu, *polěžů*, I shall crawl; **povezu**, *pověžů*, I shall carry; **pojedu**, *pojědů*, I shall ride; **pokvetu**, *pokvětů*, I shall blossom; **porostu**, *porostů*, I shall grow.

In the sequel we shall give the principal parts of every verb, from which the student can form the whole conjugation without any difficulty. There being a slight irregularity in the formation of the present tense from the infinitive in some cases, this course will obviate any confusion which might arise therefrom, for a beginner.

Vezi , <i>vězt'i, vezť*</i> , to carry (in a vehicle);	plesti se , <i>p. sě</i> , to be mistaken, confused; etc.**)
vezti se , <i>vězt'i sě</i> , to ride;	másti , <i>mást'i</i> , to confuse;
vesti , <i>vest'i</i> , to lead;	másti se , <i>másti sě</i> , to be mistaken;
lezti , <i>lězt'i</i> , to crawl, to climb;	méstí , <i>mést'i</i> , to sweep;
kvesti , <i>kvest'i</i> , to blossom;	klásti , <i>klást'i</i> , to lay;
čísti , <i>cheest'i</i> , to read;	krásti , <i>krást'i</i> , to steal;
růstí , <i>roost'i</i> } to grow;	pásti , <i>pást'i</i> , to herd, to tend,
rosti , <i>rost'i</i> }	to pasture.
plesti , <i>plessťi</i> , to twist, to knit; to confuse, to mix up;	pásti se , <i>p. sě</i> , to graze, to browse;

vezu, *věžů*, I carry; **vezl jsem**, *vězl sem*, I carried, or I have carried; **vez**, *věz*, carry (thou***);

*) See Note 1, Lesson XI.

**) This and many other verbs have a variety of significations, which cannot here be explained. We refer the student to the Dictionary of the Bohemian and English languages, by Charles Jonas, *second edition*.

***) The reflexive form of a verb is conjugated in the same way as the ordinary form, with **se** added: **vezu se**, I ride; **vezl jsem se**, I rode; **povezu se**, I shall ride; **vez se**, ride (thou)!

The student is already well aware that negation is always expressed by the prefix **ne**, which stands for the English *do not*, *does not*, *did not*: **nevezu**, I do not carry; **nevezl jsem**, I did not carry; **nepovezu**, I shall not carry; **nevez!** do not carry!

Pasák , m. <i>pássák</i> , the cowboy,	datum , n. <i>dătăm</i> , the date
the herdsman;	škola , f. <i>shkolă</i> , the school
dobytek , m. <i>dőbytek</i> , the cattle	novela , f. <i>novellă</i> }
chodník , m. <i>khodňeek</i> , the sidewalk	román , m. <i>rďmăn</i> }
zloděj , m. <i>zloděy</i> , the thief	zem , f. <i>zem</i> }
červ , m. <i>cherf</i> , the worm	podlaha , f. <i>podlăhă</i> }
jabloň , m. <i>yăbloň</i> , the appletree	pastva , f. <i>păstvă</i> , the pasture
ptáci , pl. <i>ptátsi</i> , the birds	ruka , f. <i>rŭkă</i> , the hand
dějepis , m. <i>děyěpis</i> , the history	noha , f. <i>nőhă</i> , the foot
cestopis , m. <i>tsestőpis</i> , the book of	mléko , n. <i>mlékő</i> , the milk
travels;	zeleniny , f. pl. <i>zělěňiny</i> , the vege-
stádo , n. <i>stădď</i> , the herd	tables;
ovec , n. s. & pl. <i>oftsě</i> , the sheep	zaméstí , <i>zămést'í</i> , to sweep up;
sotva , <i>sotvă</i> , hardly, scarcely;	dočístí , <i>dőcheest'í</i> , to finish reading;
snadno , <i>snădnď</i> , easily	může , <i>moožě</i> , he (she, it) can
nikam , <i>ňikăm</i> , nowhere	zábavný , á, é <i>zábăvnee</i> , entertaining.

EXERCISES.

Co neseš? (co to neseš?)

Nesu oběd pro otce*).

Co vezete na trh? — Vezu trochu obilí.

Co veze váš soused? — On veze brambory.

Kam vedete toho chlapce*)? — Vedu ho do školy. — Ze školy povedu ho zas domů.

Nelez na strom! — Já nelezu. — Nelezl jsem nikam. — Viděl jsem tě lezti.

Co to zde leze? — Červi zde lezou.

Všecko kvete. — Stromy už kvetou. — Loni náš jablonoň kvetl krásně; — nevím jak pokvete letos.

Co to čteš? — Já čtu zábavnou knihu; — a co vy čtete? — Dějepis Spojených Států**).

What doest thou carry? (what is it thou carriest?)

I carry dinner for my father.

What do you carry to market? — I carry some grain.

What does your neighbor carry? — He carries potatoes.

Where do you lead (or "take") that boy? — I lead him to school. — From school I shall lead him home again.

Do not climb (on) the tree! — I do not (climb). — I did not climb anywhere. — I have seen thee climb.

What is that crawling here? — Worms are crawling here.

Everything blossoms. — The trees are blooming already. — Last year our apple-tree blossomed beautifully; — I don't know how it will bloom this year.

What is it thou readest? — I read an entertaining book; — and what do you read? — A history of the United States.

*) The rule stated in Note 2, Lesson XVIII, applies also to nouns ending in *ec* (declined like *muž*), the vowel *e* being dropped in the inflected cases: *otec*, *otets*, the father (or "my father"); *otce*, *otcě*, of the father; *pro otce*, for the father; *otcové*, *otcůvé*, the fathers; — *chlapec*, *khlāpets*, the boy; *chlapce*, *khlāptse*, of the boy (or "the boy", in the objective case).

**) *Spojené Státy*, *spoyěné státy*, the United States; *Spojených Států*, *spoyěneekh států*, of the United States; *ve Spojených Státech*, *vě spoyěneekh státech*, in the United States.

Včera četl jsem román; — večer jsem ho dočetl; — zítra budu čísti nějaký cestopis.

Když je teplo, všechno roste rychle. — Ty zeleniny rostou rychle; — po dešti porostou ještě rychleji.

Já často se pletu v datum. — Člověk snadno se plete; — já také často se matu.

Začť krám. — Zametl jsem ho už; — chodník zametu hned.

Ptáci nyní kladou vejce.

Zloděj krade kde může. — Zloději kradou vše.

Pasák pase stádo. — Dobytek se pase. — Ovce se pasou.

Rád pasu krávy, kde je dobrá pastva.

Yesterday I read a novel; — in the evening I finished reading it; — to-morrow I shall read some book of travels.

When it is warm, everything grows fast.—Those vegetables grow fast; —after a rain they will grow still faster.

I am often mistaken in the date. — One is easily mistaken; — I also am frequently mistaken.

Sweep the store. — I have swept it already; — the sidewalk I shall sweep presently.

The birds now lay eggs.

The thief steals where he can. — Thieves steal everything.

The cowboy tends the herd. — The cattle are grazing.—The sheep are browsing.

I like to pasture cows where there is a good pasture.

Bíti,	<i>beet'i,</i>	to beat, to strike;	kryti,	<i>kreet'i,</i>	to cover;
píti,	<i>peet'i,</i>	to drink;	tříti,	<i>trsheet'i,</i>	to rub;
líti,	<i>leet'i,</i>	to pour;	příti se,	<i>prsheet'i se,</i>	to dispute;
síti,	<i>seet'i</i>	} to sow, to seed;	šíti,	<i>sheet'i,</i>	to sew;
seti,	<i>set'i</i>		žíti,	<i>žet'i,</i>	to live*).
mýti,	<i>meet'i,</i>	to wash;			

*) Notes 1 and 2. Lesson XIII, explain that in common discourse the final *i* of the infinitive is nearly always dropped. Consequently we hear: *beet*, instead of *beet'i*; *peet*, instead of *peet'i*; and so forth. *Mýti* is often pronounced *meyt*, *kryti* — *kreyt*. (See Note 3, Lesson VI.) — There is no difference of pronunciation between *bíti* (to beat), and *býti* (to be), except when the latter is vulgarly pronounced *beyt*.

biju (or **biji**), *biyǔ*, I beat; **bil jsem**, *bill sem*, I beat (have beaten);
bij, *biy* or *be*, beat (thou);
piju (or **piji**), *piyǔ*, I drink; **pil jsem**, *pill sem*, I drank; **pij**, *piy*
 (or *pee*), drink;
liju or **leju**, *liyǔ* or *leyǔ*, I pour; **lil jsem**, *lil sem*, I poured; **lij** or
lej, *liy*, *ley*, pour;
siju or **seju**, *siyǔ*, *seyǔ*, I sow; **sil jsem**, *sil sem*, I sowed; **sej**, *sey*, sow;
myju*), *miyǔ*, I wash; **myl jsem**, *mill sem*, I washed; **myj**, *miy*, wash;
kryju*), *kriyǔ*, I cover; **kryl jsem**, *krill sem*, I covered; **kryj**, *kriy*, cover;
tru*), *trǔ*, I rub; **třel jsem**, *trshell sem*, I rubbed; **tři**, *trshi*, rub;
pru se*), *prǔ sě*, I dispute; **přel jsem se**, *prshell sem sě*, I disputed; **při se**,
prshi sě, dispute;
šiju, *she-yǔ*, I sew; **šil jsem**, *shil sem*, I sewed; **šij**, *shiy* (or *she*), sew;
žiju, *žiyǔ*, I live; **žil jsem**, *žil sem*, I lived; **žij**, *žiy* (or *ži*), live;

Note 2. The paradigm of the present indicative of **bíti** would be: **biju**, **biješ**, **bije**, **bijeme**, **bijete**, **bijou** (I beat, thou beatest, he beats, we beat, you beat, they beat). In the written language, the forms **biji** and **bijí** (*biyi*, *biyee*) are frequently employed in the first person singular and third person plural, in place of **biju**, **bijou** (*biyǔ*, *biyoǔ*), which are always used in conversation. The same is true of the other verbs of this class.

EXERCISES.

Proč biješ to dítě? — Nebij ho! —
 Já ho nebiju.
 Hodiny**) bijou deset. — Už bilo
 deset.

Why do you beat that child? — Do
 not beat him! — I do not beat him.
 The clock strikes ten. — It has al-
 ready struck ten.

*) Colloquially also **meju**, **kreju**, **třu**, **přu se**, *meyǔ*, *kreyǔ*, *trshǔ*, *prshǔ sě*; **mej**, **krej**, *mey*, *krey*, (do) wash, (do) cover.

) **Hodiny (the clock) is a plural noun; the following verb must therefore be put in the plural: **bijou** or **bijí** (they strike).

Co piješ? — Piju pivo; — co vy pijete? — Pijeme víno; — děti pijou vodu. — Ráno všichni pili jsme mléko.

Lijeme mléko do kávy.

Služka myje zem. — Krýjeme podlahu kobercem.

Lil jsem liniment na ruku a třel jsem nohu.

Seju pšenici; — soused sil ječmen. — Sejeme časně. — Co jste vy sešli? — Nic ještě; — budeme síti oves.

What doest thou drink?— I drink beer; — what do you drink?—We drink wine; — the children drink water. — In the morning we all drank milk.

We pour milk in coffee.

The servant-girl washes the floor.— We cover the floor with a carpet.

I poured the liniment on (my) hand and rubbed (my) foot.

I sow wheat;—(my) neighbor sowed barley. — We sow early. — What have you sowed? — Nothing as yet;—we shall sow oats.

Note 3. All verbs consisting of a simple *root* or *stem*, to which the termination **ti** is directly attached, belong to the first conjugation.

They may be divided in two leading classes, slightly diverging in their inflection, but following the same general principle, as shown in the preceding two groups of examples; namely, 1. those terminating generally in **sti**, and 2. those terminating generally in **íti**:

1. **nesti**, to carry (**nes** in the root or stem); — **nesu, neseš, nese**, I carry, thou carriest, he carries; **neseme, nesete, nesou**, we carry, you carry, they carry; — **nesl jsem**, I carried; — **nes**, carry;
2. **píti**, to drink (**pí** is the root or stem); — **piju, piješ, pije**, I drink, thou drinkest, he drinks; **pijeme, pijete, pijou**, we drink, you drink, they drink; — **pil jsem**, I drank; — **pij**, drink.

Note 4. A few exceptional verbs of this conjugation, with the grammatical termination of **ci** (but popularly **eti**) in their infinitive, show a slight deviation from the above paradigms. For instance:

peci, *petsi*, to bake; — **peku,** *pečeš, peče, pečeme, pečete, pekou,* *pěků, pěchesh, pěchě, pěchěmě, pěchětě, pěkoů* (I bake, thou bakes, he bakes, we bake, you bake, they bake); **pekl jsem,** *pěkl sem,* I baked; **peč,** *pěch,* bake;

teci, *tetsi*, to flow; **teče, tekou, tekl, teč, těchě, tekoů, tekl, těch** (it flows, they flow, it flowed, flow).

But colloquially, the forms **peču, pečou, tečou** (I bake, they bake, they flow) are used in place of **peku, pekou, tekou**.

LESSON XXXII.

Minouti, *minoůťi*, to pass by; — **minu,** *minů, I* pass by; (*mineš, mine, minesh, mině,* thou passest by, he passes by; **mineme, minete, minou,** *miněmě, minětě, minoů,* we, you, they pass by); — **minul*) jsem,** *minůl sem,* I passed by or I have passed by; **miň,** *miň,* pass (thou) by.

hynouti, *hynoůťi*, to perish (or rather: to be perishing); — **hynu,** *hynů,* I am perishing; **hynul jsem,** I was perishing; **hyň,** *hyň,* perish.

zdvihnouti, *zdwihnoůťi*, to pick up, to raise; — **zdvihnu,** *zdwihnů**), I* shall pick up; I shall raise; **zdvihnul jsem** (also **zdvihl jsem,** like the first conjugation), *zdwihnůl sem (zdwihl sem),* I picked up, I raised; **zdvihni,** *zdwihni,* pick up, raise.

kopnouti, *kopnoůťi*, to kick; — **kopnu**), I** shall kick; **kopnul jsem** (also **kopl jsem**), *kopnůl sem,* I kicked; **kopni,** *kopni,* kick.

Dálka, f. <i>dálká,</i>	the distance	osení, n. <i>osseñee,</i>	growing crops;
planina, f. <i>plāñinā,</i>	the plain	takto, <i>tāktō,</i>	in this way;

*) Feminine **minula,** *minůlá;* neutre **minulo,** *minůlō;* — see Note 2, Lesson IX.

) The present tense having a *future* meaning, **zdvihnu, kopnu, is in fact the simple future tense of these verbs. See Note 7, Lesson XIII.

hruška , f. <i>hrůškā</i> ,	the pear	než ,	<i>nesħ</i> ,	before;
jablko , n. <i>yābľkō</i> (colloq. <i>yābľkō</i>),	the apple	hleděti ,	<i>hľeďet</i> ,	to look;
sucho , n. <i>sūkhō</i> ,	drought (as an	pes , m. <i>pess</i> ,	the dog; psa , <i>psā</i> ,	of the dog, the dog
	adverb: dry);			(obj. case).

EXERCISES.

Než hodina mine, budu zde, — pravil.

Hodina minula, — dvě hodiny minuly, — pět hodin minulo (i. e. *it* passed), — **den minul, — a nebyl zde.**

Až mineme ten les, budeme viděti více.

Jak brzy minuli jste les?

Minuli jsme ho za hodinu; — pak viděli jsme celou planinu.

Ti lidé nás brzy minou*). — **Mineš mnoho lidí** (*liďee*, gen. case).

Je sucho; — všecko hyne; — osení hyne; — zeleniny hynou.

Bylo sucho a všecko hynulo.

Takto všecko bude hynouti.

Zdvihni to jablko. — Už jsem ho zdvihnul (or *zdvihl*). — **Zdvihnula** (or *zdvihla*) **jsem dvě jablka a hrušku.**

Before an hour passes by, I shall be here, — he said.

An hour passed, — two hours passed, — five hours passed, — the day passed by, — and he was not here.

When we pass that forest, we shall see more.

How soon did you pass the forest?

We passed it in an hour; — then we saw the whole plain.

Those people will soon pass us. — Thou wilt pass many people.

It is dry; — everything is perishing; — the crops are perishing; — the vegetables are perishing.

There was a drought, and everything was perishing.

In this way everything will be perishing.

Pick up that apple. — I have picked it up already. — I picked up (*fem.*) two apples and a pear.

*) It is self-evident that this present tense of the verb **minouti** also has a *future* meaning, denoting an action which is expected to take place.

Zdvihli jsme se a hleděli do dálky.

— **Zdvihni se!** — **Zdvihněte se!**

— **Zdvihněte ruku** (plural *ruce*, *růtse*).

Kopni toho psa! — **Kopnul jsem ho trochu.**

We raised ourselves and looked into the distance. — Raise thyself! — Raise yourself! — Raise your hand (your hands).

Kick that dog! — I kicked him a little.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **minouti** is **min**, to which the termination **outi** is attached. All verbs ending in **outi** belong to the second conjugation.

Some of the verbs of this class are derived from adjectives, and their imperative is always formed like that of **zdvihnouti**: **zdvihni**. For example :

bled-ý, *bledēe*, pale; **bled-nouti**, *blednouťi*, to grow pale; (**blednu**, I grow pale; **blednul jsem**, I grew pale; **bledni**, do grow pale);
bohat-ý, *bohātee*, rich; **bohat-nouti**, *bohātnouti*, to grow rich;
chud-ý, *khūdee*, poor; **chud-nouti**, *khūdnouti*, to grow poor;
mlad-ý, *mlādee*, young; **mlád-nouti**, *mlādnouti*, to grow young;
star-ý, *stāree*, old; **stár-nouti**, *stārnouti*, to grow old;
slab-ý, *slābee*, weak; **sláb-nouti**, *slābnouti*, to grow weak;
měk-ký, *myěkee*, soft; **měk-nouti**, *myěknouti*, to grow soft;
tvrd-ý, *twerdee*, hard; **tvrd-nouti**, *twerdnouti*, to grow hard.

Viděti , <i>viděti</i> , to see;	slyšeti , <i>slishěti</i> , to hear;
seděti , <i>seděti</i> , to sit;	služeti , <i>slūshěti</i> , to fit, to become;
běžeti , <i>byěžeti</i> , to run, to go hurriedly;	styděti se , <i>stiděti se</i> , to be ashamed;
držeti , <i>deržeti</i> , to hold;	uměti , <i>ūmyěti</i> , to know; can;
mlčeti , <i>melcheťi</i> , to be silent;	rozuměti , <i>rozūmyěti</i> , to understand;
hořeti , <i>horshěti</i> , to burn;	házeti , <i>hāzeťi</i> , to throw (continually);
pršet , <i>persheťi</i> , to rain;	poroučeti , <i>poročheťi</i> , to command.

Vidím,	<i>ved'eem</i> , I see; — vidíš, vidí, <i>vid'eesh, vid'ee</i> , thou seest, he sees; vidíme, vidíte, vidí, (colloq. also vidějí) <i>vid'eemě, vid'eetě, vid'ee</i> , colloq. <i>vid'eyee</i> , we (you, they) see; — viděl jsem, vid'el sem, I saw, or I have seen; viz, see (being an irregular imper.).
sedím,	<i>sed'eem</i> , I sit; seděl jsem, sed'el sem, I sat; sed', sit.
běžím,	<i>byž'eem</i> , I run; běžel jsem, byž'el sem, I ran; běž, byž, run;
držím,	<i>derž'eem</i> , I hold; držel jsem, derž'el sem, I held; drž, derž, hold;
mlčím,	<i>m'elcheem</i> , I am silent, mlčel jsem, m'elchel sem, I was silent; mlč, m'elch, be silent;
hoří,	<i>horshee</i> , it burns; hořel, horshel, burned; hoř, hors'h, burn;
prší,	<i>p'ershee</i> , it rains; pršelo, p'ershělŏ, it rained; prš, p'ersh, rain;
slyším,	<i>slisheem</i> , I hear; slyšel jsem, slishel sem; I heard; slyš, slish, hear;
sluší,	<i>slüşhee</i> , it fits; slušelo, slüş'hělŏ, it fitted.
stydím se,	<i>stid'eem se</i> , I am ashamed; styděl jsem se, stid'el sem sč, I was ashamed; styď se, shame on thee!
umím,	<i>ŭmeem</i> , I know, I can; uměl jsem, ŭmyěll sem, I knew; uměj, ŭmyěy, know;
rozumím,	<i>rozŭmeem</i> , I understand; rozuměl jsem, rozŭmyěll sem, I understood; rozuměj, rozŭmyěy, understand;
házím,	<i>házeem</i> , I throw (I am throwing); házel jsem, ház'el sem, I was throwing; házej, házey, throw;
poroučím,	<i>poroŭcheem</i> , I command; poroučel jsem, poroŭchel sem, I commanded; poroučeť, poroŭchey, command.

Vlak, m.	<i>vlāk</i> ,	the train;	pevně,	<i>pevňe,</i>	tightly, fast;
opratě, f. pl.	<i>oprāt'e,</i>	the lines;	silně,	<i>siľňe,</i>	strongly, hard;
povyk, m.	<i>pŏvik,</i>	the cry;	výborně,	<i>veeborňe,</i>	very well, excellently;
jazyk, m.	<i>yăzik,</i>	the tongue;	špinavý, á, é	<i>shpinăvee,</i>	dirty;
prádlo, n.	<i>prădlŏ,</i>	the linen;	jiný, á, é	<i>yinee,</i>	other, different;
šaty, pl.	<i>shătý,</i>	suit of clothes;	zapomněl jsem, zăpom-ňel sem,		I forgot;
kamení, n.	<i>kămeňee,</i>	stones (collectively);			

před tím, *prshed teem*, before that;
za něj, *zǎ něy*, for him, of him,
 (for it, of it);

hráti, *hrát'i*, to play;
už ne, *úsh ně*, not any more.

Vidíš něco? — Co vidíš? — Nevidím nic*).

**Vidíte dobře? — Ano, vidím všechno.
 — Oni to vidí dobře.**

Viděli jsme vlak; — viděli jste ho také?

Neviděli jsme ho; — děti ho viděly.

Zde budeme vidět všechno. — Naši přátelé budou vidět nás hned.

Kdo tu sedí? — To jsem já. — Proč tu sedíš? — Běž ven; — běžte oba ven.

Seděli jste pořád; — večer budete sedět zas.

Drž koně a mlč. — Držte opatě a mlčte. — Držte pevně? — Držíme pevně.

**Oni nás slyší. — Žádný nás neslyší.
 — Ta holka nás slyšela. — Slyšeli nás.**

Prší; slyším to. — Slyšíte dešť?

**Neprší ještě; ale bude pršet. —
 Včera pršelo silně; — před tím nepršelo už dávno.**

Doest thou see something? — What doest thou see? — I do not see anything.

Do you (*or* can you) see well? — Yes, I can see all. — They see it well.

We have seen a train; — have you seen it too?

We have not seen it; — the children saw it.

Here we shall see all. — Our friends will see us immediately.

Who sits here? — It is I. — Why doest thou sit here? — Run out; — go out both (*of* you).

You have been sitting all the time; — in the evening you will sit again.

Hold (*thou*) the horse and keep still. — Hold (*you*) the lines and keep still. — Do you hold fast? — We hold fast.

They hear us. — Nobody hears us. — That girl has heard us. — They have heard us.

It rains; I hear it. — Do you hear the rain?

It does not rain yet; but it will rain. — Yesterday it rained hard; — before that it had not rained for a long time.

*) There is a double negation in Bohemian, similar to the vulgar English way of speaking: *I don't see nothing*. See Note 1, Lesson V.

Ty šaty sluší vám výborně.

Ten klobouk mi nesluší; stydím se za něj.

Nestyď se; sluší ti dobře dost.

Tvé prádlo je špinavé; nestydiš se? Styď se!

Umíš česky? — Ano já umím česky.

Umíte anglicky? — Trochu.

Umíte německy? — Uměl jsem dobře; ale zapomněl jsem trochu.

Umíš hráti na piano? — Neumím.
— Umíte zpívati? — Neumím.

Naše děti umějí česky a anglicky,
— a žádný jiný jazyk.

Rozumějí německy? — Nerozumějí.

Házej kamení za plot. — Neházej kamení na cestu.

Házejte ty pytle dolu. — Neházejte tak rychle.

Házeli jsme dříví na hromadu, — a budeme házeti zas. — Otec to poroučí.

Házejí ti hoši kamení? — Neházejí. — Už neházejí.

Už dávno neházejí.

That suit of clothes fits you very well.

That hat does not fit me; I am ashamed of it.

Do not be ashamed; it fits thee well enough.

Thy linen is dirty; art thou not ashamed?—Shame on you!

Doest thou know Bohemian?—Yes, I know Bohemian.

Do you know English?—A little.

Do you know German?—I knew it well; but I have forgotten it somewhat.

Doest thou know how to play on the piano?—I do not.—Can you sing?—I can not.

Our children know Bohemian and English, — and no other tongue.

Do they understand German?—they do not (understand).

Throw (thou) the stones behind the fence. — Do not throw the stones on the road.

Throw (you) the sacks down. — Don't throw so fast.

We have been throwing the wood on a heap, — and we shall throw again. — Father commands it.

Are those boys throwing stones? — They are not. — They are not throwing any more.

They have not been throwing for a long time (i. e. they stopped throwing long since).

Note 2. The root or stem of the verb **viděti** is **vid**, to which the termination **ěti** is attached. All verbs ending in **ěti** or **eti** belong to the third conjugation.

The root of the verb is the usual form of the imperative: **běž**, run (thou); **sed'**, sit; **drž**, hold; etc. — The third person singular and plural of the present tense are alike: **vidí**, he (she, it) sees; **vidí**, they see. But in colloquial usage it commonly takes the longer form: **vidějí**, **sedějí** (they see, they sit).

In some cases the imperative is formed by cutting off the terminal **ti** and adding **j**: **uměti**, — **uměj**, know; **házeti**, — **házej**, throw; etc. These verbs always use the long form in the third person plural: **umí**, he (she, it) knows; **umějí**, *umýěyee*, they know; — **házejí**, *házěyee*, they throw.

LESSON XXXIII.

činiti , <i>chiñiti</i> , to do;	souditi , <i>soŭditi</i> , to judge;
choditi , <i>khoditi</i> , to walk; to go (frequently);	platiti , <i>plătiti</i> , to pay; to rule, prevail, be in force;
mluviti , <i>mlŭviti</i> , to speak, to tell;	svítiti , <i>sweetiti</i> , to shine;
věriti , <i>vyěrshti</i> , to believe;	buditi , <i>bŭditi</i> , to wake;
učiti , <i>ŭchiti</i> , to teach;	blázniti , <i>blázñiti</i> , to fool; to be crazy;
učiti se , <i>ŭchiti se</i> , to learn (i. e. to teach one's self);	modliti se , <i>modliti se</i> , to pray.

číním, *chiñeem*, I do; — **činiš**, *chiñeesh*, thou doest; **činí**, *chiñee*, he (she, it) does; **činíme**, **činite**, **činí** (colloquially also **činějí**), *chiñeemě*, *chiñeetě*, *chiñee* or *chiñeyee*, we, you, they do; — **činil jsem**, *chiñil sem*, I did, or I have done; **čín**, do (thou); **číníte**, *chiñitě*, do (you);

chodím, *khod'eem*, I walk; **chodil jsem**, *khod'il sem*, I walked; **chod'**, walk;

mluvím,	<i>mlůveem</i> , I speak; mluvil jsem, <i>mlůvil sem</i> , I spoke; mluv, <i>mlůf</i> , speak;
věřím,	<i>vyěrsheem</i> , I believe; věřil jsem, <i>vyěrshil sem</i> , I believed; věř, believe;
učím,	<i>űcheem</i> , I teach; učil jsem, <i>űchil sem</i> , I taught; uč, teach;
učím se,	<i>űcheem sě</i> , I learn; učil jsem se, <i>űchil sem sě</i> , I learned; uč se, learn;
soudím,	<i>soűďeem</i> , I judge; soudil jsem, <i>soűďil sem</i> , I judged; sud' , <i>sűď'</i> , judge;
platím,	<i>plătveem</i> , I pay; platil jsem, <i>plăt'il sem</i> , I paid; plat' , pay;
svítím,	<i>sweetveem</i> , I shine (I light); svítíl jsem, <i>sweet'il sem</i> , I shined (lighted); sviť, shine (light);
budím,	<i>bűďeem</i> , I wake; budil jsem, <i>bűďil sem</i> , I waked; bud' , wake;
blázním,	<i>blázňeem</i> , I am crazy; bláznil jsem, <i>blázňil sem</i> , I was crazy; blázní, <i>blázňi</i> , be crazy;
modlím se,	<i>modleem sě</i> , I pray; modlil jsem se, I prayed; modli se, pray.

Učitel*), m.	<i>űchitel</i> ,	the teacher;	kresliti,	<i>kressliťi</i> ,	to draw;
učitelka, f.	<i>űchitelkă</i> ,	a female teacher;	živý, á, é	<i>živee</i> ,	living;
			nahlas,	<i>năhlăs</i> ,	aloud;
žák, m.	<i>žák</i> ,	the scholar;	pilně,	<i>pilňě</i> ,	diligently;
soudce, m.	<i>soűtsě</i> ,	the judge;	právě,	<i>právyě</i> ,	rightly;
zákon, m.	<i>zákön</i> ,	the law;	křivě,	<i>krshivýě</i> ,	wrongly;
kostel, m.	<i>kőstel</i> ,	the church;	podle,	<i>pődlě</i> ,	according to;
lampa, f.	<i>lămpă</i> ,	the lamp;	dříve,	<i>ďrsheevě</i> ,	formerly.

*) **Učitel**, the teacher; **učitele**, *űchitellě*, of the teacher; **učiteli**, *űchitelli*, to the teacher; (plural) **učitelé**, *űchitellé*, the teachers; — like **přítel**, **přátelé** (see foot-note on page 97).

EXERCISES.

Čiň dobré a budeš šťasten.

Co jsi učinil? Neučinil jsem nic.

— On to učinil.

Chlapec chodí do školy; — obě děti chodí do školy.

Chodíte často do města? — Dříve chodil jsem tam často; — nyní tam nechodím.

Proč nechodíte? — Nemám čas.

Mluv nahlas; já tě neslyším.

Mluvil jsi s učitelem? — Nemluvil; ale mluvil jsem s učitelkou.

Věří ti učitel? — On vždy mi věří, protože mluvím pravdu. — To rád slyším.

Učitel učí nás mluvit pravdu. — Učil nás tomu vždycky.

Uč se pilně. — Učte se dobře. — Učme se společně.

Co se učíš*)? — Zeměpis. — Co vy se učíte? — Kreslit. — Kreslíte dobře. — Žák kreslil pěkně.

Soudil jsem křivě. — Vy jste soudili právě. — Soudce soudil podle zákona.

Do good and thou shalt be happy.

What hast thou done? — I have not done anything. — He has done it.

The boy goes to school; — both children go to school.

Do you often go to town? — Formerly I went there often; — now I do not go there.

Why do you not go? — I have no time.

Speak loud; I do not hear thee.

Hast thou spoken with the teacher?

— I have not (spoken); but I spoke with the lady teacher.

Does the teacher believe you? — He always believes me, because I speak the truth. — I like to hear that.

The teacher teaches us to speak the truth. — He has taught us that always.

Learn(thou) diligently. — Learn(you) well. — Let us learn together.

What doest thou learn? — Geography. — What is it you learn? — To draw. — You draw well. — The scholar drew nicely.

I judged wrong. — You judged right. — The judge judged according to law.

*) This is the colloquial expression. In the written language, *učiti* and *učiti se* govern the dative case, responding to the question *čemu?* (See page 82.) Hence we should write: *čemu se učíš?* what doest thou learn? *čemu učíte?* what do you teach? And the answer would be: *zeměpisu*.

Zákon platí, vždy platil a musí vždy platit.

Budil jsem každé ráno celou rodinu časně.

Myslím že blázníš. — Ten člověk blázní. — Neblázní! — Bláznil jsi? — Ba bláznil jsem!

Měsíc ještě svítí; svítil celou noc. — Ta lampa svítí špatně; včera svítila dobře.

Modli se! — Modleme se! — Lidé modlí se v kostele. — Kněz modlil se za živé*) i za mrtvé. •

The law rules, always ruled, and must always rule.

I waked up every morning the whole family early.

I think that thou art crazy. — That man is crazy. — Don't be crazy! Wast thou crazy? — Surely, I was crazy!

The moon still shines; it has been shining all night. — That lamp shines badly; yesterday it shined well.

Pray! — Let us pray! — People pray in church. — The priest prayed for the living and for the dead.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **činití** is **čin**, to which the termination **iti** is attached. All verbs ending in **iti** belong to the fourth conjugation.

The root of the verb is the common form of the imperative: **čiň**, do; **choď**, walk; **mluv**, speak; etc. In some cases, however, only the final **ti** is thrown off to form the imperative: **blázní**, be crazy; **modli se**, pray.

Note 2. The verbs **bydliti**, **mysliti**, **musiti** (to reside, to think, must) are also written **bydleti**, **mysleti**, **museti**, and in popular language this form is always employed. This does not materially modify their inflection, as the third and fourth conjugation are essentially almost identical. For instance :

*) **Živý**, living; plural: **živí**, in the objective case **živé**. These distinctions, however, disappear in common discourse. This adjective also has an indefinite or short form (see Note 2, Lesson XXIII): **živ**, a, o. For instance: **je posud živ**, he is still living; **matka je živa**, the mother is living; **dítě je živo**, the child is living. The expression **živ a zdrav**, pronounced *žíf á zdráf*, is frequently heard.

(Third conjugation)

seděti, <i>seděti</i> , to sit		
sedím,	<i>seděm</i> ,	I sit
seděl jsem,	<i>seděl sem</i> ,	I sat
sed',	<i>sed'</i> ,	sit (thou)
budu seděti,	<i>bůdů seděti</i>	I shall sit

(Fourth conjugation)

činiti, <i>chĩĩti</i> , to do		
činím,	<i>chĩĩm</i> ,	I do
činil jsem,	<i>chĩĩl sem</i> ,	I did
čiň,	<i>chĩĩ</i> ,	do (thou)
budu činiti,	<i>bůdů chĩĩti</i> ,	I shall do.

The above three verbs, in colloquial discourse, always take in the third person plural the form : *bydlejí, myslějí, musejí, bidlěyee, mislěyee, mǔsěyee* (they reside, they think, they must); whereas the proper grammatical form is like the third person singular : *bydlí, myslí, musí*.

LESSON XXXIV.

Volati, <i>volāti</i> ,	to call;	prodati, <i>prodāti</i> ,	to sell;
běhati, <i>byěhāti</i> ,	to run (about);	prodávati*), <i>prodāvāti</i> ,	to be selling;
čekati, <i>chekāti</i> ,	to wait;		
dělati, <i>dělati</i> ,	to do, to make, to work;	povídati, <i>poveedāti</i> ,	to say, to tell;
hledati, <i>hlědāti</i> ,	to seek, to look for;	trestati, <i>trestāti</i> ,	to punish;
doufati, <i>doůfāti</i> ,	to hope;	znāti, <i>znāti</i> ,	to know;
		ptāti se, <i>ptāti se</i> ,	to ask, to inquire;
		plovati, <i>plovāti</i> ,	to swim.

Volám, *volám*, I call; **voláš,** *voláš*, thou callest; **volá,** he (she, it) calls; **voláme, voláte, volají,** *volámě, volūtě, volāyee*, we, you, they call; — **volal jsem,** *volāl sem*, I called; **volej,** *voley*, call (thou); **volejte,** *voleytě*, call (you);

běhám, *byěhám*, I run; **běhal jsem,** *byěhāl sem*, I was running; **běž,** *byěž*, run;

čekám, *chekám*, I wait; **čekal jsem,** *chekāl sem*, I waited; **čekej,** *chekey*, wait;

dělám, *dělám*, I do, I make; **dělal jsem,** *dělāl sem*, I did, I made; **dělej,** *děley*, do, make;

*) Reiterative form of **prodati**; see Note 5, Lesson XIII.

hledám, *hlédám*, I seek; hledal jsem, *hlédal sem*, I sought; hledej, *hlědey*, seek;
 doufám, *doůfám*, I hope; doufal jsem, *doůfál sem*, I hoped; doufej, *doůfey*, hope;
 prodám, I shall sell (having a future meaning; see Note 7, Lesson XIV;
 prodal jsem, *prodál sem*, I sold; prodej, *prodey*, sell;
 prodávám, I am selling; prodával jsem, *prodávál sem*, I was selling; pro-
 dávej, *prodávey*, sell;
 povídám, *poveedám*, I say; povídal jsem, *poveedál sem*, I said; povídej, *poveedey*, tell;
 trestám (also *tresci*, *trestsi*), I punish; trestal jsem, *trestál sem*, I punished; trestej, *trestey*, punish;
 znám, I know; znal jsem, *znál sem*, I knew; znej, *zney*, know;
 ptám se, I ask; ptal jsem se, *ptál sem se*, I asked; ptej se, *ptey se*, ask.

Květiny, f. <i>kwyěťině</i>	}	flower	spatřiti, <i>spätřshi'ti</i> , to see (or to
kvítka, n. <i>kweetko</i>			meet);
kytka, f. <i>kítka</i> ,		bouquet;	vědět, <i>vyěd'eti</i> , to know;
majetek, m. <i>măyětek</i> ,		property;	poslušný, á, é <i>poslůshnee</i> , obedient;
na přesrok, <i>nă prshěsrok</i> ,		next year	neposlušný, disobedient;
před lety, <i>prshed lety</i> ,		years ago;	tento (f. <i>tato</i> , n. <i>toto</i>), <i>tentě</i> , this
druzí, <i>drůzee</i> ,		the others;	one, this here.
naši, <i>năshi</i> ,		our folks;	

EXERCISES.

Voláš mě? — Koho voláš? — Koho jsi volal?

Volám hochy; kde je? — Běhá venku; všechny děti běhají venku.

Volal jsem tě; kde's (abbrev. of kde jsi) byl?

Doest thou call me? — Whom doest thou call? — Whom didst thou call?

I call the boy; where is he? — He is running outside (i. e. out of doors); — all the children are running outside.

I called thee; where hast thou been?

Běhal jsem na zahradě; — čekal jsem až mě budete volati.

Co jsi dělal na zahradě? — Nedělal jsem nic; — hledal jsem květiny.

Je tam mnoho květin? — Ano.

Co druzí dělali na zahradě? — Hledali květiny se mnou.

Hledej pěkné květiny a dělej kytky. — Jděte*) oba, ty a Karel, a hledejte kvítka.

Doufám že na přesrok budeme živi a zdraví. — Doufejme!

Doufal jsem spatřiti vás zde. — Všichni doufali sme sejítí se s vámi.

Prodám svůj majetek. — Prodejte ho brzy. — Můj bratr prodal svůj majetek lacino.

Naši prodali farmu a povídají že půjdou do města.

Povídal jsem mu, že mám dům na prodej. — Prodávám všechno co mám.

Tento majetek není na prodej. — Kdo to povídal? — Kdo vám to povídal?

Každý to povídá. — Všichni to povídají.

Znáš mě? — Znáš tě dobře; — znal jsem tě už před lety.

I was running in the garden;— I was waiting until you would call me.

What wast thou doing in the garden?— I was not doing anything; -- I was looking for flowers.

Are there many flowers there?—Yes.

What have the others been doing in the garden? — They were looking for flowers with me.

Look for nice flowers, and make bouquets. — Go both of you, — thou and Charles, and look for flowers.

I hope that next year we shall be a-live and well. — Let us hope!

I hoped to see (or meet) you here. — We all hoped to meet you.

I shall sell my property. — Sell it soon.—My brother sold his property cheap.

Our folks have sold the farm, and they say that they will go to the city.

I told him that I had a house for sale. — I am selling everything I have.

This property is not for sale. — Who said so? — Who told you so?

Everybody says so. — They all say so.

Doest thou know me?—I know thee well; — I knew you already years ago.

*) The infinitive is *jíti*, *yeet'i*, to go; see Lesson XIII.

Každý mě zná; — všichni mě znají.	Everybody knows me; — they all know me.
Znáte mého otce? — Neznám ho. — Znal jste mou matku? — Neznal jsem ji.	Do you know my father? — I do not know him. — Did you know my mother? — I did not know her.
Proč se ptáš? — Ptám se, protože chci věděti.*)	Why doest thou ask? — I ask because I want to know.
Ptáte se po mě? — Ptal jsem se kde bydlíte; — povídali mi, že prodal jste svůj dům. — Neprodal jsem ho ještě.	Do you ask for me? — I asked where you lived; — they told me that you had sold your house. — I have not sold it yet.
Neptám se co učitel povídal; já to vím.	I do not ask what the teacher said; I know it.
Věděl jsem, že chlapec je neposlušný; — víte že musel jsem trestati ho.	I knew that the boy was disobedient; — you know that I was obliged to punish him.
To víme. — Všichni víme, že trestal jste ho často.	We know that. — We all know that you punished him often.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **volati** is **vol**, to which the termination **ati** is attached. Verbs ending in **ati** belong to the fifth conjugation.

Note 2. Some verbs ending in **áti** form their present like the verbs of the first conjugation ending in **íti**, (**bíti**, to beat; **biju**, **biješ**, **bije**, etc.); for example:

hráti, *hrátě*, to play: **hraju***), **hraješ**, **hraje**, *hráýř, hráýesh, hráýř*, I play, thou playest, he plays; **hrajeme**, **hrajete**, **hrajou****) *hrá-yemě, hráyetě, hráýoř, we, you, they play*; — **hrál jsem**, *hrál sem*, I played; **hraj**, *hráý*, play.

*) **Věděti** (to know) is one of the thoroughly irregular verbs: **vím**, *viš, ví, veem, veesh, vee*, I know, thou knowest, he (she, it) knows; **víme**, *víte, vědí, veemě, veetě, vyěďee*, we, you, they know; — **věděl jsem**, *vyěďel sem*, I knew; **věz**, *vyěz*, know thou: **vězte**, *vyězte*, know you.

) **Hraji, **hrají**, I play, they play) are considered the pure grammatical forms of the first person singular and third person plural; but **hraju**, **hrajou**, are exclusively used in the popular language.

However, this verb also follows the rule of the fifth conjugation in the present tense: **hrám, hraš, hrá; hráme, hráte, hrají** (I play, thou playest, he plays; we, you, they play).

A few verbs modify the letter **á** in the present tense:

hřáti, hrsháti, to warm; — **hřeju** (or **hřeji**) **hřeješ, hřeje; hřejeme, hřejete, hřejou** (or **hřejí**); I warm, thou warmest, he warms; etc.

— **hřál jsem, hrshál sem**, I warmed; **hřeji, hrshey**, warm;

práti, prsháti, to wish; — **přeju** (or **přeji**), I wish; **prál jsem**, I wished; **přej, wish**;

smáti se, smáti se, to laugh; — **směju se** (or **směji se**), **smýčyř se**, I laugh; **smál jsem se, smál sem se**, I laughed; **směj se, smýčy se**, laugh.

Note 3. There are some verbs essentially belonging to this conjugation, which show a considerable deviation in the present tense and imperative. The following are most frequently met with:

bráti, to take; — **beru, bereš, bere, bereme, berete, berou, berě, beresh, berě, berěmě, berěš, beroř** (I take, thou takest, etc); **bral jsem, brál sem**, I took; **ber, take**;

práti, to wash; — **peru, perě, I wash; pral jsem, prál sem**, I washed; **per, wash**;

psáti, to write; — **píšu, peeshě, I write; psal jsem, psál sem**, I wrote; **piš, pish, write**;

kázati, to preach (or to command); — **kážu, kážě, I preach; káزال jsem, I preached; kaž, preach**;

tázati se, to ask; — **tážu se, tážě se, I ask; táزال jsem se, tázál sem se, I asked; taž se, ask**;

plakati, to weep; — **plaču, pláchě** (but also **plakám**) I weep; **plakal jsem, plákal sem**, I wept; **plač, plách, weep**;

skákat, to jump; — **skáču, skáchě** (but also **skákám**), I jump; **skákal jsem, skákal sem**, I was jumping; **skákej, skákey, jump**;

stonati, to be sick; — **stůnu, stooně** (but also **stonám, stónám**), I am sick; **stůněš, stoonesh, thou art sick; stůně, stooně, he is sick, etc.; stonej, stoney, be sick.**

LESSON XXXV.

Milovati , <i>milǔvǎti</i> , to love;	pracovati , <i>prǎtsǔvǎti</i> , to work;
děkovati , <i>d'ekǔvǎti</i> , to thank;	radovati se , <i>rǎdǔvǎti sě</i> , to rejoice;
litovati , <i>litǔvǎti</i> , to be sorry, to regret;	opakovati , <i>ǔpǎkǔvǎti</i> , to repeat;
jmenovati , <i>menǔvǎti</i> , to name, to call;	pamatovati , <i>pǎmǎtǔvǎti</i> , to remember;
jmenovati se , <i>m. sě</i> , to be called;	podporovati , <i>pǔdporǔvǎti</i> , to support, to assist;
kupovati , <i>kǔpǔvǎti</i> , to be buying;	ztravovati , <i>strǎvǔvǎti</i> , to board.

Miluju (or **miluji***) *milǔyǎ*, I love; **miluješ**, *milǔyesh*, thou lovest; **miluje**, *milǔyě*, he (she, it) loves; **milujeme**, **milujete**, **milujou** (or **milují***) *milǔyěmě*, *milǔyětě*, *milǔyǔ*, we, you, they love; — **miloval jsem**, *milǔvǎl sem*, I loved; **miluj**, *milǔy*, love; **milujte**, *milǔytě*, love (you);

děkuju (or **děkuji**), *d'ekǔyǎ*, I thank; **děkoval jsem**, *d'ekǔvǎl sem*, I thanked; **děkuj**, *d'ekǔy*, thank;

lituju (or **lituji**), *litǔyǎ*, I regret; **litoval jsem**, *litǔvǎl sem*, I regretted; **lituj**, *litǔy*, regret;

jmenuju (or **jmenuji**), *menǔyǎ*, I name; **jmenoval jsem**, *menǔvǎl sem*, I named; **jmenuj**, *menǔy*, name;

jmenuju se, *menǔyǎ sě*, I am called; **jmenoval jsem se**, *menǔvǎl sem sě*, I was called; **jmenuj se**, *menǔy sě*, call yourself;

kupuju (or **kupuji**), *kǔpǔyǎ*, I am buying; **kupoval jsem**, *kǔpǔvǎl sem*, I was buying; **kupuj**, *kǔpǔy*, buy (or rather: keep buying);

*) **Miluju**, **milujou** (I love, they love) is always used in ordinary conversation; **miluji**, **milují**, *milǔyi*, *milǔyee* (I love, they love) prevails in the written language, being considered the proper grammatical form. This applies to all verbs of this conjugation: **děkuju**, **děkujou**, or **děkuji**, **děkují** (I thank, they thank); **lituju**, **litujou**, or **lituji**, **litují** (I regret, they regret); etc.

pracuju (or **pracuji**), *prátsüyŭ*, I work; **pracoval jsem**, *prátsöväł sem*, I worked; **pracuj**, *prátsüy*, work;

raduju se (or **raduji se**), *rädŭyŭ sě*, I rejoice; **radoval jsem se**, *rädöväł sem sě*, I rejoiced; **raduj se**, *rädŭy sě*, rejoice;

opakuju (or **opakuji**), *öpakŭyŭ*, I repeat; **opakoval jsem**, *öpäköväł sem*, I repeated; **opakuj**, *öpäkŭy*, repeat;

pamatuju (or **pamatuji**), *pämätŭyŭ*, I remember; **pamatoval jsem**, *pämätöväł sem*, I remembered; **pamatuji**, *pämätŭy*, remember;

podporuju (or **podporuji**), *pödporŭyŭ*, I support; **podporoval jsem**, *pödporöväł sem*, I supported; **podporuj**, *pödporŭy*, support;

žaluju (or **žaluji**), *žälŭyŭ*, I complain; **žaloval jsem**, *žälöväł sem*, I complained; **žaluj**, *žälŭy*, complain.

Bůh*) m. *booh*, God;

blízní**) m. *bleežñee*, the fellow man, (neighbor);

král, *král*, the king;

královna, *kráľövnä*, the queen;

žebřák, m. *žěbrák*, the beggar;

kamarád, m. *kāmārād*, the comrade;

objevitel, m. *obyě-vitel*, the discoverer;

svět, m. *swyět*, the world;

země, f. *zemyě*, the country; the earth;

vlast, f. *vľäst*, one's country;

dávati, *dávätŭi*, to give, to offer;

život, m. *živöt*, life;

válka, f. *válkă*, war;

osud, m. *osŭd*, fate;

vychování, n. *vykhöväñee*, education;

díl, m. *ďeel*, a part;

výdělek, m. *veďelek*, earnings, wages, profit;

kteřý, á, é *kteree* or *keree*, which, what, who;

vespolek, *vespölek*, { all together; one another;

nazpamět, *näspämyět*, by heart;

z paměti, *spämyětŭi*, from memory;

svobodný, á, é *swöbödnee*, free; single;

Římané, *rshimäné*, the Romans;

Václav, *vátsláv*, Venceslaus, Wencel.

*) **Bůh**, **Boha**, **Bohu**, s **Bohem** (*booh*, *böhhä*, *böhhŭ*, *sböhem*), God, of God (God's), to God, with God.

) Nouns having the termination of adjectives are declined like adjectives of the corresponding termination. Hence we decline: **blízní, — **blízního**, of (our) fellow man or neighbor; **blíznímu**, to (our) neighbor; s **blízním**, with (our) neighbor. See Note 1, Lesson XXI.

EXERCISES.

Miluj bližního svého*). — Milujte se vespolek.

Miluješ rodiče své? — Miluju je velmi.

Matka miluje své dítě. — Děti milují matku svou.

Washington miloval svou vlas'. — Římané milovali válku.

Co kupuješ? — Kupuji obilí. — Co kupoval jsi onehdy? — Kupoval jsem pár koní.

Kdo kupoval tento dům? — Naši kupovali ten dům; — dávali za něj dva tisíce.

Chečeš něco jísti? — Nechei nic, děkuju.

Dal jsem žebráku pět centů a on děkoval mi.

Děkujeme Bohu, že jsme zdraví. — Děkuj svému osudu, že jsi rozen ve svobodné zemi.

Děkujte rodičům za dobré vychování.

Lituju že musím pryč. — Litoval jsem, že musil jsem odejít. — Zůstaň zde, povídali všichni, nebo budeš litovati.

Love thy neighbor. — Love (you) one another.

Doest thou love thy parents? — I love them greatly.

The mother loves her child. — The children love their mother.

Washington loved his country. — The Romans loved war.

What art thou buying? — I am buying grain. — What wert thou buying the other day? — I was buying a pair of horses.

Who has been buying this house? — Our folks were buying that house; — they offered for it two thousand.

Doest thou want something to eat? — I do not want anything, thank you.

I gave (to) the beggar five cents and he thanked me.

Let us thank God that we are healthy. — Thank thy fate that thou wast born in a free country.

Thank (your) parents for a good education.

I am sorry that I must (go) away. — I was sorry that I had to leave. — Stay here, they all said, or thou wilt be sorry.

*) This is the objective case, responding to *koho? whom?* It agrees with the possessive case; see Remark on page 86.

Jak se jmenuješ? — Jmenuju se Václav Zeman. — A jak vy se jmenujete? — Já se jmenuju Staněk. — Jmenuj mi pět dílů světa.

Jak se jmenoval objevitel Ameriky? — Křištof Kolumbus.

Jak se jmenoval král, který ho podporoval? — Ferdinand. — A královna? — Isabella.

Pracuj pilně a budeš radovati se nad výdělkem.

Rád pracuješ? — Ano, ale můj kamarád nerad pracuje; — on pořád žaluje, že musí pracovati.

Pracovali jsme celý den.

Učitel žaloval mi, že jsi neposlušný; — opakuj, že musíš býti poslušný; — pamatuj si to!

Pamatuj co se učíš; — pamatuj si to? — Pamatuju to dobře; — učím se to nazpaměť.

Pamatujme na chudé; — podporujme je. — Pamatuj že život jest krátký.

What is thy name? — My name is Wencel Zeman. — And what is your name? — My name is Staněk. — Name (to me) the five parts of the world.

What was the name of the discoverer of America? — Christopher Columbus.

What was the name of the king who assisted him? — Ferdinand. — And of the queen? — Isabella.

Work diligently, and thou wilt rejoice over (thy) earnings.

Doest thou like to work? — Yes; but my comrade does not like to work; — he always complains that he must work.

We worked (*or* have been working) all day.

The teacher complained to me that thou art disobedient; — I repeat that thou must be obedient; — remember that!

Remember what thou learnest; — doest thou remember it? — I remember it well; — I learn it by heart.

Let us remember the poor; — let us support them. — Remember (you) that life is short.

Note. The root or stem of the verb **milovati** is **mil**, to which the termination **ovati** is attached. Verbs ending in **ovati** (when this termination is attached to the *root*) belong to the sixth conjugation.

LESSON XXXVI.

(Já) bych *bikh* I should
 (ty) bys *bis* thou wouldst
 (on) by *bi* he would

(my) bychom *bikhōm* } we should
 „ bysme *bismě* }
 (vy) byste *bistě* you would
 (oni) by *bi* they would

Byl*) bych *bill bikh* I should be
 byl bys *bill bis* thou wouldst be
 byl by *bill bi* he would be;
 etc.

Byl bych byl, } I should have
 byl bych býval } been;
 byl bys býval, thou wouldst have
 been; etc.

Nesl bych, *nessl bikh*, I should
 (or “would”) carry;
 minul bych, *minul bikh*, I should
 pass
 viděl bych, *viděl bikh*, I should
 see
 činil bych, *chiñil bikh*, I should
 do
 volal bych, *völal bikh*, I should
 call
 miloval bych, *milöval bikh*, I should
 love

Abych (já) *äbikh* that I should
 abys (ty) *äbis* that thou shouldst
 aby (on) *äbi* that he should; etc.

Kdybych *gdibikh* if I should
 kdybys *gdibis* if thou wouldst
 kdyby *gdibi* if he would (or
 simply “if”).

Abych byl *äbikh bill* that I should be
 abys byl *äbis bill* that thou
 shouldst be
 aby byl *äbi bill* that he should be; etc.

Kdybych byl, if I were,
 kdybys byl, if thou wert,
 kdyby byl, if he were; etc.

nesli bychom (or bysme), *nessli bi-
 khōm*, we should (or “would”) carry
 minuli bychom, *minuli bikhom*, we
 should pass
 viděli bychom, *videli bikhōm*, we
 should see
 činili bychom, *chiñili bikhōm*, we
 should do
 volali bychom, *völali bikhōm*, we
 should call
 milovali bychom, *milövali bikhōm*,
 we should love.

*) In the feminine gender *byla bych, byla bys, byla by*; third person neutre: *bylo by*, it would be. See Lesson IX.

Byl bych nesl, I should have carried;
byl bych minul, I should have passed;
byl bych viděl, I should have seen;

byl bych činil, I should have done;
byl bych volal, I should have called;
byl bych miloval, I should have
 loved.

Kdyby, *gdíbi,* if
kterýkoli, *ktěreekōli,* whichever, any
kdož (same as **kdo**), *gdōž,* who
či, čili, *chi, chilli,* or
říci, *rsheetsi,* to say, to tell
řekni, *rshěkñi,* say, tell (thou)
řekněte, *rshěkñetě,* say, tell (you)
těžký, á, é *těshkee,* heavy, hard

kufr, m. *kűffer,* the trunk
košík, m. *kosheek,* the basket
list, m. *list,* the letter
vodopád, m. *vōdōpád,* a waterfall
krajina, f. *krāyínā,* a section of
 country
počasí, n. *pōchāssee,* the weather
štěkati, *shťekāti,* to bark.

EXERCISES.

**Nesl bych ten kufr, kdyby nebyl
 tak těžký.**

**Byl bych nesl ten kufr, kdybyste
 byli chtěli.**

**My bysme nesli košík a vy byste
 nesli pytel.**

**Četl bys tu knihu? — Četl bych ji
 rád, kdybych ji měl.**

**My bychom (or my bysme) rádi četli
 dnešní noviny.**

**Které noviny byste rádi četli? —
 Kterékoliv.**

**Byli bychom (or byli bysme) četli
 ten list, ale byl tuze dlouhý.**

**Pil bych pivo, kdybych ho měl, —
 Pil byste*) čaj? — Nepil bych nic.**

I would carry that trunk, if it were
 not so heavy.

I should have carried that trunk, if
 you had wanted it.

We should carry the basket, and you
 would carry the sack.

Wouldst thou read that book? — I
 would like to read it, if I had it.

We should like to read to-day's
 newspaper.

What newspaper would you like to
 read? — Any newspaper.

We should have read that letter, but
 it was too long.

I should drink beer, if I had it. —
 Would you drink tea? — I would
 not drink anything.

*) Speaking to one person and using the second person plural: **vy,** you; speaking to several persons, we should say: **pili byste** (would you drink).

Kdyby bylo pěkně, sil bych pšenici.
 Kdyby pes štěkal, kopnul bych ho.
 Viděl bych rád vodopád Niagara.
 Na cestě do Iowy viděli bysme řeku
 Mississippi.

Kdybyste přijeli k nám, viděli by-
 ste hezkou krajinu.

Kdybych věděl, jaké počasí bude,
 řekl bych vám.

Chodil bych k tobě, kdybys chtěl.

On by chodil k vám často. — Proč
 by nechodil? — Jen ať chodí!

Věřil bys tomu? — Věřil byste
 že nemám čas? — Nevěřil bych
 to**). —

Věřili by nám? — Myslím že věřili
 by vám to.

Prodal bych rád můj obchod. —
 Těžko byste prodal nyní.

Litoval bych, kdybyste prodal ten
 obchod. — Já bych nelitoval nic.

Je čas, abych šel. — Řekni mu
 aby šel.

Chei abys přišel brzy. — Chei aby-
 ste odešli.

Chcete abych to koupil?

If it were nice*), I should sow wheat
 If the dog barked, I should kick him.
 I should like to see the Niagara Falls.
 On (our) way to Iowa we should see
 the river Mississippi.

If you would come to us, you would
 see a nice country.

If I knew what kind of weather it
 will be, I should tell you.

I should come to thee (i. e. "come to
 to see thee often"), if thou wouldst
 wish it.

He would come to you often. — Why
 should he not come? — Do let him
 come!

Wouldst thou believe it? — Would
 you believe that I have no time?
 — I should not believe it.

Would they believe us? — I think that
 they would believe you (it).

I would like to sell my business. —
 You would find it hard to sell now.

I should be sorry, if you would sell
 that business. — I should not be
 sorry at all.

It is time that I should go. — Tell him
 to go, *or* to come (i. e. tell him that
 he should go).

I want thee to come soon. — I want
 you to leave.

Do you want me to buy that?

*) That is, "if the weather were nice".

**) Věřiti to (accus. case), věřiti tomu (dative case); both are used
 with equal propriety.

Kdybys byl zde býval, byl bys viděl
všelico.

Kdybych tam byl, bylo by dobře.—
Kdybych tam byl býval, byl bych
rád.

If thou hadst been here, thou wouldst
have seen different things.

If I were there, it would be well.—If
I had been there, I should be glad.

NOTE 1. The English conjunctions *if, whether*, used to introduce a conditional sentence, are expressed in Bohemian by the suffix **li**, or by **jestli, zdali, pakli, yestli, zdáli, pākli** :

Jsem-li, *sem-li* } if I am,
jestli jsem, *yestli sem* } whether I
zdali jsem, *zdáli sem* } am;

byl-li jsem, *bill-li sem* } if I
jestli jsem byl, *yestli sem bill* } was,
zdali jsem byl, *zdáli sem bill* } if I
pakli jsem byl, *pākli sem bill* } have
been.

budu-li, *būdū li* } if I shall
jestli budu, *yestli būdū* } be; etc.

nesu-li, *nessū-li* } if I carry;
jest-li nesu, *yestli nessū* }

jsme-li, *smě-li* } if we are,
jestli jsme, *yestli smě* } whether
zdali jsme, *zdáli smě* } we are;

byli-li jsme, *billi-li smě* } if we
jestli jsme byli, *yestli smě billi* } were,
zdali jsme byli, *zdáli smě billi* } if we
pakli jsme byli, *pākli smě billi* } have
been;

budeme-li, *būdēmě-li* } if we
jestli budeme, *yestli būdemě* } shall
be; etc.

nesl-li jsem, *nessl-li sem* } if I
jestli jsem nesl, *yestli sem nessl* } car-
ried

Arci (že), *artsi* } of course,
ovšem (že), *ofshěm* } to be sure;
nikam, *nikām*, nowhere;
nikdo jiný, *nikdō yinee*, no one else;
ani my, *āni me*, not even we,

neither we;
zač je, *zách yě*, what is it worth;
zač jsou, *zách soū*, what are they
worth;

mouka, f. *moūkă*, the flour;
tuna, f. *tūnă*, a ton;
přijeti, *prshiyěti*, to arrive (by
some conveyance);

směti, *smýěti*, to be allowed,
to dare;

smím-li, *smeemli*, if I may;

víte-li, *veetěli*, if you know;

slíbiti, *sleebiti*, to promise;

pověděti, *povyědět*, to tell;

pověz, *povyěz*, tell (thou);

utratiti, *utrătiti*, to spend;

vzít si, *vzeet* *si*, to take (to
one's self);

vezmu si, *vězmū si*, I shall take
(to myself).

Note 2. The pronoun **si** has the same meaning as **sobě**, *sobyě*, “to one’s self”, “for one’s self”. It often accompanies verbs, denoting the closest relation between the subject and its predicate, somewhat after the manner of reflexive verbs (connected with **se**, the same as **sebe**, one’s self). For instance :

Vzíti means simply “to take”; **vzíti si** means “to take to one’s self”, — to take for one’s own use or exclusive possession. — **Vzíti kytku**, to take a flower; **vzíti si kytku**, to take (and keep for one’s self) a flower. — **Vzíti si ženu**, to take to one’s self a wife; **vzal si ženu**, he took unto himself a wife.

Vezmi si peníze, take (to thyself) money, *or* the money; **vezměte si piva**, take (yourself) some beer; **vezměme si vína**, let us take (ourselves) some wine.

Koupím klobouk, I shall buy a hat; **koupím si klobouk**, I shall buy (myself) a hat,—I shall buy me a hat; **kup si klobouk**, buy (thyself) a hat.

Dej udělat obraz (*děy ůdělāt obráz*), let (thou) a picture be made; order a picture to be made; **dej si udělat obraz**, let a picture be made for thyself. — **Dejte udělat šaty**, have a suit of clothes made; **dejte si udělat šaty**, have a suit of clothes made for yourself.

Note 3. The *finite* verb **vzíti** (to take) has only a past and future tense, — the *continuous* verb **bráti** (to take) supplying the present: **beru**, I take. See Note 3 on page 153.

Vzal jsem, vzal jsi, vzal, I took, thou tookest, hee took; **vezmu, vezmeš, vezme**, I shall take, thou wilt take, he will take; **vezmi, vezměte**, take (thou, you).

In common discourse we often hear **vemu, vemeš, veme**, *věmů, věmesh, věmě*, in place of **vezmu, vezmeš, vezme**; and **vem, vemte, věm, věmtě**, in place of **vezmi, vezměte**.

EXERCISES.

Ptáte se, jsem-li rád? — Ovšem že jsem rád.

Ptal jsem se, jsou-li naši zde. — Arci že jsou, — pravil pan Hronek.

You ask if I am glad? — Of course I am glad.

I asked if our folks were here. — Of course they are, — said Mr. Hronek.

Rád bych věděl, jestli sestra přijela.

Ráda bych věděla (f.), zdali bratr přijel.

Rád bych slyšel, je-li můj syn živ nebo mrtev.

Co myslíte, bude pršet? — Kdož ví, bude-li pršet čili nebude.

Myslíte-li že bude pršet, nepůjdu nikam.

Chei vědět má-li peníze; — nemá-li, ať odejde.

Dám-li mu peníze, utratí je. — Dám-li mu dollar, bude spokojen. — Dáte-li mi něco, budu rád.

Podívám se, zdali je otec doma. — Pověz mi pak, je-li doma nebo není.

Povězte mi, musím-li jítí domu nebo ne. — Ať poví ti, musíš-li jítí do školy.

Povězte mi, smím-li vzítí si růži. — Smíš; ale nikdo jiný nesmí.

Vezmi si tu kytku. — Já nesmím.

Proč nesmíš? — Nesmíš-li ty, nesmím já.

Nesmí-li nikdo, nesmíme ani my.

Nevím smíme-li, nebo nesmíme.

To nesmíš dělat! — Jestli nesmím, teda nebudu.

Otec slíbil mi dollar, budu-li hodný.

I should like to know, if sister has arrived.

I should like to know if brother has arrived.

I should like to hear whether my son is alive or dead.

What do you think, will it rain? — Who knows if it will rain or not.

If you think that it will rain, I shall not go anywhere.

I want to know if he has money; — if he has not, let him go away.

If I give him money, he spends it. — If we give him a dollar, he will be satisfied. — If you give me something, I shall be glad.

I shall see if father is at home. — Tell me then if he is at home or not.

Tell me whether I must go home or not. — Let him tell thee, whether thou must go to school.

Tell me if I may take a rose. — Thou mayest; but nobody else may.

Take that flower. — I dare not (I must not).

Why must thou not? — If thou must not, I must not.

If nobody is allowed, then we too are not allowed.

I don't know whether we may or not.

Thou must not do that! — If I must not, than I shall not.

Father promised me a dollar if I am (i. e. shall be) good.

Jestli ti ho slíbil, dá ti ho.

If he has promised it (to thee), he will give it to thee.

Povězte mi, víte-li zač je tuna sena. — Víte-li pak, zač jsou prasata?

Tell me if you know what is a ton of hay worth. — Do you know what hogs are worth?

Znáte-li pak mě? — Víte-li*) pak, že jsem zde dávno?

Do you know me? — Do you know that I have been here a long time?

Note 4. The present participle *being* varies in Bohemian according to gender and number:

jsa, *sā*, m. — **jsouc**, *soŭts*, f. and n. — **jsouce**, *soŭtsě*, pl. of all three genders.

The past, *having been*, is rendered thus:

byv, *bif*, m. — **byvši**, *bifshi*, f. and n. — **byvše**, *bifshě*, pl. of all three genders.

The following models will amply suffice for the verbs of all conjugations :

nesa	<i>nessā</i> , m.	carrying	sedě	<i>sed'e</i> , m.	sitting
nesouc	<i>nessoŭts</i> , f. & n.	"	sedíc	<i>sed'ects</i> , f. & n.	"
nesouce	<i>nessoŭtsě</i> , pl.	"	sedíce	<i>sed'ectsě</i> , pl.	"
píje	<i>piyě</i> , m.	drinking	volaje	<i>volāyě</i> , m.	calling
píjíc	<i>piyeets</i> , f. & n.	"	volajíc	<i>volāyeets</i> , f. & n.	"
píjíce	<i>piyeetsě</i> , pl.	"	volajíce	<i>volāyeetsě</i> , pl.	"
miluje	<i>millŭyě</i> , m.	loving	Piv	<i>pif</i> , m.	having drank
milujíc	<i>millŭyeets</i> , f. & n.	"	pivši	<i>pifshi</i> , f. & n.	"
milujíce	<i>millŭyeetsě</i> , pl.	"	pivše	<i>pifshě</i> , pl.	"

seděv, *sěd'ef*, having sat; **volav**, *volāf*, having called; etc.

*) We may ask, for instance : **víte zač je mouka?** "do you know what flour is worth?" But if we ask : **víte-li pak zač je mouka?** or **zdali pak víte, zač je mouka?** there is a peculiar emphasis in the question, as if we say in English : "I wonder if you know what flour is worth?" — **Znáte mě?** "do you know me?" **Znáte-li pak mě?** or **zdali pak mě znáte?** "I wonder if you know me!"

Viděti, "to see", is irregular, forming its partic. like **nesti** : **vida** m., **vidouc** f. & n., **vidouce**, pl. (*vidě, vidoŭts, vidoŭtsě*), seeing.

These participles occur in the written language and sometimes in solemn discourse, but are never used in ordinary conversation. Expressions may be greatly shortened and made incisive by their use; for instance :

"As he was going away from here, he fell down", — may be translated into Bohemian: **Jda odsud, upadl**. In common discourse, however, people would say : **Když šel odsud, upadl** (or **upadnul**.*)

A verbal adjective is formed in Bohemian by adding an **í** to the present participle (f. and n.): **jsoucí**, *soŭtsee*, being; **nesoucí**, *nessoŭtsee*, carrying; **píjící**, *piyeetsee*, drinking; **volající**, *volŭyeetsee*, calling; **milující**, *millŭyeetsee*, loving. — They are rarely employed in common conversation, but frequently in writing:

Muž nesoucí kufr minul mě; a man carrying a trunk passed me. — **Rodiče milující své děti jsou starostliví o ně**; parents loving their children are anxious about them.

LESSON XXXVII.

THE PASSIVE VERB. In English the "past participle" is also the *passive participle*, employed to form the "passive voice" or passive verb-phrases : *I am carried; I was carried; I shall be carried*.

In Bohemian there is a special "passive participle", ending in **n** (**na** in the feminine, **no** is the neutre gender. — **ni, ny, na** in the plural), by which the passive voice of transitive verbs is formed :

Jsem nesen, *sem nessěň* (*nesena, nessěň* f., *neseno, nessěň* n.), I am carried; **jsme nesení, y, a, smě nessěňi**, we are carried;

byl jsem nesen, *bill sem nessěň*, I was carried;

budu nesen, *bŭďŭ nessěň*, I shall be carried.

*) **Padnouti**, *pădnouťi*, to fall; **upadnouti**, *ŭpădnouťi*, to fall down. As repeatedly stated in preceding lessons, the colloquial usage drops the final **i** of the infinitive, and the letter **ť** has its ordinary hard sound: *păd-nouť, ŭpăd-nouť*.

Jsem viděn, <i>sem viděn</i> , I am seen;	jsem volán, <i>sem volán</i> , I am called;
jsem učen, <i>sem učen</i> , I am taught;	jsem milován, <i>sem milován</i> , I am loved.

The passive participle of verbs of the first conjugation ending in **íti**, and of verbs of the second conjugation (ending in **outi**) terminates in **it** and **ut**; for instance, — **bíti**, **minouti** (to beat, to pass):

Jsem bit, *sem bit*, I am beat (whipped or punished); **byl jsem bit,** I was beat; **budu bit,** I shall be beat ;

jsem minut, *sem minút*, I am passed; **byl jsem minut,** I was passed; **budu minut,** I shall be passed.

The imperative of the passive voice is expressed in Bohemian by **ať**, which is already familiar to the student as an equivalent of the English "let":

Ať jsem nesen, a, o,	ať sem neseň,	let me be carried;
ať jsem bit, a, o,	ať sem bit,	let me be whipped;
ať jsem volán, a, o,	ať sem volán,	let me be called;
ať jsem milován, a, o,	ať sem milován,	let me be loved.

In English the past or passive participle is often used as an adjective; for example: "An *invited* guest."

In Bohemian every passive participle may be changed into an adjective by adding **ý** (and changing **a** into **á** in the feminine, **o** into **é** in the neutre gender). For instance:

nesen, a, o :	nesený, á, é,	carried	viděn, a, o :	viděný, á, é,	seen
bit, a, o :	bitý, á, é,	beaten	volán, a, o :	volaný, á, é,	called
minut, a, o :	minutý, á, é,	passed	milován, a, o :	milovaný, á, é,	loved, beloved.

In the termination **án, ána, áno** the long vowel **á** is shortened when the participle changes into an adjective:

volán m., volána f. voláno, n.	} called (as past participle and adjective).
volaný m. volaná f. volané, n.	

POTENTIAL FORMS.

The potential mood employing the auxiliary *may* is formed in Bohemian by means of the verb **moci**, *motsi* (commonly **mociti**, vulgarly **mocet**, *möstst*), which has an irregular inflection:

Mohu, <i>mōhlǎ,</i> I may	můžeme, <i>moožěmě,</i> we may
můžeš, <i>moožesh,</i> thou mayest	můžete, <i>moožětě,</i> you may
může, <i>moožě,</i> he (she, it) may	mohou, <i>mōhoǎ,</i> they may;
mohl, (a, o) bych, <i>mōhl, (ǎ, ō) bikh,</i>	mohli, (y, a) bychom (or bysme),
I might	<i>mōhli bismě,</i> we might
mohl bys, <i>mōhl bis,</i> thou mightest	mohli byste, m. bistě, you might
mohl by, <i>mōhl bi,</i> he might	mohli by, m. bi, they might.
Mohu býti nesen, I may be carried	mohl bych býti nesen, I might be
	carried
mohu býti bit, I may be whipped	mohl bych býti bit, I might be
	whipped
mohu býti viděn, I may be seen	mohl bych býti viděn, I might be
	seen
mohu býti milován, I may be loved	mohl bych býti milován, I might be
	loved.
Mohl jsem býti nesen, <i>mōhl sem beet'i nessěn,</i> I might have been carried;	
mohl jsem býti bit, <i>mōhl sem beet'i bit,</i> I might have been whipped.	
Otherwise moci has the meaning of "can" or "to be able":	
Mohu to udělati; — nemohu to udělati;	I can do it; — I cannot do it;
mohl jsem to udělati; — nemohl jsem to udělati;	I could do it (or: I could have done it); — I could not do it;
budu moci to udělati; — nebudu moci to udělati.	I shall be able to do it; — I shall not be able to do it;
Můžete přijíti? — Nemůžeme přijíti.	Can you come? — We cannot come.
Mohou choditi? — Nemohou choditi.	Can they walk? — They cannot walk.

In common discourse **mohu** (I can), and **mohou** (they can) are displaced by **můžu** and **můžou**, *moožǎ, moožoǎ*, making the present tense consistent, if not regular.

REITERATIVE FORM.

The English reiterative form of "used to" is rendered in Bohemian:

1. — By reiterative verbs derived from simple verbs as explained in Note

5, Lesson XIII; for instance: **hráti** means "to play"; **hrávati** means "to play often", to use to play;

<p>hrál jsem tam; hrával jsem tam; — hráli tam; hrávali tam.</p>		<p>I played there; I used to play there; — they played there; they used to play there.</p>
---	--	---

2. — By verbs having in themselves a reiterative meaning; for instance: **přicházeti**, *prshikházěti*, means "to come often" (also "to be coming"); **docházeti**, *dōkházěti*, means "to go often somewhere", to make frequent calls, (also "to be on the decline");

<p>on přichází k nám; on přicházel k nám; — my docházeli k němu; budeme docházeti k němu.</p>		<p>he often comes to us; he used to come to us; — we used to go to him; we shall often go to him.</p>
--	--	--

LESSON XXXVIII.

English participles may be used substantively, or changed into nouns; for instance:

speaking, — *the speaking*; sitting, — *the sitting*; calling, — *the calling*.

In Bohemian, nouns are derived from verbs in two different ways, illustrated by the following examples:

1.

bíti,	<i>beet'i,</i>	to beat; —	bití,	<i>bi'tee,</i>	the beating;
píti,	<i>peet'i,</i>	to drink; —	pítí,	<i>pi'tee,</i>	the drinking;
šíti,	<i>sheet'i,</i>	to sew; —	šití,	<i>shi'tee,</i>	the sewing;
žíti,	<i>žee't'i,</i>	to live; —	žití,	<i>ži'tee,</i>	the living;
bod-nouti,	<i>bodnoũ'ti,</i>	to stab; —	bod-nutí,	<i>bodnũ'tee,</i>	the stabbing, a stab;
hyn-outi,	<i>hinoũ'ti,</i>	to be perishing; —	hyn-utí,	<i>hinũ'tee,</i>	the perishing;
kop-nouti,	<i>kopnoũ'ti,</i>	to kick; —	kop-nutí,	<i>kopnũ'tee,</i>	the kicking, a kick;

2.

nes-ti,	<i>nessťi,</i>	to carry; —	nes-ení,	<i>nessēnee,</i>	the carrying;
pás-ti,	<i>pásťi,</i>	to herd; —	pas-ení,	<i>pässenee,</i>	the herding;
vid-ěti,	<i>viděťi,</i>	to see; —	vid-ění,	<i>viděnee,</i>	the seeing; the vision;
slyš-eti,	<i>slishěťi,</i>	to hear; —	slyš-ení,	<i>slishěnee,</i>	the hearing;
mluv-iti,	<i>mlůviti,</i>	to speak; —	mluv-ení,	<i>mlůvěnee,</i>	the speaking;
vol-ati,	<i>volăt'i,</i>	to call; —	vol-ání,	<i>volůnee,</i>	the calling or call,
milov-ati,	<i>milovăt'i,</i>	to love; —	milov-ání,	<i>milůvănee,</i>	the loving.

The simple rules of derivation are apparent from the above list.

1. Verbs terminating in **íti** (forming a subdivision of the first conjugation; Note 3, p. 138;) are changed into nouns by a simple transfer of the long **í**: **píti**, to drink, — **pítí**, the drinking.

2. Verbs ending in **outi** (which belong to the second conjugation) become nouns by a change of this termination into **utí**: **bodnouti**, to stab, (**bodnu**, I shall stab), — **bodnutí**, the stabbing, or "a stab".

3. Verbs ending in **ěti, eti, iti** (which form the third and fourth conjugations) become nouns by changing their termination into **ění** or **ení**: **viděti**, to see, — **vidění**, the seeing, or "the vision"; **mluviti**, to speak, — **mluvění**, the speaking.

4. Verbs ending in **ati** (which form the fifth and sixth conjugations) become nouns by changing that termination into **ání**: **volati**, to call, — **volání**, the calling, or "the call".

When the long vowel **á** occurs in the root of a simple verb, it is shortened in the process of deriving a noun:

pás-ti, *pásťi*, to herd (or "to pasture"); **pas-ení,** *pässenee*, the herding;
psá-ti, *psăt'i*, to write; **psa-ní,** *psănee*, the writing.

In some cases the derivation of nouns from verbs of the first conjugation is somewhat irregular, the same as the formation of the tenses; for instance:

čísti, *cheest'i*, to read; (**čtu**, **čteš**, **čte**, *chtŭ, chtěsh, chtě*, I read, thou readest, he reads); — **čte-ní**, *chtěňee*, the reading;

plesti, *plest'i*, to twist; (**pletu**, **pleteš**, **plete**, I twist, thou twistest, he twists); — **plete-ní**, *plětěňee*, the twisting;

klásti, *klást'i*, to lay; (**kladu**, **kladeš**, **klade**, I lay, thou layest, he lays); — **klade-ní**, *kláděňee*, the laying;

másti, *mást'i*, to confuse (to mix up); **mate**, he confuses; — **matení**, *mătěňee*, the confusion or mixing up;

mesti, *mest'i*, to sweep; **mete**, he sweeps; — **metení**, *mětěňee*, the sweeping;

vesti, *vess't'i*, to lead; **vede**, he leads; — **vedení**, *věděňee*, the leading.

LESSON XXXIX.

VERBS CLASSIFIED.

1. — As before observed (in Lesson XXXI) **nesti**, “to carry” or “to be carrying”, is a verb denoting a CONTINUOUS action.

2. — By means of prefixes other verbs are derived therefrom, which denote a limited or FINISHED action and are called FINITE verbs; for example :

donesti, *dŏness't'i*, to carry somewhere or to somebody ;

přinesti, *prshiness't'i*, to bring, to fetch.

3. — Many continuous verbs have a corresponding form denoting a REPEATED or reiterated action; for instance :

nesti ,	<i>ness't'i</i> ,	to carry;	nositi ,	<i>noss't'i</i> ,	to carry repeatedly;
vezti ,	<i>vez't'i</i> ,	to carry (in a vehicle);	voziti ,	<i>voz't'i</i> ,	“ “
vesti ,	<i>vess't'i</i> ,	to lead;	voditi ,	<i>vod't'i</i> ,	to lead repeatedly;
čísti ,	<i>cheest't'i</i> ,	to read;	čítati ,	<i>cheet't'i</i> ,	to read repeatedly;
pásti ,	<i>páss't'i</i> ,	to herd;	pásati ,	<i>pásss't'i</i> ,	to herd repeatedly;
letěti ,	<i>letě't'i</i> ,	to fly;	lítati ,	<i>leet't'i</i> ,	to fly repeatedly;
jeti ,	<i>yet'i</i> ,	to ride;	jezditi ,	<i>yez'd't'i</i> ,	to ride repeatedly.

There are, besides, reiterative verbs derived in the manner explained in Note 5, page 61, and denoting so to say a CUSTOMARY action; for instance:

nositi,	to carry repeatedly,	nosí-va-ti,	<i>nosseeváti</i> , to use to carry,
voziti,	to carry repeatedly (in a vehicle),	vozí-va-ti,	<i>vozeeváti</i> , to use to carry,
voditi,	to lead repeatedly,	vodí-va-ti,	<i>vod'eeváti</i> , to use to lead,
čítati,	to read repeatedly,	čítá-va-ti,	<i>cheetáváti</i> , to use to read,
pásati,	to herd repeatedly,	pásá-va-ti,	<i>pássáváti</i> , to use to herd,
lítati,	to fly repeatedly,	líta-va-ti,	<i>leetáváti</i> , to use to fly,
jezditi,	to ride repeatedly;	jezdí-va-ti,	<i>yezdeeváti</i> , to use to ride.

4. — Certain verbs denote an action which is simply **MOMENTARY**. As a rule they terminate in **iti**, belonging to the fourth conjugation. For instance: **skočiti**, *sköchiti*, to jump, to leap, — that is, to make a jump or leap.

From these are derived **FINITE** verbs in the same manner as from continuous verbs (1.), namely by prefixes. For instance :

kročiti,	to make a step,	zakročiti,	<i>zäkröchi</i> , to step between, to interfere;
skočiti,	to jump,	vyskočiti,	<i>vísköchi</i> , to jump out or up;
střeliti,	to shoot (once),	zastřeliti,	<i>zästrshelli</i> , to shoot dead;
strčiti,	to push,	vystřčiti,	<i>víst'erehi</i> , to push out;
pustiti,	to let go,	vypustiti,	<i>vipüsti</i> , to let out;
chyti,	to catch,	zachyti,	<i>zäkhiti</i> , to catch up, to snatch;
chybiti,	to err,	pochybiti,	<i>pökhibiti</i> , to commit an error.

Note 1. Such is the general classification of Bohemian verbs in regard to the duration of the action or process they denote. But for practical purposes it is sufficient to distinguish two great classes of verbs, namely:

1. **CONTINUOUS VERBS**, denoting a continued or repeated action. This class comprises the simple verbs of all conjugations except some ending in **outi** and **iti**. For instance: **nesti**, to carry; **plouti**, to float; **viděti**, to see; **činiti**, to do; **volati**, to call; **milovati**, to love.

2. **FINITE VERBS**, denoting a finished or momentary action or process. This class comprises many verbs of the second and fourth conjuga-

tions, ending in **ou'i** and **iti**; for instance: **minouti**, to pass; **bodnouti**, to stab; **skočiti**, to leap; **střeliti**, to shoot (to discharge a shot).

Most of the verbs derived from others by prefixes also belong to this class; for example: **vyskočiti**, to jump up; **donesti**, to carry somewhere; **pominouti**, to pass over; **nviděti**, to catch a sight; **učiniti**, to do a certain act; **zavolati**, to call out or up; **pomilovati**, to fondle a little.

The finite verbs have in fact only a past and a future tense, and no present, because their present *form* denotes a *future action*:

donesu , I shall carry somewhere;	uvidím , I shall see;
minu , I shall pass;	učiním , I shall do;
udělám , I shall make;	skočím , I shall jump;
zavolám , I shall call;	vyskočím , I shall jump up;
pomiluju (or pomiluji) I shall fondle;	střelím , I shall shoot.

LESSON XL.

Every language has peculiar ways or modes of expression, which cannot be taken literally, or translated closely into another language. They are called idiomatic expressions or **IDIOMS**. Many of them are of frequent occurrence in ordinary intercourse.

The student will naturally desire to know the Bohemian equivalents of such English expressions as are in constant use in common conversation. He will find most of them in the following list, the English expression always preceding the Bohemian, in order to facilitate their study. The beginner should often peruse these phrases until he has a perfect command of them, or — to use an English idiom — until ‘he has them at his fingers’ ends.’

All along,
all over,
all is over,
all in all,
all one,
all the same,

venkoncem, **veskrze**,
všude,
je po všem,
vůbec,
vše jedno,
“ “

venkõntsěm, *veskerzě*;
vshŭdě;
yě pofshěm;
voobets;
fshě yedně;
“ “

all the time,
all the better,
all hollow,
all of a sudden,
along-side,
as far as I can,
as far as possible,
as far as I am concerned
as far as that is con-
cerned,
at any rate,
at all events,
at last,
at length,
at once,
all at once,
at large,

stále, pořád,
tím líp,
na dobro,
najednou, z nenadání,
vedle,
pokud mohu,
pokud možná,
co se mě týče,
co se toho týče,

{ buď jak buď,

{ konečně,

{ hned, najednou,
vůbec, celkem,

stále, pörshád;
teem leep;
nä döbrö;
näyednou, zněnádnäi;
vědlě;
pökdä möhü;
pökdä možná;
tsö së myě teeche;
tsö së töhō teeche;

büď yäk büď;

könechñě;

hněd, näyednou;
voobets, tselkem.

Be it as it may,

be perfectly easy,
by and by,
by the bye,
by the way,
by day,
by night,
by the day,
by the week,
by the piece,
by all means,

buď jak buď; ať je
jakkoli;
buďte bez starosti,
hnedle, znenáhla,
{ mimo to,
{ apropos,
za dne,
v noci,
na den,
na týden,
od kusu,
na všechněm způsob,

büď yäk büď; äť yě
yäkcoli;
büďlě bestäröšti;
hnedlě, zněnáhlä;
mimö tö,
äpropo;
zä dně;
vnotsi;
nä den;
nä teeden;
öä küsü;
nä fshëkhen spoosob.

Call for me,
can it be possible?
can't do it !

stavte se pro mě,
je-li možná ?
nejde to !

stăftě së pro myě;
yelli možná ?
něydě tö !

come on,
come along,
come and see us,

{ **pojď ! pojďte !**
přijďte nás navštívit,

poyď, poyďte);*
prshiďte nás năfshťee-
vit.

Don't you hear?
don't you see ?
don't you know it ?
don't mention it !
dear me !
day and night,
day by day,
do as you please,
drop me a line,

což neslyšíte?
což nevidíte?
což to nevíte?
to nestojí za řeč,
o jemine !
ve dne v noci,
den co den,
dělejte jak myslíte,
pište mi pár řádek,

tsōsh nēslišheetě ?
tsōsh nēviďteě ?
tsōsh tō nēveetě ?
tō nestoyee ză rshēch;
o yēmīně !
vě dně vnotsi;
den tsō den;
ďěleytě yăk misleetě;
pishtë me pâr rsháděk.

Excuse me !
every now and then,
Farewell !
Good-bye !
get up !
get out !
get ready !
give me a rest !
go ahead !
go on !

odpusťte !
každou chvíli,
{ s bohem! — na zdar !
zhůru ! — vstaňte !
ven ! — pojďte ven !
připravte se !
dejte mi pokoj !
{ jen dál !

odpustě !
kăždou khweeli;
sbōhem ! — nă zdăr !
zhooră ! — fstăntě !
ven ! — pōďtě ven !
prshiprăftě sě !
deytě me pōkoy !
yen dál !

Help yourself !

here and there,
hurry up !
he is good at it !

poslužte si ! vemte si !
račte !
sem tam,
honem !
on to umí ! on to zná !

poslŭshťe si ! vemťe si !
răchtě !
sem tăm,
hōnem !
ōn tō ŭmee ! ōn tō znă !

*) Colloquially *pōď, pōďtě*, (thou, you) come on. — **I pojďte už !**
i pōďtě ŭsh ! come on, now ! do come along !

he is good for nothing;
 he is on the lookout;
 he is well off;
 he means no harm;
 he took a hint;
 he keeps out of sight;
 he has a head of his
 own;
 how do you do ?
 how are you ?

není k ničemu;
 on číhá;
 on se má dobře;
 on to zle nemyslí;
 dovtípl se;
 on se strání;
 on má vlastní hlavu;

{ jak se máte ?

neyñi kñichěmũ;
 ōn cheehá;
 ōn sě má dōbrshě;
 ōn tō zlē nēmislee;
 dōfťeepil sě;
 ōn sě strāñee;
 ōn má vlastñee hlǎvũ;

yāk sě mátě?

I am glad of it !
 I bet, — I guess,
 I don't care;
 I have a mind,
 I made up my mind,
 I can't afford it;
 I can't stand it (*mean-
 ing*: I hate it);
 I can do without it;
 I have taken a fancy
 to it;
 I have no hand in it;
 I had some words with
 him;
 I had rather
 I would sooner
 I am no match for him;
 I am very anxious;
 I am sorry for it;
 I will make him do it;

to mě těší !
 vsadím se, — myslím,
 nedbám; to je mi jedno;
 hodlám,
 odhodlal jsem se,
 nejsem s to;
 nemohu to vystát (*vy-
 státí*);
 mohu být bez toho;
 zalíbilo se mi to;

nemám s tím co dělat;
 měl jsem s ním hádku;

{ raději bych

já s něho nejsem;
 mám starost;*) — tuze
 rád bych**)
 lituju toho;
 já ho donutím;

tō myě řeshee !
 fsǎřeem sě, — misleem,
 nědbám; tō yě mi yednō
 hodlám,
 ōdhodlāl sem sě,
 neysem stō;
 nēmōhũ tō vistát;
 mōhũ beet bes tōhō;
 zǎleebilō sě mi tō;

nēmám s řeem tsō d'ělāt;
 myěll sem sñim hǎdkũ;

rǎd'ěy bikh

yá sñeho neysem;
 mám stǎrost; — toozě
 rǎd bikh;
 litũyũ tōhō;
 yá hō dōnǎřeem;

*) When it means an anxiety, care or suspense about something.

**) When it means an impatience to do or to know something.

I will see you paid;
I am in no hurry;
I must be off;
I think much of him;
if you please;
indeed;
it is all over;
it is of no use;

it is none of your business;

it is your turn;
it is a bargain;
it is a pity;
it grew into a habit;
it wears well (of a dress
or stuff);

Keep still!
keep in line!

Let it go; — let go!
let me alone;
let me in;
let me know;
look here;
look out!

Mind you;

No doubt; — no matter;
no matter how it is;
no matter who it is;
never mind;

postarám se o váš plat;
nemám na spěch;
musím pryč;
já si ho moc vážím;
prosím; — račte;
opravdu; — skutečně;
je po všem;
není to nic platné
(*meaning*: it will do
no good); — není to
k ničemu (*meaning*:
it is of no service);
vám po tom nic není;

ted' je na vás;
zůstane při tom;
to je škoda;
stalo se zvykem;
dobře se nese;

Ticho! — Bud'te zticha!
do řady!

nechte to být; — pusťte!
nechte mě;
pusťte mě tam;
dejte mi vědět;
hleďte;
pozor!

pamatujte;
zajistě; — nic nedělá;
ať je to jakkoli;
ať je to kdokoli;
nic nedělá; — co na
tom;

postarám se o váš plát;
němám na spěch;
můseem prich;
já si ho mots vážeam;
proseem; — račtlě;
oprávdů; — skůtechně;
yě pofshem;
neyñi tō ñits plātné; —
neyñi tō kñichěmů;

vám pō tōm ñits neyñi;

ted' yě na vās;
zoostāně prshūtōm;
tō yě shkōdā;
stālo sě zvikem;
dobrshě sě nessě;

t'ikhō! — būd'tě st'ikhā!
dō rshādy!

nekhťe tō beet; — pŭstě!
nekhťe myě;
pŭstě myě tām;
deytě me vyēpět;
hled'tě;
pōzor!

pāmātŭytě;
zāyisté; — ñits něd'ělā;
āť yě tō yāekōli;
āť yě tō gđōkōli;
ñits něd'ělā; — tsō na
tōm;

not yet; — not at all;

now and then;
now we are even;

Of course;
on a sudden;
on purpose;
on the contrary;
on the wing;
once for all;
one by one;

Piece by piece;
plenty time!
Send me word;
served him right!

Take care!
the more the better;
the other day;
the time is up;
that's it! — that will
do;
that's right!
that is out of my way;
they like to show off;
to be short about it;
to be sure!
to call and see, (to pay
a visit);
to find fault;
to get rid (of some-
thing);
to give a blowing;
to come about;
to no purpose;

ještě ne, — dokonce ne;

časem, — chvílemi;
ted' jsme kvit;

ovšem; — to se rozumí;
náhle; — z nenadání;
schválně; — naschvál.
naopak;
v letu;
jednou na vždy;
po jednom; — jeden za
druhým;
po kusu;
dost času!
zkažte mi;
dobře tak!

pozor! — dejte pozor!
čím víc tím líp;
onehdy;
čas prošel;
to je to! — to je dost;
to dostačí;
to je dobře!
to je mi z ruky;
rádi se ukazují;
krátce řečeno;
zajisté!
navštívit;

vytýkat;
zbavit se (čeho);

vymluvit,
státí se,
zbytečně,

yeshtě ně; — dōkontsě
ně;

chāssem; — khweelemi,
ted' smě kvit;

ofshēm; — tō sě rozūmee;
náhlě; — zněnáddāni;
skhwálñě; — náskhwál;
nāopāk;
vletū;
yednoū nā vždy;
pō yědnom; — yěden zā
drūheem;
pō kūsū;
dost chāssū!
skāshťe me;
dobrshě tāk!

pōzor! — deytě pōzor!
cheem veets veem leep;
ōnēhdy;
chāss proshell;
tō yě tō; — tō yě dost;
tō dōstāchee;
tō yě dobrshě!
tō yě me z ruky;
rādī sě ūkázūyee;
krátse řshēchēnō;
zāyisté!
nāfshēevit;

vyteekāt;
zbāvit sě;

vymlūvit;
stātī sě;
zbyťechñě;

Well?— Very well.
well to do, well off;
what of that? — what
does it matter?
what is the matter?

what is the question?

what is the matter with
you?

what next?

what will become of
us?

we had better go;

we had better go and
see;

You are right;
you are wrong,
you are mistaken;
you are late;
you are safe;
you are gone up!
you are welcome to it;

year by year;
you must not find fault;
you ought to be glad;
— you ought to be
gone;

nuže? — dobře;
zámožný,
co na tom? co z toho?

co se děje? (i. e. what
is happening?)

oč se jedná? oč běží?

co je vám?

co dále?

co z nás bude? co se s
námi stane?

abysme raději šli;

abysme se raději podí-
vali (i. e. šli podívat);

*nůžě? — důbrshě;
zámožnee;
tsō nā tom? tsō stōhō?*

tsō sě d'ěyě?

*ōch sě yedná?—ōch byě-
žee?*

tsō yě vām?

tsō dálě?

*tsō znáss būdě? tsō sě
snámi stāně?*

ābysmě rāděy shli;

*ābysmě sě rāděy po-
d'eevāli;*

máte pravdu;

} mejlíte se;

jdete pozdě;

jste v tom dobře;

s vámi je konec!

vemte si to; — přej-
vám to;

rok co rok;

nesmíte dělat výčitky;

měl byste být (or býti)
rád;—měl byste být
prýč;

mátě právdū;

meyleetě sě;

děťe pozdě;

stě ftom důbrshě;

svámi yě kōnets!

*vemtě si tō; — prshěyū
vām tō;*

rōk tsō rōk;

nesmeetě d'ělāt veechitky

*m'yell bystě beet rád; —
m'yell bystě beet
prich.*

PART III.

Bohemian Conversation.

Note 1. In the following conversations we shall invariably observe the common rule of politeness, which requires the use of the personal pronoun **vy** (you) in addressing another person. Hence all verbs employed in the same will appear in the second person plural (for instance: **jste, máte**, (you are, you have), and not in the second person singular **jsi***), **máš**, (thou art, thou hast), which is properly confined to familiar or very intimate intercourse, as fully set forth in Section 9, Part I; otherwise the use of the second person singular (**ty**, thou) is out of place and in fact vulgar, although freely indulged in by some ill-informed or ill-bred persons among the Bohemians in America.

Throughout these conversations we give the Bohemian pronunciation in full**). It is true that the student, having advanced so far, may be supposed to be able to pronounce every word and to read Bohemian without difficulty; but the pronouncing column will nevertheless continue to be an aid, especially welcome in such cases as may appear to be somewhat obscure or doubtful.

*) In common discourse we frequently hear **ty jseš**, *ty sěsh*, in place of **ty jsi**. — **Ty jseš velký**, *ty sěsh vělkee*, thou art tall. — **Jseš rád** (instead of **jsi rád**)? *sěsh rád?* art thou glad? — **Jseš zdrav?** *sesh zdráf?* (f. **jseš zdráva?** *sěsh zdrávā?*) art thou well? — **Jseš hotov?** *sěsh hōtof?* (f. **jseš hotova?** *sěsh hōtōvā?*) art thou ready?

**) The rules given in Sections 2 and 4, Part I, are supposed to have been thoroughly digested and practiced by the student, as well as the forty introductory lessons contained in Part II. Unless that is done, it will be useless and disappointing to proceed with this eminently practical part of our Bohemian Course.

In regard to the pronunciation of Bohemian infinitives (for instance: **míti**, to have; **činiti**, to do; **dělati**, to make) we again remind the student of the explanation given in Note 1, Lesson XI. In the pronouncing column of these conversations we shall as a rule follow the colloquial custom of dropping the final **i**, to simplify matters and to present the sentences as they are generally heard in actual intercourse.

The student will always bear in mind that Bohemian orthography and pronunciation are on the whole governed by the rule which appears to be the ideal of many would-be reformers of English orthography, namely:

A sound for every letter and a letter for every sound, and no silent letters. —

In regard to capital letters the rules in Bohemian are the same as in English, excepting that adjectives derived from names of nations or countries are not written with a capital letter; for example: English, Bohemian, European, **anglický, český, evropský** (*ānglitskee, chesskee, ěvropskee*).

Bohemian and English.

ČEŠTINA a ANGLIČINA.

The Bohemian language;—the Bohemian tongue.	Česká řeč; — český jazyk.	<i>chesská rshěch;—chess-kee yāzyk.</i>
Do you know Bohemian? — do you speak Bohemian?	Umíte česky? — mluvíte česky?	<i>ūmeetě chesske? — mlūveetě chesske?</i>
Yes, I speak Bohemian well.	Ano, mluvím česky dobře.	<i>āň, mlūveem chesske dōbrshě.</i>
Do you speak English?	Mluvíte anglicky?	<i>mlūveetě ānglitske?</i>
Perfectly; — a little; — not much.	Dokonale; — trochu; — ne mnoho.	<i>dōkōnālě; — trokhū; — nē mnōhō.</i>
Do you understand English? — I do.	Rozumíte anglicky? — Rozumím.	<i>rozūmeetě ānglitske? — rozūmeem.</i>

In America everybody has to know English.	V Americe každý má uměti*) anglicky.	<i>vāmeritsě každee má ůmyet ānglitske.</i>
I am learning English.	Učím se anglicky.	<i>ŭcheem sě ānglitske.</i>
Do you learn Bohemian?	Učíte se česky?	<i>ŭcheetě sě chesske?</i>
I want to learn Bohemian.	Chei se učiti česky.	<i>khtsi sě ŭchit chesske.</i>
I want to know (i.e. to acquire) Bohemian.	Chei uměti česky.	<i>khtsi ŭmyet chesske.</i>
I would like to learn Bohemian.	Rád bych učil se česky.	<i>rád bikh ŭchil sě chesske.</i>
I would like to know Bohemian.	Rád bych uměl česky.	<i>rád bikh ŭmyell chesske.</i>
I must learn (i.e. acquire) Bohemian.	Musím se naučiti česky.	<i>mŭseem sě nāŭchit chesske.</i>
Yes, do learn Bohemian	Ano, naučte se česky.	<i>āno, nāŭchtě sě chesske</i>
I am learning Bohemian.	Učím se česky.	<i>ŭcheem sě chesske.</i>
How long have you been learning**) Bohemian?	Jak dlouho učíte se česky?	<i>yāk dloŭhō ŭcheetě sě chesske?</i>
I have been learning Bohemian since last year.	Učím se česky od lonka.	<i>ŭcheem sě chesske ōd lonskā.</i>
How long did you learn English?	Jak dlouho učil jste se anglicky?	<i>yāk dlōŭhō ŭchil stě sě ānglitske?</i>
I learned (or: I was learning) English one year.	Učil jsem se anglicky rok.	<i>ŭchil sem sě ānglitske rok.</i>

*) **Míti** (to have) often in connection with another verb signifies obligation or necessity, the same as in English: **Mám uměti**, I have to know, I am obliged or expected to know; **mám jíti**, I have to go; — **má uměti**, he has to know; **každý má uměti**, everybody has to know.

) The present tense in Bohemian is also used for the English perfect tense: **(jak dlouho) učíte se, — (how long) have you been learning. See second foot-note on page 98.

I learned (i. e. acquired) English in one year.

To learn English is not difficult.

Neither is Bohemian.

How soon shall I learn Bohemian?

If you will be (*or* if you are) diligent, you will learn it soon.

About how soon?

In a few months.

I have been learning Bohemian only two months, and already I know a good deal.

I am getting along well.

Already I understand nearly all.

It is not difficult; — it is easy.

Only plenty of exercise! then you make good progress.

Do you understand Bohemian?

I understand a little.

I understand already a good deal.

I understand already nearly all.

Do you understand German?

Naučil jsem se anglicky za rok.

Naučiti se anglicky není těžké.

Česky také ne.

Jak brzo naučím se česky?

Budete-li pilný, naučíte se brzo.

Jak brzo asi?

Za pár měsíců.

Učím se česky teprve dva měsíce, a už umím hezky.

Jde to dobře.*)

Už rozumím skoro všechno.

Není to těžké; — je to lehké.

Jen hodně cviku! pak to jde*)!

Rozumíte česky?

Rozumím trochu.

Rozumím už hodně.

Rozumím už hnedle všechno.

Rozumíte německy?

nāučil sem se ānglitske zā rōk.

nāūchit se ānglitske neyñi t'ēshké.

chesske také ně.

yāk berzo nāūcheem se chesske?

būdětě-li pilnē, nāūcheetě se berzō.

yāk berzō āsi?

zā pār myēseetsoo.

*ūcheem se chesske tep'rf
dwā myēseetš, ā ūsh
ūmeem hesske.*

dě tō dobrshē.

*ūsh rozūmeem skōrō
fshētskō.*

*neyñi tō t'ēshké; — yē
tō lehkē.*

*yen hodñē tswikū! pāk
tō dě!*

rozūmeetě chesske?

rozūmeem trokhū.

rozūmeem ūsh hodñē.

*rozūmeem ūsh hnedlē
fshētsko.*

rozūmeetě ñēmetske?

*) **Jde to dobře;** *literally:* it goes well. **Pak to jde:** then it goes.

I do not.—I understand a little bit.

Do you know (how) to write Bohemian?

Not yet; but I shall learn (it).

I shall know (it) soon.

I must know both to read and to write Bohemian.

You will learn that easily.

I expect to learn it in half a year.

Why does not John learn English?

He is going to learn;—he must learn it well.

When will he commence to learn?

Shortly.

My neighbor's boy speaks English perfectly and understands also Latin.

Annie is learning to read and write Bohemian.

Have you a Bohemian newspaper? — lend me it.

Lend me a Bohemian book.

What book? — Any book.

Nerozumím. — Rozumím něco málo.

Umíte psát po česku?

Ještě ne; ale budu se učit.

Budu umět brzo.

Musím umět číst i psát po česku.

To se naučíte snadno.

Hodlám se to naučit za půl leta.

Proč se Jan neučí anglicky?

On se bude učit;—musí se naučit dobře.

Kdy se začne učit?

Co nevidět.

Sousedův hoch mluví anglicky dokonale a rozumí také latinsky.

Anna učí se česky čísti a psát.

Máte české noviny? — půjčte mi je.

Půjčte mi českou knihu.

Jakou? — Jakoukoli.

něrozůmeem. — rozůmeem nětsō málō.

ůmeete psát pō chesskū?

yeshťě ně; ālē būdū sě ůchit.

būdū ůmyet berzō.

můseem ůmyet cheest i psát pō chesskū.

tō sě nāŭcheetě snādnō.

hodlám sě tō nāŭchit zā pool letā.

prōch sě yān něŭchee ānglitske?

ōn se būdē ůchit;—můsee sě nāŭchit dobrshě.

gdy sě začnē ůchit?

tsō něvidět.

soŭsēdoof hōkh mlŭvee ānglitske dōkonālě ā rozŭmee tāké lāťinske.

ānā ůchee sě chesske cheest a psāt.

mālě chesské nōviny? — pŭchtě me yě.

pŭchtě me chesskoŭ kŭhū.

yākoŭ? — yākoŭkoli.

This is Bohemian, is it not?

What is it in English?
— Tell me it in English.

How is it in English?
I don't know how to pronounce it.

How is it in Bohemian?

How do you call it in Bohemian?— how in English?

Speak Bohemian;— speak Bohemian with me;— speak only Bohemian.

Speak as you wish.

Do you like to speak Bohemian?— Why do you not speak English?

Because I cannot;— because I know it only a little. — Do speak; you will get along.

Speak English or Bohemian, as you please;— I understand both;

You speak Bohemian very well.

Speak slowly, that I may understand you. *)

Tohle je česky, není?

Co je to po anglicku?
— Povězte mi to po anglicku.

Jak je to po anglicku?
Nevím jak to vysloviti.

Jak je to po česku?

Jak se to jmenuje česky? — jak anglicky?

Mluvte česky;— mluvte se mnou česky;— mluvte jenom česky.

Mluvte jak chcete.

Mluvíte rád česky? — Proč nemluvíte anglicky?

Protože neumím; — protože umím jen málo.-- Jen mluvte, půjde to.

Mluvte anglicky nebo česky, jak chcete; — rozumím obojí.

Vy mluvíte česky tuze dobře.

Mluvte pomalu, abych vám rozuměl.

tòhle yě chesske, neyñi?

tsò yě tò pò ànglitskù?
— *Pòvyězte me tò pò ànglitskù.*

yák yě tò pò ànglitskù?
něveem yák tò vislovit.

yák yě tò pò chesskù?

yák sě tò menűyě chesske? — yák ànglitske?

mlűftě chesske;— mlűftě sě mnoű chesske;— mlűftě yěnom chesske.

mlűftě yák khtsětě.

mlűveetě rád chesske? — proč němlűveetě ànglitske?

protòžě něűmeem; — protòžě ůmeem yen málò. — yen mlűftě, půjdě tò.

mlűftě ànglitske něbò chesske, yák khtsětě; — rozuměem òbűyee.

ve mlűveetě chesske toozě dobrshě.

mlűftě pomálű, àbikh văm rozűmyell.

*) **Abych, abys, aby**, that I should, that thou shouldst, that he should (see Lesson XXXVI), also signifies: "that I may, that thou mayest, that he (she, it) may". Hence we translate: **abych rozuměl**, that I may understand;— **abych rozuměl vám**, or **abych vám rozuměl**, "that I may understand you".

Concerning the freedom of transposition of words in Bohemian sentences see Note 2, Lesson VI.

Did you understand me? — I did not; repeat it slowly.

Do not speak so fast; I should not understand you.

Do you know what I said?—could you understand?

I could understand a little;—now I understood well.

When you don't understand, tell me; — I want to teach you.

I am glad of that; — if you will teach me, I shall soon know.

In a quarter of a year I shall understand all.

Do I pronounce it right? — did I pronounce it right?

You have a good pronunciation; — you pronounce everything right.

That was not right; see here; — I will pronounce it slowly.

Is that right?

Once again!

That's it; — now it was right; first-rate.

Very well! — you make quick progress.

Rozuměl jste mi! — Nerozuměl; opakujte to pomalu.

Nemluvte tak rychle; já bych vám nerozuměl.

Víte co jsem povídal? — porozuměl jste?

Porozuměl jsem trošku; — teď jsem rozuměl dobře.

Když nerozumíte, řekněte mi; — já chci vás učiti.

To jsem rád; — budete-li mě učiti, budu brzo uměti.

Za čtvrt leta budu všemu rozuměti.

Vyslovuju to dobře? — vyslovil jsem to dobře?

Máte dobrou výslovnost; — vyslovujete všechno dobře.

To nebylo dobře; dejte pozor; — já to vyslovím pomalu.

Je to dobře?

Ještě jednou!

Tak; — teď to bylo dobře; tuze dobře.

Výborně! — děláte rychlý pokrok.

rozumyell stě me? — nerozumyell; — ōpākūytě tō pomālū.

němlūftě tāk rikhlě; yá bikh vām něrozumyell.

veetě tsō sem poveedūl? — pōrozumyell stě?

pōrozumyell sem troshku; — tēd' sem rozumyell dōbrshě.

gdīž něrozūmeetě, rshěk-ñetě me; — yā khtsi vās ūchit.

tō sem rád; — būdětě li myě ūchit, būdū berzō ūmyět.

zā shtwert letū būdū fshēmū rozūmyet.

vislovūyā tō dobrshě? — vislovil sem tō dōbrshě?

mátě dōbroū veeslōv-nost; — vislovūyetě fshětskō dōbrshě.

tō něbillō dōbrshě; dey-tě pōzor; — yā tō visloveem pomālū.

yě tō dobrshě?

yeshčē yednoū!

tāk; — tēd' tō billō dōbrshě; toozē dōbrshě.

veeborñē! — dělātě rikhlee pōkrok.

I wish I had more opportunity to speak Bohemian.

Rád bych měl více příležitosti mluvit česky.

rád bikh m'yell veetsě prsheelěžitost'i mluvit chesske.

VOCABULARY.

Slovo, n. *slovō*, the word
slovník, m. *slovñeek*, the dictionary
slovníček, m.*) *slovñeechek*, the vocabulary
vysloviti, *vislovit*, to pronounce
vyslovím, *visloveem*, I shall pronounce
vyslovovati, *vislovōvāt*, to be pronouncing;
vyslovuji (or **vyslovuji**), *vislovŭyŭ*, I am pronouncing;
výslovnost, f. *veeslovnost*, the pronunciation;
čeština, f. *cheshťinā*, the Bohemian language;
angličina, f. *ānglichinā*, the English language;
pokrok, m. *pōkrok*, progress;
příležitost, f. *prsheelěžitost*, opportunity;
rád bych měl, *rád bikh m'yell*, I wish I had (or: I would like to have);
hezky, *hesske*, } a good deal;
hodně, *hodñě*, {
něco málo, *ñětso mālō*, a little bit;

učiti se, *ūchit sě*, to learn, to be learning;
neučiti se, *něūchit sě*, not to learn;
naučiti se, *nāūchit sě*, to learn or acquire (something);
rozuměti, *rozŭmyet*, to understand;
rozumím, *rozŭmeem*, I understand
porozuměti, *pōrozŭmyet*, to understand; or "to catch the meaning";
začnouti, *zāchnōūt*, } to begin, to
začítí, *zācheet*, { commence;
začne, *zāchně*, will commence;
půjčiti, *pŭychit'i*, (colloquially: *pŭchit*), to lend;
půjčte mi, *pŭchtě me*, lend me;
povězte mi, *po-vyěztě me*, tell me.
jak se jmenuje, *yāk sě menŭyě*, how is — he, she, it — called.
těžký, *á, é, těshkee*, difficult, hard;
rychlý, *á, é, rikhlee* }
rychle, adv. *rikhlě* } fast;
pomalů, *pomālŭ*, slowly;
hnedle, *hnedlě*, nearly, (also "soon", "quick");
co nevidět, *tsō nēvid'et*, in no time, shortly;

*) **Slovníček** is simply a diminutive of **slovník**, meaning "a little or short dictionary". See Note 1, Lesson XVIII.

trošku, (same as trochu), <i>trōshkū</i> , a little;	dokonalý, á, é, <i>dōkonālee</i> , perfect.
snadný, á, é, <i>snādnee</i> , easy.	dokonale,*) <i>dōkonālě</i> , perfectly;
snadno, <i>snādnō</i> , easily;	výborný, á, é <i>veebornee</i> } výborně, adv. <i>veeborně</i> } first-rate.

Greetings and compliments.

POZDRAVY A POKLONY.

Good morning, Sir! (gentlemen, — Mad- am,— Miss,— ladies).	Dobré jitro**), pane! (pánové, — paníčko, — slečno,— dámy).	<i>dōbré ye-trō, pāně!</i> (pá- <i>nōvé, — pāničhko, —</i> <i>slěchnō, — dámy, —</i> <i>slěchny).</i>
Good afternoon, Mr. Brown!	Dobré odpoledne, pane Braune!***)	<i>dōbré odpolēdně, pāně</i> <i>Browně!</i>
Good evening, Mrs. Brown!	Dobrý večer, paní Braunová!	<i>dōbree vēcher, pāñi</i> <i>Brownōvá!</i>
My compliments!	Má úcta!	<i>má ootstā!</i>
Good night, doctor!	Dobrou noc, pane dok- tore ⁴⁾ !	<i>dōbroū nōts, pāně dok-</i> <i>torě!</i>
Good bye! — Farewell! Farewell!	S bohem! — Na zdar! Mějte se dobře!	<i>sbōhem! — nā zdār!</i> <i>myěj-tě sě dōbrshě!</i>

*) See Note 2, Lesson XXX, about the derivation of adverbs from adjectives. In this case, as well as in some others, the final *ý* changes into a simple *e*: **dokonalý**, — **dokonale**.

Mostly it changes into an *ě*: **výborný**, — **výborně**; and sometimes into an *o*: **snadný**, — **snadno**. This, however, is rather optional, as we may equally say: **snadně**, *snādně*, (easily).

) In common conversation very often abbreviated: **dobrytro! *dōbritro!*

***) It is proper to use the vocative case in addressing a person; but in ordinary discourse the proper name is generally left in the nominative: **dobré jitro, pane Braun!**

4) We cannot say in English “Mr. doctor”, two titles in this case being incompatible; but it is customary in Bohemian to say: **pane doktor**, **pane profesore**, or (in common parlance) **pane doktor**, **pane profesor**, — leaving the title in the nominative case. “Mr. editor”, — **pane redaktore**, *pāně redāktorě*, — is an analogous expression in English.

Good luck to you!
I wish you good luck!
I wish you Godspeed!
A happy journey!
A happy return!
To drink one's health.
Your health!

Na zdar vám!
{ Přeju vám štěstí!
Šťastnou cestu!
Šťastný návrat!
Píti na zdraví.
Na vaše zdraví!

nā zdār vām!
prshēyū vām shťěst'í!
shťāstnoū tsěstū!
shťāstnee návrat!
peeťi nā zdrāvee.
nā vāshē zdrāvee!

How do you do? How are you?
How are you getting along?
Very well, thank you.
How is everything with you?
Tolerably well.
How is your health?
Are you well? Are you in good health?
I am pretty well, thank you.
I am all right.
I feel very well.
I am perfectly well.
And how are you?
I am also well, thank you.
You are looking well.
I am very well; I cannot complain.
How is your wife (your lady)?
She is well, thank you.
How is your family?
They are all well.

Jak se máte?
Jak se vám vede?
Tuze dobře, děkuju.
Jak se vede?
Projde to.—Ujde to.
Jak vám zdraví slouží?
Jste zdrav?
Je mi dost dobře, děkuju.
Mám se hezky.
Je mi tuze dobře.
Jsem docela zdrav.
A jak vy se máte?
Taky dobře, děkuju.
Vypadáte dobře.
Mám se výborně; nemohu stěžovat.
Jak se má vaše žena (vaše paní)?
Dobře, děkuju.
Jak se má vaše rodina?
Jsou všichni zdraví.

yāk sě mátě?
yāk sě vām vědě?
toozě dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.
yāk sě vědě?
proydeť tō.—ūydeť tō.
yāk vām zdrāvee sloužíce?
stě zdráf?
yě me dost dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.
mám sě hesske.
yě me toozě dōbrshě.
sem dotsělū zdráf.
ā yāk ve sě mátě?
tāke dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.
vipāddátē dobrshě.
mám sě veeborne; nemōhū stěžōvat.
yāk sě má vāshē ženā (pāñi)?
dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.
yāk sě má vāshē rodinā?
soū fshíkhñi zdrāvi.

I am glad of it.

I am glad to hear it.

That is right.

I am very glad to see
you (or: to meet you).

I have not seen you for
a long time.

I would like to see you
often.

To mě těší.

To rád slyším.

To je dobře.

Jsem tuze rád že vás
vidím.

Neviděl jsem vás už
dávno.

Rád bych viděl vás ča-
sto.

tõ myě těshee.

tõ rád slisheem.

tõ yě dõbrshě.

*sem toozě rád žě váss
viďeem.*

*neviďel sem váss ůsh
dávno.*

*rád bikh viďel váss
chásstõ.*

My regards!

Greet him (her, them)!

— Give him my re-
gards.

Give (him, etc.) my best
regards!

My best regards!

Give my regards to all!

Remember me to your
wife. — My best re-
spects to your wife.

My best regards to your
wife!

My compliments to
your sister!

Good bye!

My best respects!

Že pozdravuju!

Pozdravujte ho (ji,
je)!

Vyříd'te mé pozdrave-
ní.

Pěkné pozdravení!

Pozdravujte ode mne
všecky!

Mou úctu vaší choti!

Pěkné pozdravení
manželce!

Mou poklonu vaší se-
stře!

Poroučím se!

Pěkné poručení!

žě pozdrävüyü!

*pozdrävüyte hõ (ye,
yě)!*

*virshiďtě mé pozdrävě-
ní*)*

pyěkné pozdrävěni!

*pozdrävüyte õďě myě
fshětske!*

*moũ ootstũ vāshee khõ-
tĩ!*

*pyěkné pozdrävěni
mãnželtse!*

*moũ poklõnũ vāshee sě-
strshě!*

porovcheem sě!

pyěkné porũcheñi!

*) Nouns ending in *ní* are neutre (see *znamení*, Note 2, Lesson XIV). The final *í* has the long sound of *ee*. But in common discourse the length of the sound is immaterial and it is usually shortened; hence we represent it in these conversations by a simple *ñi*, instead of *ñee*.

VOCABULARY.

Pánbůh (i. e. Pán Bůh) <i>pánbooh</i> , the Lord God;	poklona , f. <i>pōklonā</i> , compliment, bow;
jitro , n. (same as ráno), <i>yitrō</i> , the morning;	úcta , f. <i>ootsta</i> , respect;
pozdrav , m. <i>pozdrǎf</i>	návrat , m. <i>návrat</i> , return;
pozdravení , n. <i>pōzdrǎvěni</i> , }	zdraví , n. <i>zdrǎvee</i> , health;
pozdraviti , <i>pozdrǎvit</i> , to greet (once);	choť , m. & f. <i>khōť</i> , the spouse, hus- band or wife;
pozdravovati , <i>pozdrǎvōvāt</i> , to greet; to send greetings;	stěžovati , <i>stěžovāt</i> , to complain;
	vypadati , <i>vipǎdāt</i> , to look.

A call.

NÁVŠTĚVA.

Give me a call. — Call and see me.	Navštivte mě. — Přijď- te ke mě.	<i>nǎfshťivťě myě. — Prshiď-tě*) kě myě.</i>
Call at my house.	Přijďte ke mě domu.	<i>prshiďťě kě myě dōmǎ.</i>
Call at my store.	Přijďte ke mě do krá- mu.	<i>prshiďťě kě myě dō krá- mǎ.</i>
Call at my office.	Přijďte do mé písárny.	<i>prshiďťě dō mé peesár- ny.</i>
Did you call at my place?	Byl jste u mě?	<i>bill stě ů myě?</i>
I called at your house, but nobody was at home.	Byl jsem u vás, ale žádný nebyl doma.	<i>bill sem ů vǎss, ǎlē žád- nee něbill dōmǎ.</i>
Call again.	Přijďte zas.	<i>prshiďťě zǎss.</i>
And when?—Any time.	A kdy?—Kdykoli.	<i>ǎ gdy?—gdykoli.</i>
When will you be at home.	Kdy budete doma?	<i>gdy būdětě dōmǎ?</i>
To-morrow surely.	Zeitra**) jistě.	<i>zeytrǎ yistě.</i>
When will you call and see me?	Kdy mě navštívíte?	<i>gdy myě nǎfshťiveetě?</i>

*) Colloquially this is still more condensed and sounds like *prshi-tě*.**) **Zeitra** or **zítra** (to-morrow), derived from **zjitra**, **zajitra**, next morning.

I shall give you a call
to-morrow or day after
to-morrow.

Yes, do call; I shall be
expecting you.

Somebody is knocking.
— Some one rings.

Go and see who that
is.

Go and open the door.
It is some gentleman,
— some stranger.

It is Mr. Arbes.

Let him come in.

Come in!—Walk in!

Come in, if you please.
Sit down.

Take a seat, if you
please.

Please take a seat.

Here is a seat.

Stay with us to dinner.

Excuse me, I cannot;
I have no time.

Are you in a hurry?

Yes, I am in a hurry.

Where do you hurry?

I have an appointment
with Mr. Coleman.

Don't be in such a hur-
ry; wait a little.

Indeed I cannot; I shall
soon call again.

Do so, if you please!

Please, come again.

Navštívím vás zejtra
nebo pozejtří.

Ano, navštivte; budu
vás očekávat.

Někdo klepá. — Někdo
zvoni.

Jděte se podívat kdo to
je.

Jděte otevřítí.

Je to nějaký pán,—ně-
jaký cizinec.

Je to pan Arbes.

Ať vejde!

Dále!

Vejděte, prosím!

Sedněte si.

Posaďte se, prosím.

Račte se posaditi.

Tady je židle.

Zůstaňte u nás na oběd.

Odpusťte, nemohu;
nemám čas.

Máte na spěch?

Ano, mám na spěch.

Kam spěcháte?

Mám schůzi s panem
Kolmanem.

Nespěchejte tak; poč-
kejte trochu.

Opravdu nemohu; při-
jdu brzo zas.

Prosím, přijďte!

Račte přijítí zas.

*nāfshṭiveem vāss zey-
trā něbō pozeytrshee.*

*ānō, nāfshṭiftē; būdū
vāss ōchēkāvāt.*

*ñegdō klěpá. — ñegdō
zvonēe.*

*d'etē sē pod'eervāt gdō tō
yē.*

d'etē ōtēvrsheet.

*yē tō ñeyākee pán,—ñe-
yākee tsizinecs.*

yē tō pān Arbes.

āť veydē!

dālē!

veyd'etē, proseem!

sedñetē si.

posād'tē sē, proseem.

rāchtē sē posād'it.

tādy yē židlē.

*zoostāñtē ū nās nā obyēd
odpūstē, nemōhū; ne-
mām chāss.*

mátē na spyēkh?

ānō, mám nā spyēkh.

kām spyēkhátē?

*mām skhoozi spānem
Kolmānem.*

*nespyēkheyť tāk; poch-
keyť troshkū.*

*oprāvdu němōhū;
prshiydū berzō zāss.*

proseem, prshid'tē!

rāchtē prshiyet zāss.

Drop in, when you have time.	Zaskočte sem, když máte čas.	<i>zǎskǒchtě sem, gdyž má- tě chǎss.</i>
I will come here as soon as I have time.	Přijdu sem, jakmile budu mít čas.	<i>prshiydǎ sem, yǎkmilě bǔdǎ meet chǎss.</i>
Good day!	Poroučím se!	<i>poroŭcheem sě!</i>

VOCABULARY.

Návštěva , f. <i>náfshťevǎ</i> , a call, a visit;	cizinec , m. <i>tsizínets</i> , a stranger;
navštívit , <i>náfshťeevit</i> , to visit;	spěch , m. <i>spyěkh</i> , the hurry;
očekávati , <i>ochěkávǎt</i> , to await;	schůze , f. <i>skhoozě</i> , meeting, ap- pointment;
zaskočiti , <i>zǎskochit</i> , to drop in;	židle , f. <i>židlě</i> , the chair;
poroučeti , <i>poroŭchet</i> , to command;	klepati , <i>klepǎt</i> , to knock;
poroučeti se , <i>poroŭchet sě</i> , to take leave;	zvoniti , <i>zvoňit</i> , to ring;
poroučím se , <i>poroŭcheem sě</i> , good day!	otevřít , <i>otěvrsheet</i> , to open;
sednouti si , <i>sědnoŭt si</i> } to sit down,	odpustiti , <i>odpŭstŭit</i> , to excuse, to forgive.
posaditi se , <i>posǎdŭit sě</i> } to take a place;	

Time.

ČAS.

Day and night.	Den a noc.	<i>den ā nots.</i>
I worked all day.	Pracoval jsem celý den.	<i>prǎtsovǎl sem tsělee den.</i>
I did not sleep all night.	Nespál jsem celou noc.	<i>nespǎl sem tsěloŭ nots.</i>
I work day and night.	Dělám ve dne v noci.	<i>dělam vě dně vnotsi.</i>
We sat up late at night.	Seděli jsme dlouho do noci.	<i>sědělŭ smě dloŭhō dō notsi.</i>
He came late at night and wanted a night's lodging.	Přišel pozdě na noc a chtěl nocleh.	<i>prshishell pozd'e nǎ nots a khťel notslěh.</i>
The day was clear; the night was dark.	Den byl jasný; noc by- la tmavá.	<i>den bill yǎsnee; nots bil- lǎ tmǎvǎ.</i>
To-day, — yesterday.	Dnes, — včera.	<i>dness, — fcherǎ.</i>
This morning, — this noon, — this evening, — this midnight.	Dnes ráno, — dnes v poledne, — dnes ve- čer, — dnes o půlnoci.	<i>dness ráno, — dness fpo- ledně, — dness včecher, — dness o poolnotsi.</i>

This forenoon it rained
— this afternoon it
was fine.

Until evening; — until
morning.

In broad daylight.

To-night he will come
home. — To-night he
came home.

He came last night, —
last evening, — early
in the morning, — late
in the evening, —
about midnight.

Evening before last; —
night before last.

When was it? — Last
night.

When did it happen? —
Night before last.

When shall I take that
medicine?

In the morning, at noon
and at bed-time.

Yesterday was a holi-
day. — Day before
yesterday there was
a fire.

To-morrow I shall
leave; — day after to-
morrow I shall be in
St. Louis.

Dnes dopoledne přšlo;
— **dnes odpoledne by-**
lo lezky.

Až do večera; — až do
rána.

Za bílého dne.

Dnes v noci přijde do-
mu. — Dnes v noci
přišel domu.

Přišel minulou noc, —
včera večer, — čas-
ně ráno, — pozdě ve-
čer, — kolem půl-
noci.

Předminulý večer; —
předminulou noc.

Kdy to bylo? — Dnes
v noci.

Kdy se to stalo! — Vče-
ra v noci.

Kdy mám užívatí?

Ráno, v poledne a na
noc.

Včera byl svátek. —
Předevčírem hoře-
lo.

Zejtra odjedu; — po-
zejtří budu v St.
Louis.

dness dōpoledně přšel-
lō; — dness ōdpoled-
ně billō hessky.

āsh do večerā; — āsh
dō ránā.

zā beelēhō dně.

dness vnotsi prshidě dō-
mū. — dness vnotsi
prshi-shell dōmū.

prshi-shell minūloū nots
— fcherā večer, —
chassne ránō, — pozdě
věcher, — kolem pool-
notsi.

prshěd-minūlee večer; -
prshěd-minūloū nots.
gdy tō billō? — dness
vnotsi.

gdy sě tō stālō? — fchě-
rā vnotsi.

gdy mám ůžeevatí?

ránō, fpoledně ā nā
nots.

fcherā bill swátek. —
prshědě-fcheerem ho-
rshělo.

zeytrā odyědū; — po-
zeytrshee būdū v St.
Louis.

VOCABULARY.

Nocleh, *notslēh*, a night's lodging;

svátek, *swátek*, a holiday;

státi se, *stút sě*, to happen, to occur;

stalo se, *stālō sě*, it happened;

stane se, *stānē sě*, it will happen;

stane-li se, *stānē-lī sě*, if it happens;

jasný, á é, yässnee, bright, clear;
tmavý, á, é, tmävee, dark;
minulý, á, é, minülee, past, last;
předminulý, prshěd-minülee, before
 last;

odjeti, ōdyet, to leave (by some conveyance);
užívatí, ůžeevăt, to take medicine;
 (also "to enjoy").

This week I am in good health; — last week I was sick.

The last two weeks I was on the road (i. e. traveling).

Next week I shall again leave.

Next week I expect my brother.

In two weeks I shall get money; — in five weeks I shall be in Europe.

In how many weeks will you return? — I shall return in about a month.

In how many months shall I see you? — In two months; — in five months.

When shall we meet again? — In a quarter

Tento týden jsem zdrav; — **minulý týden byl jsem nemocen.**

Poslední dvě neděle byl jsem na cestách.

S neděle zase odjedu.

Budoucí týden čekám bratra.

Za dvě neděle dostanu peníze; — **za pět neděl budu v Evropě.**

Za kolik neděl se vrátíte? — **Vrátím se asi za měsíc.**

Za kolik měsíců vás uvidím? — **za dva měsíce;** — **za pět měsíců.**

Kdy se sejdeme zas? — **Za čtvrt leta, *) za**

tento teeděn sem zdráf;
 — *minülee teeděn bill sem němotsěn.*

posleděnee dwyě něd'elě bill sem nă tsestákh.

sněd'elě zăssě odyědŭ.

bŭdoŭtsee teeděn chekám brătră.

ză dwyě ned'elě dŏstănŭ peěneežě; — ză pyět ned'el bŭdŭ věvropyě.

ză kolik ned'el sě vrătěetě? — vrătěem sě asi ză myěseets.

ză kolik myěseetsoo văss ŭvid'ěem? — ză dwă myěseetsě; — ză pyět myěseetsoo.

gdy sě seydemě zăss? — za shtwert letă, — ză

*) Ordinarily **leto**, n. means "summer"; but the noun **rok**, m. (the year) has in the plural **leta**, **let**: **dvě leta**, two years or "two summers"; **pět let**, five years or "five summers"; etc. See Lesson XIX, and foot-note on page 83.

The same is true of fractions: **čtvrt leta**, *shtwert letă*, a quarter of a year; **pŭl leta**, *pool letă*, half a year; **tři čtvrti leta**, *trshi shtwertěi letă*, three quarters of a year.

However, we may also say: **dva roky**, two years; **pět rokŭ**, five years etc. Likewise: **čtvrt roku**, **pŭl roku**, **tři čtvrti roku**.

of a year,— in half a year, — in a year.

I shall be here within a year.

My son has been gone five years;—he writes to me once a year (once in a year, — once yearly).

In how many years do you expect him?

In three years,— in six years.

I think he will arrive shortly, — speedily, — before long.

In a short time we shall see him.-- In a short while we shall be together.

It is a week since I was in New York.

It is scarcely two weeks since father was here.

It will soon be a year since I was in the old country.

It is very near two years since I sold the farm.

This day a year (or: a year ago to-day) Otto was here;—four years ago to-day we were together at San Francisco.

půl leta, — za rok.

Budu zde do dne do roka.

Syn je pryč pět let; — píše mi jednou do roka (or: jednou za rok, — jednou ročně).

Za kolik let ho čekáte?

Za tři leta, — za šest let.

Myslím že přijede za krátko, — v krátkosti, — za nedlouho.

Za krátký čas ho uvidíme. — Za krátkou dobu budeme pohromadě.

Je tomu týden co jsem byl v New Yorku.

**Je tomu sotva dvě ne-
něle, co zde byl otec.**

Bude tomu brzo rok, co jsem byl ve staré vlasti.

Budou tomu hnedle dvě leta, co jsem prodal farmu.

Dnes rok byl zde Otto; — dnes čtyry leta byli jsme spolu v San Franciscu.

pool letä, — zä rok.

büdü zdě dö dně dö rokä.

syn yě prich pyět let; — peeshě me yednoü dö rokä (or: yednoü zä rok, — yednoü rochně).

zä kolik let hě chekátě?

zä trshi letä, — zä shěst let.

misleem že prshiyědě zä krátkö, — fkrátkostvi, — zä nedloühö.

*zä krátkee chäss hě üvi-
deemě. — zä krátkoü
döbä būdemě pöhro-
mäd'e.*

*yě tömü teedēn tsö sem
bill v New Yorkü.*

*yě tömü sotvā dwyě nē-
dele tsö zdě bill otets.*

*büde tömü berzö rök,
tsö sem bill v stäre
vlästvi.*

*büdoü tömü hnedle dwyě
letä, tsö sem prodäl
farmü.*

*dness rok bill zdě Otto;
— dness shütyr yētä
billi smě spolü fsan-
franciscü.*

To-morrow it will be a year since Mary left; — two years ago yesterday mother died.

The other week our folks were here.

It is scarcely a week since they left;—it is just a month since they arrived.

It will shortly be a month since it happened.

It is not long since; — it was a short time since; — it was the other day.

How long is it since you have been here?

Day before yesterday it was a year. — It was half a year (last) Sunday. — It will be four months on Monday.—It will be eight months on Tuesday.

When was it?—Wednesday a week; — two weeks ago on Thursday; — a week ago last Friday; — three weeks ago last Saturday.

Zejtra bude rok co Mary odjela; — včera dvě leta matka zemřela.

Onen týden byli tu naši.

Je tomu sotva týden co odjeli;—je tomu zrovna měsíc, co přijeli.

Hnedle bude měsíc co se to stalo.

Je to nedávno; — bylo to nedávno; — bylo to onehdy.

Jak dávno tomu co jste tu ?

Přede věírem minul rok. — Minulo půl leta v neděli. — Budou čtyry měsíce v pondělí. — Bude osm měsíců v úterý.

Kdy to bylo?—Ve středu týden; — ve čtvrtek dvě neděle; — v pátek minul týden; — v sobotu minuly tři neděle.

zeyträ būdě rok tsō Mary od-yellā; — fchērā dwyě letā mātka zemrshellā.

onen teedēn billi tū nāshi.

yě tōmū sotvā teedēn tsō od-yelli;—yě tōmū zrovna myēseets tsō prshi-yelli.

hnedlě būdě myēseets tsō sě tō stālō.

yě tō nedāvnō;—billō tō nedāvnō; — billō tō ōnehdy.

yāk dāvnō tōmū tsō stě tū ?

prshēdě fcheerem minūl rok.—minūlō pool lētā vnēd'eli. — būdōū shtiry myēseets fpon-d'eele. — būdē osūm myēseetsoo vooteree.

gdý tō billō?—vě strshēdū teedēn;—vě shtwērtēk dwyě ned'elē; — fpátek minūl teedēn; fsobōtū minūly trshi ned'elē.

Before a year passes
we shall be one an-
other's (i. e. man and
wife).

Before two years pass
away, all will be over.

Will it be long? — It
won't be long.

Will it last long? — It
won't last long.

It takes long. — It took
long. — It didn't take
long. — O yes, it did !

How soon will it be? —
It will be right away.
— It is done already.

**Než mine rok budeme
svoji.**

**Než minou dvě leta,
bude po všem.**

**Bude to dlouho? — Ne-
bude to dlouho.**

**Bude to dlouho trvati?
— Nebude to dlouho
trvati.**

**To trvá dlouho. — Tr-
valo to dlouho. — Ne-
trvalo to dlouho. —
Ba trvalo ?**

**Jak brzo to bude? —
Bude to hned. — Už
je to.**

*nesh mině rok, budemě
svoji.*

*nesh minou dvě leta,
bude po všem.*

*bůdě to dlouhě? — nebů-
dě to dlouhě.*

*bůdě to dlouhě trvát?
— nebůdě to dlouhě
trvát.*

*to trvá dlouhě. — trvá-
lo to dlouhě. — netr-
valo to dlouhě. — ba
trvalo!*

*yák brzo to bude? — bū-
dē to hned. — ůsh yě
tō.*

VOCABULARY.

Neděle, *něd'elě*, Sunday
pondělí, *pond'eele*, Monday
úterý, *ootěree*, Tuesday
středa, *strshědā*, Wednesday
čtvrtek, *shv'ertek*, Thursday
pátek, *pátek*, Friday
sobota, *sōbotā*, Saturday
nedávno, *nědávno*, not long since
jak dávno, *yák dávno*, how long
since

co, *tsō*, since

sotva, *sotvā*, scarcely, hardly

budoucí, *būdoutsee* } future, next
příští, *prshēesh-tee* }

dostati, *dostāt*, to get, to receive;

za krátko, *zā krátkō*
v krátkosti, *fkrátkōst'ī*
za nedlouho, *zā nēdloū-
hō* } shortly,
za krátký čas, *zā krát-
kee chāss* } in a short
za krátkou dobu, *zā
krátkou dōbū* } time;

denně, *dēñe*, daily

týdně, *teedñe*, weekly

měsíčně, *myěseechñe*, monthly

ročně, *rochñe*, yearly.

na cestách, *nā tsestákh*, (literally :
"on the roads"), traveling;

stará vlast, *stārā vlāst*, the old
country.

The hour.

HODINA.

Have you a watch? — — I have.	Máte hodinky? — Mám.	mátě hod'inky?— mám.
Does it go right?— It is too slow (i. e. it goes late);—it loses;— it is (it goes) too fast.	Jdou*) dobře? — Jdou pozdě;— pozdí se; — jdou napřed.	doů dobrshě? — doů pozďe; — pozďee sě; — doů năprshed.
It is a few minutes too late. — It is five min- utes too fast.	Jsou o pár minut po- zadu. — Jsou o pět minut napřed.	Soů o pár minůt poză- dů. — Soů o pyět minůt năprshed.
It stopped (literally: it stands).	Stojí. — Zůstaly stá- ti.	stoyee. — zoostály stát.
It is not wound up. — It was not wound up.	Nejsou nataženy. — Nebyly nataženy.	neysoů nătăženy. — ně- billy nătăženy.
Wind up the watch,— the clock.	Natáhněte hodinky, — hodiny.	nătáhñetě hod'inky, — hod'iny.
Is that clock right (lit. "does it go right")?— I think it is.	Jdou ty hodiny dobře? Myslím že jdou.	doů ty hod'iny dōbrshě? — mysleem žě doů.
What o'clock is it (or: what time is it)? — How late is it?	Kolik je hodin? — Jak je pozdě?	kolik yě hod'in? — yăk yě pozďe?
Don't you know what o'clock it is?—I don't know.	Nevíte kolik je hodin? Nevím.	něveetě kolik yě hod'in? — něveem.
See what o'clock it is.— I will see (or look).	Podívejte se kolik je hodin.—Podívám se.	pod'eeveytě sě kolik yě hod'in.—pod'eevám sě
It is one o'clock. — It is a quarter past one.	Je jedna hodina. — Je čtvrt na dvě (or na druhou).	yě yednă hod'ină. — yě shw'ert nă dwyě (nă drůhoů).

*) **Hodinky** (the watch) and **hodiny** (the clock) are plural nouns; consequently the succeeding verb must appear in the plural form: **jdou**, **jsou** (they go, they are). This has already been pointed out in a foot-note on page 137. — **Hodina**, **hodinka**, in the singular, means: "the hour", "the small hour".

It is half past one.— It is a quarter to two.

It is two o'clock. — Is it so late already? — Yes, it is two (o'clock) already.

It is past two o'clock — It is five minutes to three. — It is very near three o'clock.

It is past three. — It wants ten minutes to four.

At what o'clock shall we go? — We shall go at a quarter past four.

That is too soon; we shall wait till half past four. Very well, then.

We shall go at five o'clock. — All right.

We started at five o'clock in the afternoon.

Did you come in time? — Didn't you come late?

It was time enough; there was no hurry.

We came there a few minutes after six.

We arrived there before seven, — after seven, — early in the

Je půl druhé. — Jsou tři čtvrtě na dvě (or na druhou).

Jsou dvě hodiny. — Už je tak pozdě? — Ano, už jsou dvě.

Jsou dvě hodiny pryč. — Je pět minut do třech. — Jsou hnedle tři hodiny.

Jsou tři pryč. — Chybí deset minut do čtyřech.

V kolik hodin půjdeme? — Půjdeme ve čtvrt na pět.

To je tuze brzo; počkáme do půl páté. — Tak teda.

Půjdeme v pět hodin. — Třeba.

Vyšli jsme o páté hodině odpoledne.

Přišli jste v čas? — Ne, přišli jste pozdě?

Bylo dost času; nebyl žádný spěch.

Přišli jsme tam pár minut po šesté.

Došli jsme tam před sedmou, — po sedmé, — s večera, — pozdě

yě pool druhé. — soř trshi shtw ert'e na dwyě (nā drūhoŭ).

soř dwyě hodiny. — ůsh yě tūk pozd'e? — ānō, ůsh soř dwyě.

soř dwyě hodiny prich. — yě pyět minūt dō trshēkh. — soř hnēdlē trshi hodiny.

soř trshi prich. — khībee dēset minūt dō shtyrekh.

fkolik hod'in pŭydemě? — pŭydemě vē shtw ert'nā pyět.

tō yě toozē berzō; pochkāmē dō pool páté. — tāk tēdā.

pŭydemě fpŭyět hod'in. — trshēbā.

vishli smē ō páté hod'i nē ōdpoledně.

prshishli stē fehäss? — nēprshishli stē pozd'e?

billō dost chässŭ; nebillō žādnee spyēkh.

prshi-shli smē tām pár minūt pō shēstē.

dōshli smē tām prshēd sedmoŭ, — pō sedmé, — s vecherā, — pozd'e

evening,—late in the evening, — at midnight.

We got there in an hour, — in an hour and a half, — in two hours,—in five hours.

We were here just at twelve o'clock.

We were here exactly at noon.

I must be there between one and two; -- between two and three; -- between four and five.

We must be there before evening, —early in the evening, — towards evening.

večer, — o půlnoci.

Došli jsme tam za hodinu, — za půldruhé hodiny, — za dvě hodiny, — za pět hodin.

Byli jsme tu zrovna ve dvanáct hodin.

Byli jsme tu navlas v poledne.

Musím tam býti mezi jednou a druhou; — mezi druhou a třetí; — mezi čtvrtou a pátou.

Musíme tam býti před večerem, — brzo s večera, — na večer.

věcher, — ō poolnotsi.

dōshli smě tām zā hod'iny, — zā pooldrūhé hod'iny, — zā dvyě hod'iny, — zā pyět hod'in.

billi smě tū zrovna v dvanátsť hod'in.

billi smě tū navláss v poledně.

mūseem tām beet mezi yednoū ā druhōū; — mezi druhōū ā trshēťee, — mezi shwertoū ā pátoū.

mūseem tām beet prshēd věcherem, — b'ezo svēcherā, — nā věcher.

The clock strikes.

Hear how many (what o'clock) it strikes.

It strikes twelve.

Did you hear the clock strike?

How many (i. e. what o'clock) did it strike?

It struck one;—it struck two;—it struck three; — it struck five;— it struck six.

Hodiny bijou*)

Slyšte kolik bijou!

Bijou dvanáct.

Slyšel jste hodiny bítí?

Kolik bilo?

Bila jedna;— bily dvě; — bily tři; — bilo pět; — bilo šest.

hod'iny biyoū.

slishtě kolik biyoū!

biyoū dvanátsť.

slishell stě hod'iny beet?

kolik billō?

billā yednā; — billy dvyě; — billy trshi; — billō pyět; — billō shěst.

*) **Bijou** or **biji** (they strike). See Note 2, and also foot-note on page 137.

It has just struck half past six.	Právě bilo půl sedmé.	<i>právě billø pool sedmé.</i>
It has already struck seven.	Už odbilo sedm.	<i>ũsh odbillø sedũm.</i>
It is soon going to strike eight.	Hnedle bude bítí osm.	<i>hnedlě būdě beet osũm.</i>
I shall wait till half past eight.	Budu čekati do půl deváté.	<i>būdũ chekăt dø pool děváté.</i>
I shall wait till nine.	Počkám do devíti.	<i>pochkám dø děveetĩ.</i>
Let us wait till ten.	Počkejme do desíti.	<i>pochkeymẽ dø desseeťi.</i>
Wait till midnight, or until morning.	Počkejte do půlnoci, nebo do rána.	<i>pochkeytě dø poolnotsi, nebø dø ránã.</i>
I shall wait gladly.	Rád počkám.	<i>rád pochkám.</i>
I do not like to wait.	Nerád čekám.	<i>neråd chekám.</i>
Waiting is not agreeable.	Čekání není milé.	<i>chekání neiỹní milé.</i>
I do not like long waiting.	Nemám rád dlouhé čekání.	<i>nemám rád dloũhé chekáĩi.</i>

VOCABULARY.

Hodina , f. <i>hodĩnã</i> , the hour;	natahnouti , <i>nătãhnoũt</i> , to wind up;
hodinka , f. <i>hodĩnkã</i> , the small hour;	natažený , <i>nătãžěny</i> , wound up;
hodiny , pl. <i>hodĩny</i> , the clock;	čekati , <i>chekăt</i> , to wait, to be waiting;
hodinky , pl. <i>hodĩnky</i> , the watch;	čekám , <i>chekám</i> , I am waiting;
lék , m. <i>lěk</i> , the medicine;	počkati , <i>pochkăt</i> , to wait;
spěch , m. <i>spyěkh</i> , the hurry;	počkám , <i>pochkám</i> , I shall wait;
čekání , n. <i>chekáníi</i> , the waiting;	pozadu , <i>pozãdũ</i> , behind.
napřed , <i>nãprshěd</i> , ahead, before;	

Age and date.

VĚK a DATUM.

How old are you?	Jak jste stár? Kolik je vám let?	<i>yãk stě stár? kolik yě vãm let?</i>
I am twenty years. —	Je mi dvacet let. — Je	<i>yě me dwãtset let. — yě</i>
I am over twenty.	mi přes dvacet.	<i>me prshěs dwãtset.</i>

I shall soon be twenty
five years.

I am nearly thirty
years.

I am already thirty five
years.

I was forty years in
January.

You are still young.

I shall be fifty years in
February. — I am
getting old.

That is not a great age.

You look young.

You don't look so old.

You look well for your
age.

When were you born?

What year? — In what
year?

I was born in the year
1840.—I was born in
May in the year 1850.

I was born in the
month of June 1862.

The first of August is
my birth-day.

Bude mi brzo dvacet
pět let.

Je mi málem třicet
let.

Už je mi třicet pět let.

Bylo mi čtyřicet let v
lednu.

Jste ještě mladý.

Bude mi padesát let v
únoru. — Stárnu.

To není velké stáří.

Vypadáte mladý.

Nevypadáte tak starý.

Vypadáte dobře na
svůj věk.

Kdy jste*) narozen?—

Kdy jste se narodil?

Který rok? — V kte-
rém roce?

Jsem narozen roku
1840. — Jsem rozen
v máji leta 1850.

Narodil jsem se v mě-
síci červnu 1862.

Prvního srpna je můj
den narození.

būdē me berzō dwātsēt
pyět let.

yě mi málem trshitset
let.

ušh yě me trshitset pyět
let.

billō me shtiritset let
vlednū.

stě yeshťe mlādee.

būdē me pādēsāt let voo-
norū. — stárnū.

tō neyñi velké stárshee.
vypādātē mlādee.

něvypādātē tāk stāree.

vypādātē dōbrshē nā
svūy vyěk.

gdy stě nārōžēn? gdy
stě sē nārōd'il?

kťēree rōk? — fktērēm
rotsě?

sem nārōžēn rōkū tī-
seets osūm set shtiri-
tset.—sem rozēn v mā-
yi letā tīseets osūm
set pādēsāt.

nārōd'il sem sē vmyě-
seetsi cheronū tīseets
osūm set shēdēsāt
dīdā.

pervñeehō serpnā yě
mūy den nārōžēñi.

*) In Bohemian the passive participle **rozen** or **narozen** is used in connection with the present tense: **kdy jste rozen?** **kdy jste narozen?** "when are you born?"

How old is that child?

It is ten days. — It is two weeks (old).

It is a month (old). — It is two months. — It is five months.

It is one year (old). — It is two years (old). — It is five years (old).

It will be a year in September. — It will soon be three years.

It is going on two years (it is in its second year). — It is going on five years.

How old is that girl?

She will be four years at Christmas. — She will be five years at Easter. — She will soon be six years.

What day of the month is it? — what date is it?

To-day is the first, — the second, — the fifth.

What day of the month is (i. e. will be) to-morrow?

To-morrow is ("will be") the third, — the tenth, — the twentieth.

What date was yesterday?

Jak staré je to dítě?

Je mu deset dní. —

Jsou mu dvě neděle.

Je mu měsíc. — Jsou

mu dva měsíce. —

Je mu pět měsíců.

Je mu rok. — Jsou mu dvě leta. — Je mu pět let.

Bude mu rok v září. —

Budou mu brzo tři leta.

Jde mu na druhý rok.

Jde mu na pátý rok.

Jak stará je ta holka?

Budou jí čtyry leta o vánocích. — Bude jí pět let o velkonočních. — Bude jí hnedle šest let.

Kolikátého je? — jaké je datum?

Dnes je prvního, druhého, — pátého.

Kolikátého bude zejtra?

Zejtra bude třetího, — desátého, — dvacátého.

Kolikátého bylo včera?

yāk stārē yē to d'ee'e?

yē mū dēset dñee. — soū mū dwyē nēd'elē.

yē mū myēseets. — soū mū dwā myēseetsē. —

yē mū pyēt myēseetsoo.

yē mū rōk. — soū mū dwyē letā. — yē mū pyēt let.

būdē mū rōk vzārshēe.

— būdōū mū berzō

trshi letā.

dē mū nā drūhee rōk. —

dē mū nā pátēe rōk.

yāk stārā yē tā holkā?

būdoū yee shtīry letā ō

vánotseekh. — būdē yee

pyēt let ō velkōnot-

seekh. — būdē yee hnē-

dlē shēst let.

kolikátéhō yē? — yáké yē dátum?

dnēss yē perōñeehō, —

drūhého, — pátéhō.

kolikátéhō būdē zeytrā?

zeytrā būdē trshē'teehō,

— dessátéhō, — dwā-

tsátéhō.

kolikátéhō billō fcherā?

Yesterday was the twenty-first.

What day of the month will be next Sunday? — The twenty-second.

On what day of the month was Frank here? — He was here on the fifteenth and he will come again on the twenty-fifth.

This month? — Yes; he will stay here until the last.

On the first I shall receive new goods.

When will Mr. Danesh pay (his) bill? — Before the last. — On the first of next month.

When will the agent arrive? — About the ninth.

When will the time run out? When will it be due? — About the fifteenth.

That is, about the middle of the month. — I shall pay towards the end of the month.

Next month I expect to be gone. — Before two months pass away, I shall be back.

Včera bylo dvacátého prvního.

Kolikátého bude v neděli? — Dvacátého druhého.

Kolikátého byl zde Frank? — Byl zde patnáctého a přijde zas na dvacátého pátého.

Tento měsíc? — Ano; zůstane tu do posledního.

Na prvního dostanu nové zboží.

Kdy pan Daneš zaplatí účet? — Do posledního. — Na prvního budoucí měsíc.

Kdy přijede agent? — Asi devátého.

Kdy vyjde čas? Kdy vypadne lhůta? — Kolem patnáctého.

Teda v polou měsíce. — Zaplatím ke konci měsíce.

Na druhý měsíc hodlám býti pryč. — Než uplynou dva měsíce, budu nazpět.

fcherā billō dwātsátéhō p̄erw̄ñeehō.

kolikátéhō būdē vnědělī? — dwātsátéhō druhéhō.

kolikátéhō bill zdē Frank? — bill zdē patnátstéhō ā prshidē zāss nā dwātsátéhō pátéhō.

tentō myěseets? — āno; zoostānē tū dō posledñeehō.

nā p̄erw̄ñeehō dōstānū novē zbožee.

gdy pān Dānesh zāplāťee oočet? — dō pōsledñeehō. — nā p̄erw̄ñeehō būdōūtsee myěseets.

gdy prshiyēdē ākent? — āsi dēvátéhō.

gdy veedē chāss? gdy vypādnē lhootā? — kōlem patnátstéhō.

tēdā fpolou myěseetsē. — zāplāťeem kē kontsi myěseetsē.

nā drūhee myěseets hodlām beet prich. — nesh āplinoū dwā myěseetsē, būdū nāspyēt.

We shall expect you some time in October; — or in the beginning of November; — at latest before the first of December.

The fourth of July is a national holiday, — the day of independence.

Thanksgiving day is usually in November.

On new-year's day; — before New-year's; — after New-year's.

Budeme vás čekati někdy v říjnu; — nebo počátkem listopadu; — nejdýl do prvního prosince.

Čtvrtý červenec jest národní svátek, — den neodvislosti.

Den díkůvzdání bývá v listopadu.

Na nový rok; — do nového roku; — po novém roce.

būdēmě váss čekăt nē-gdy frsheelynā; — nē-bō pochátkem listopādā; — neydeel dō perv-nēeho prosintsē.

shiticrtee chervēnets yest národnēe svátek, — den nēodvislostī.

den d'eeekūrvzdānēe beevá vlistopādā.

nā novēe rōk; — dō novē-hō rōkā; — pō novém rotsē.

VOCABULARY.

Věk, m. *vyěk* } the age
stáří, n. *stárshee* }
stárnouti, *stárnoūt*, to grow old;
naroditi se, *národ'it sē*, to be born;
narození, n. *nározeñi*, the birth;
počátek, m. *pochátek*, the beginning;
lhůta, f. *lhootā*, the given time, the term;
vánoce, pl. *vánotsē*, Christmas;
velkonoce, pl. *velkōnotsē*, Easter;
svatodušní svátky, pl., *swātōdūshnēe swátky*, Whitsuntide;

vypadati, *vypādāt* } to look, to ap-
vyhlížeti, *vyhleežet* } pear;
vyjítí, *vīyeet*, to go out, to run out;
uplynouti, *ūplynoūt*, to pass away;
zaplatiti, *zāplāt'it*, to pay up;
někdy, *nēgdy*, sometimes;
v polou, *fpoloū*, in the middle;
nazpět, *nāspyět* } back
zpátky, *spátky* }
neodvislost, f. *nēodvislost*, the independence.

Leden, *ledēn*, January
únor, *oonor*, February
březen, *brshēzēn*, March
duben, *dūbēn* } April
april, *āpril* }

květen, *kwyětēn* } May
máj, *máy* }
červen, *chervēn*, June
červenec, *chervēnets*, July
srpen, *serpēn*, August

září, *zárshee*, September
říjen, *rsheeyën*, October

listopad, *listopăd*, November
prosinec, *prosinets*, December.

The weather.

POČASÍ.

How is the weather?

It is fine; — it is beautiful weather.

It is clearing up; — it is a fine morning; — it will be a nice day.

The heaven is clear. — The sun shines, — warms (i. e. makes it warm), — burns.

In the sun it is hot.

It is warm; — it will be hot; — there will be a great heat to-day.

Yesterday there was a great heat.

How does the thermometer stand? — Eighty five in the shade.

The thermometer is rising, — is falling.

What a heat! — I am perspiring; let us go into the shade; — I feel hot.

What wind is it? — East wind, — West wind, South wind, — North wind.

I think there will be a

Jaké je počasí?

Je pěkně; — je krásné počasí.

Vybírá se; — je krásné ráno; — bude pěkný den.

Nebe je jasné. — Slunce svítí — hřeje — pálí.

Na slunci je horko.

Je teplo; — bude horko; — bude dnes velké parno.

Včera bylo silné vedro.

Jak stojí teploměr? — Osmdesát pět ve stínu.

Teploměr stoupá, — klesá.

To je horko! — Já se potím; pojďme do chládku. — Je mi horko.

Jaký je vítr? — Východní, — západní, jižní, — severní.

Myslím že bude změna

yăké yě pŏchăsee?

yě pyěkňe; — yě krássné pŏchăsee.

vybeeră sě; — yě krássné ránŏ; — būďě pyěknee den.

něbě yě yăsné. — slŭntsě sweeťee, — hrshěyě, — pálee.

nă slŭntsi yě horkŏ.

yě teplŏ; — būďě horkŏ; — būďě dness velké parnŏ.

fcheră billŏ silné vědrŏ.

yăk stoyee teplŏmyěr? — osŭmdessăt pyět vĕstĕenŭ.

teplŏmyěr stoŭpă, — klĕsă.

tŏ yě horkŏ! — yă sě potĕem; pŏďmĕďŏ khlădkŭ; — yě me horkŏ.

yăkee yě veeter? — vee-khodňee, — zăpăďňee, — yĭžňee, — sĕverňee.

misleem že būďě zmyě-

change in the weather;—the wind changes. — Now it blows from the East.

Very likely there will be a change.

It is dry; we need rain; —I wish it would rain!

—There is a great deal of dust.

Is it going to rain?— It looks like it; it is getting cloudy.

It is cloudy;— the sky is clouded;— the sky is overcast;— it is damp.

Do you see those dense, black clouds?—They bring rain,— a heavy rain.

I think a rainstorm is coming, — a heavy rainstorm.

The weather is bad; — the weather is nasty; — it is wet and muddy.

It is very nasty out of doors; — it is rainy; — too much rain!

It sprinkles;—it rains a little; — it rains; — it pours;— how muddy it will be!

počasí;— vítr se mění. — Ted' vane od východu.

Dost možná, že bude změna.

Je sucho; potřebujeme dešť. — Kéž by jen pršelo! — Je moc prachu.

Bude pršet? — Vypadá to tak; mračí se.

Je zamračeno;— je pod mrakem;— obloha je zatažena; — je vlhko.

Vidíte ty husté, černé mraky? — Z toho bude dešť, — hodný dešť.

Myslím že bude liják, — silný liják.

Je špatné počasí; — je škaredá povětrnost; — je mokro a blatavo.

Je tam ošklivě;— je deštivo; — mnoho deště!

Krápe; — poprechává; — prší; lije se; — to bude blata!

nā pochāsee; — veet'er sē myēnee. — tēd' vānē od veehhodū.

dost možná že bude zmyěná.

yě sūkhō; potrshēbūyēmē deshť. — kéž be yen p'ershellō! — yě mōts prākhū.

būdě p'ershēt? — vypādā tō tāk; mrāchee sē.

yě zāmračēnō;—yě pod mrākem; — oblōhā yě zātāženā;—yě v'elkho.

veēete ty hūsstē, chernē mrāky? — stohō būdě deshť, — hodnee deshť.

misleem že būdě liyāk, — silnee liyāk.

yě shpātnē pochāsee; — yě shkāredā povyēt'nost;—yě mokrō.

yě tām oshklivyē; — yě deshťivō; — mnohō deshťe!

krāpē; — pop'ekhvāvá; — p'ershee;— liyē sē;—tō būdē blātā!

It rains in torrents.—It has ceased to rain already.

That was a heavy rain-storm,—a cloudburst;—it rained in torrents. — It caused a flood.

It is calm,—no wind,—not a leaf is stirring. — It is sultry; the air is heavy.

The wind rises;—it is windy;—it blows hard;—there is a strong wind.

A storm is brewing;—there will be a hurricane;—a cyclone is coming.

A thunderstorm is coming. — It lightens. — Now there was a flash of lightning. — What flashes of lightning!

Do you hear the thunder? — Yes, it thunders; the thunder rolls from afar;—a thunderstorm is coming.

The thunder roars;—the lightning has struck;—it has struck somewhere! — the lightning set fire.

This is a terrible storm,

Prší jen se lije. — Už přestalo pršet.

To byl příval, — průtrž mračen; — přšlo jen se lilo. — Byla z toho povodeň.

Je ticho, — bez větru, — ani se list nehýbe. — Je dusno; vzduch je těžký.

Dělá se vítr; — je větrno; — fouká hodně; — je silný vítr.

Bude z toho bouře; — bude vichřice; — cyklon se blíží.

Tahne bouřka. — Blýská se. — Ted' se záblesklo. — To je blýskání!

Slyšíte hřimati?—Ano, hřímá — hrom hučí z daleka; — bouřka se blíží.

Hrom burácí; — hrom uhodil; — někde uhodilo! — blesk zapálil.

To je hrozná bouře, —

pershee yen sě liyě. — ůsh prshěstälö per-shět.

tö bill prsheeval, — prootersh mrächěn; — pershellö yen sě lillö. — büdē stöhhö pövedēñ.

yě tikhö, — bēz vyětrü, — äñi sě list nēheebē. — yě düssnö; vzdükh yě tethkee.

d'elä sě veet'er; — yě vyěternö; — foŭká hodñe; — yě silnee veet'er.

büdē stöhhö boŭrshē; — büdē vikh-rshitsē; — tsiklon sě bleežee.

täññē boŭrsh-kä. — bleeskä sē. — ted' sě zäblesklö. — tö yě bleeskäñi!

slisheetē hrsheemät? — äñö, hrsheemä; — hrom hŭchee zädalekä; — boŭrshkă sě bleežee.

hrom būrátsee; — hrom ůhodil; — ñegdē ůhodilö! — blesk zäpäñil.

tö yě hröznä boŭrshē, —

— an awful thunder-storm.—The crashing of thunder is incessant. — Flash after flash, one thunder-clap after the other.

That was a thunder-clap — a thunderbolt from a clear sky.

It hails. — This is a big hailstorm.

It will destroy the crops — the hail will destroy everything. — The hail-storm destroyed the crops;—hailstones of an enormous size were falling.

strašné hromobití.—
Hrom bije neustále.
— Blesk za bleskem,
rána za ranou.

strášné hromobitíee.
— *hrom bijě něústálě.*
— *blesk ză bleskem,*
ránă ză ránoŭ.

To byla hromová rána; — uhodilo z čista jasna.

Padají kroupy. — To je silné krupobití.

Potluče; — kroupy všecko zničí. — Potlouklo; — padaly kroupy ohromné velikosti.

tő billă hromová ránă;
— *ăhodił schistă yăsnă.*

pădăyee kroŭpy. — tő yě silné krŭpobitíee.

potlăchě;—kroŭpy fshětsko zñichee. — potloŭklo; — pădăly kroŭpy ohromné vĕlikosti.

It is foggy;— this morning there was a thick fog.

Dew is falling; — there is a heavy dew.

There is a hoary frost, — a gray frost.

It is cold; — it is chilly; — it is frosty.

I feel cold; — I am freezing; — a cold wind is blowing.

I want to warm myself. — Are you cold? Warm yourself. — It is warm here, — almost too warm.

Jest mlhavo;—ráno byla hustá mlha.

Padá rosa; — je silná rosa.

Je jinovatka, — šedý mráz.

Je zima; — je sice mráz; — je mrazivo.

Je mi zima; — mrazí mě; — fouká studený vítr.

Chci se ohřátí. — Je vám zima? — Ohřejte se. — Zde je teplo, — až moc teplo.

yest melhăvô;—ránô bil-lă hustă melhă.

pădă rossă; — yě silná rossă.

yě yinovătkă, — shĕdee mráz.

yě zimă;—yě sikhrăvô; yě mrăzivô.

yě mi zima; — mrăzee myě;—foŭkă stădĕnee veeter.

khtsi sĕ ohrshăt. — yě văm zimă? ohrshĕytĕ sĕ.—zďĕ yě teplô,—ăsh mots teplô.

It is going to snow; —
it snows;—it is snow-
ing.

What a snow-storm! —
a great snow-storm.

A great deal of snow
fell;—there are snow-
drifts.

How many degrees is
it?—It is twenty be-
low zero;— a severe
cold.

The ice is thick; we
can skate.

It will grow warmer;—
it is growing warmer;
—the wind is shifting;
— it blows from the
South.

The ice breaks;— the
snow thaws and the
ice melts;— there is a
big thaw.

In the spring the weath-
er is mild;— in the
summer it is usually
hot;— in the fall it is
cool;— in the winter
it is cold and it freez-
es.

Wisconsin has a hard
winter;— Louisiana
has a mild winter. —
In Texas the winter
is short and the sum-
mer long.

Bude padati sníh; —
padá sníh;— sněží.

To je vánice! — velká
metelice.

Napadlo mnoho sněhu;
— jsou závěje.

Kolik je stupňů? — Je
dvacet pod nulou; —
krutá zima.

Led je silný; můžeme
se klouzati.

Ono se oteplí;—oteplu-
je se; — vítr se obra-
cí; — vane od jihu.

Led puká; — sníh taje
a led se rozpouští;—
je hodná obleva.

Z jara je mírné počá-
sí; — v letě bývá
horko; — na podzim
je chladno; — v zimě
je zima a mrzne.

Wisconsin má tuhou
zimou; — Louisiana
má mírnou zimou. —
V Texasu je krátká
zima a dlouhé leto.

*būdē pādāt snēeh;— pā-
dā snēeh;—snēžee.*

*tō yě vāñitsē! — velká
metellitsē.*

*nāpǎdlo mnohō snēhū;
— soū závyějē.*

*kolik yě stǔpňoo? — yě
dwātsset pod nulloū;—
krutá zimā.*

*led yě silnee; moožemē
sē kloūzāt.*

*onō sē oteplee;— oteplū-
yě sē; — veeter sē o-
brátsee; — vāně od
yeehū.*

*led pūkā; — snēeh tāyē
ā led sē rozpoūštēe;
yě hōdnā oblēvā.*

*zyārā yě meerné pochā-
see; — vletē beevā
horkō; — nā podzim
yě khlādnō;— vzimyē
yě zimā ā merznē.*

*wisconsin má tūhoū zi-
mū; — louisiana má
meernoū zimū. — fte-
xasū yě krátkā zimā
ā dloūhé letō.*

The summer season is warm, — the winter season is cold.

In the winter days are short and nights are long.

The day shortens;—the day lengthens.

The night shortens.

Letní počasí je teplé,
— zimní počasí je
studené.

V zimě jsou krátké
dny a dlouhé noci.

Den se krátí; — dne
přibývá.

Noc se krátí; (noci u-
bývá).

letníee pochásee yě teplé,
— zimníee pochásee yě
stüddéné.

vzimyě sou krátké dñi
ä dlouhé notsi.

den së krátée; — dne
prshibeová.

nots së krátée; (notsi ü-
beová).

VOCABULARY.

Počasí, n. *pochásee* } the
povětrnost, f. *povyět'ernost* } weath-
er
počasí, n. } the season;
doba, f. *döbä* }
nebe, n. *něbě*, the heaven
obloha, f. *oblöhä*, the sky
stín, m. *s'teen*, the shade, the shadow
chládek, m. *khládek*, the shady place
prach, m. *prákh*, the dust
blato, n. *blätö*, the mud
list, m. *list*, the leaf
velikost, f. *velikost*, the greatness
kéž by, I would that...; would to
heaven that...; I wish it
would...

východ, m. *veekhöd*, the east
západ, m. *zápád*, the west
jih, m. *yeeh*
poledne, n. *poledně* } the south
sever, *s'ever* } the north
půlnoc, *poolnots* }
jiho-východ, m. the south-east
severovýchod, m. the north-east
jihozápad, m. the south-west
severozápad, m. the north-west
východní, *veekhodñee*, eastern
západní, *zápádñee*, western
jižní, *yeežñee* } southern
polední, *poledñee* }
severní, *severñee*, } northern
půlnocní, *poolnochñee* }

Vítr, m. *veet'er*, the wind
vichřice, f. *vikh-rshitsě*, the gale,
the hurricane;

foukati, *foukät* } to blow
vanouti, *vänout* }

bouře, f. *boürshě*, the storm
kouřka, f. *boürshkä*, the thunder-
storm;
hřímati, *hrsheemät*, to thunder
hřímání, n. *hrsheemáñee*, the thun-
dering

hrom, m. *hröm*, the thunder
hromová rána, a peal or crash of thunder;

hromobití, n. *hrömobiťee*, peals of thunder;

burácti, *bŭrátset*, to roar, to crash
blýskati se, *bleskät sě*, to lighten

Dešť, m. *desht'*, the rain

liják, m. *liyák* } the rainstorm,
přívál, m. *prsheevál* } the heavy shower;

průtrž mračen, *proot'ersh mrächěn*, the cloud-burst;

povodeň, f. *pŭvodeň*, the flood

mrak, m. *mrāk* } the cloud

mračno, n. *mrächno* }

mračiti se, *mrächit sě*, to grow cloudy;

krápati, *krápät* } to sprin-
poprchávati, *pŭperkhávät* } kle;

pršetí, *pershet'*, to rain

líti se, *leet sě* (colloq. *leyt sě*), to pour

přestati, *prshéstät*, to stop.

Kroupy, pl. *kroŭpy*, the hail

krupobití, n. *krŭpobiťee*, the hail-storm;

Vybíratí se, *vybeerät sě*, to clear up

měnití se, *myě-ñit sě*, to change

páliti, *pálit*, to burn

přibývati, *prshibeevät*, to increase, to lengthen;

blýskání, n. *bleskúñee*, the lightning
blesk, the flash or stroke of light-ning; the thunderbolt;

zablesklo se, *zăblesklŏ sě*, there was a flash of lightning;

uhoditi, *ŭhod'it*, to strike

zapáliti, *zăpálit*, to set fire.

potlouci, *potlouťsi*, to knock down, to destroy;

zničiti, *zñichit*, to annihilate

mlha, f. *m^{el}hă*, the fog

mlhavo, *m^{el}hăvŏ*, foggy

rosa, f. *rossă*, the dew

jinovatka, f. *ye-novătkă*, hoary frost

sníh, m. *sñeeh*, the snow

sněhu, *sñehu*, of the snow;

sněžiti, *sñěžit*, to snow

metelice, f. *metělitsě* } the snow-storm,

vánice, f. *văñitsě* } the blizzard;

závěje, pl. f. *zăvyěyě*, snow-drifts

led, m. *leđ*, the ice

náledí, n. *năleđee*, glazed frost

mráz, m. *mráz*, the frost

mrznouti, *merznoŭt*, to freeze

tátí, *tăt'i*, to thaw

tání, n. *tăñee* } a thaw

obleva, *oblěvă* }

ubývati, *ŭbeevät*, to decrease, to shorten;

potiti se, *pot'it sě*, to sweat.

Černý, á, é *chernee*, black

hustý, á, é *hŭsstee*, thick, dense;

škaredý, á, é *shkārēdee*, nasty, ugly;
mírný, á, é *meerneee*, mild
ohromný, á, é *ōhromnee*, enormous,
 terrible;
strach, m. *strākh*, fear
strašný, á, é *strāshnee*, fearful
hrůza, f. *hroozā*, horror, terror;
hrozný, á, é *hrōznee*, horrible;
 shocking.

Blativo (adv.)*, *blāťivō*, muddy
deštivo, *desht'ivō*, rainy
mokro, *mokrō*, wet
vlhko, *velhkō*, damp
sucho, *sūkhō*, dry
teplo, *teplō*, warm
horko, *horkō*, hot

parno, *parnō*, very hot
dušno, *dūssnō*, close, stifling;
zima, *zimā* } cold
studeno, *stūdēnō* }
chladno, *chlādno*, cool
sichravo, *sikhrāvō*, chilly
mrazivo, *mrāzivō*, frosty, freezing
 cold.

—
Teploměr, m. *teplōmyēr*, the ther-
 mometer
stupeň, m. *stūpeň*, a degree
nula, f. *nūlā*, zero
nad nulou, *nād nūlo*, above zero
pod nulou, below zero;
stoupati, *stoŭpāt*, to rise;
klesati, *klessāt*, to go down.

Health and sickness.

ZDRAVÍ a NEMOC.

I hope you are well.
 Only middling;— I am
 so so.
 You do not look so well
 as (you did) lately.
 Do you think so? —
 Well, you are right;
 — I do not look well.

Doufám že jste zdrav.
Jen tak prostředně; —
jen tak tak.
Nevypadáte tak dobře
jako nedávno.
Myslíte? — Ba máte
pravdu;—nevypadám
dobře.

doŭfám že stě zdráf.
yen tāk prostrshēdñe;—
yen tāk tāk.
něvypādátě tāk dobrshē
yākō nēdávno.
misleetě? — bā máte
prāvdŭ;—něvypādám
dōbrshē.

*) The adjectives are : **blativý (á, é)**, **deštivý**, **mokrý**, etc.

Je tam blativo, it is muddy out of doors; — **blativý chodník** (m.), a muddy sidewalk; **blativá cesta** (f.), a muddy road; **blativé pole** (n.), a muddy field.

Je deštivo, it is rainy; — **deštivý den**, a rainy day.

I think I look bad (badly): — I look worse.

O no! you do not look badly.

Don't I?—I guess I do!

Listen to me (i.e. let me tell you): you look better than you did the other day.

O, be still! — you flatter me.

Myslím že vypadám špatně; — vypadám hůř.

O ne! nevypadáte zle.

Že ne?—Myslím že ano!

Dejte si říci: vypadáte lépe než onehdy.

I dejte pokoj! — vy mi pochlebujete!

misleem že vypadám shpätñe; — vypadám hoorsh.

O ně! něvypáďátě zlē.

*že ně?—misleem že äno!
deytě si rsheetsi: vypá-
ďátě lépe nesh öneh-
dy.*

E deytě pōkoy!—vy me pōkhlēbāyetē.

You look bad (badly);— I do not like your looks.

What is the matter with you?—is anything the matter with you?

Do you not feel well?— what is the matter?— what ails you?

Nothing ails me;—nothing is the matter with me.

Why do you look so bad (badly)? — That's nothing!

You deny it (i. e. conceal it).—Don't deny it!

I deny nothing; — why should I deny?

If anything is the matter with you, tell me!

Vyhližíte špatně;— nelíbíte se mi.

Co je vám? — chybí vám něco?

Není vám dobře? — co vám chybí? — co vás bolí?

Nic mi není; — nic mi nechybí.

Proč vypadáte tak špatně? — To nic není!

Vy zapíráte. — Nezapírejte!

Nic nezapírám;— proč bych zapíral?

Je-li vám něco, řekněte!

vyhleežēetē shpätñe; — něleebeetē sē me.

tsō yē vām? — khibee vām ñetsō?

neyñi vām dōbrshē? — tsō vām khibee? — tsō vāss bolee?

ñits me neyñi; — ñits me někhibee.

proch vypáďátě tak shpätñe? — tō ñits neyñi!

vy zāpeerátē.— nězāpeerēytē.

ñits nězāpeerám;—proch bikh zāpeerāl?

yēlli vām ñetsō, rshēk-ñetē!

Tell me what is the matter with you? — does anything ail you? — tell me if anything ails you.

If anything were the matter with me, I should say so.

There is something the matter with you!

You don't feel well; — I see it by your looks!

You are right; I am not well.

What is the matter with you?—I do not know what ails me; — I do not feel quite well.

I am not so well as usual.— A little time ago I felt better.

To-day I feel bad (badly);—I was taken sick. I feel badly.

Are you sick?

Yes, I am sick; I do not feel well;— I feel bad (badly).

I hear that Edward is sick.

He has been taken sick; — he has fallen sick; —he is very sick;—he

Povězte co je vám? — bolí vás něco? — povězte chybí-li vám něco.

Kdyby mi něco bylo, řekl bych to.

Vám něco je! — Vám něco chybí!

Vám není dobře; — vidím to na vás!

Máte pravdu; není mi dobře.

Co je vám? — Nevím co mi je; — necítím se docela dobře.

Nejsem tak zdrav jak obyčejně. — Ještě nedávno bylo mi líp.

Dnes je mi špatně; — přišlo mi nanic.

Je mi nanic. — Je mi zle.

Jste nemocen?

Ano, jsem nemocen; — není mi dobře; — je mi zle.

Slyším, že Edward je nemocen.

Roznemohl se;—upadl do nemoci; — je silně nemocen; — je

povězteť tsò yě vám? — bolee váss ñetsò?—povězteť khibeeli vám ñetsò?

gdyby me ñetsò billò, rshèkel bikh tò.

vám ñetsò yě! — vám ñetsò khibeel!

vám neyñi dôbrshě; — víŕeem tò ná váss!

mátě právdû; neyñi me dôbrshě.

tsò yě vám?—něveem tsò me yě; — ñetseeŕeem sě dotsellâ dôbrshě.

neysem tâk zdráf yâk obicheyñe. — Yeshtë nedávno billò me leep.

dness yě me shpâtñe; — prshishlo me náñits.

yě me náñits. — yě me zlě.

stě němotsěn?

ânò, sem němotsěn; — neyñi me dôbrshě; — yě me zlě.

slisheem že Edward yě němotsěn.

rozněmhel sě; — ůpâdel dô němotsi; — yě siñne němotsěn; — yě

has been sick a long time.

What is the matter with him?— what happened to him?

He caught a cold;— he has a bad cold.

Anthony is also sickly;— but to-day he already feels better.

I was long in poor health;— I was ailing seriously.

What was the matter with you?— Indeed I do not know what ailed me.

I had no appetite, — I had no sleep,— I had a feeling of weariness. — But it all passed away.

Take care of yourself; — be careful of your health!

Health is above everything; it is the greatest treasure.

An unhealthy man is unhappy.

What is the matter with you? are you sick? — you are not sick, are you?

Only a little; it is not

dlouho nemocen.

Co mu je? — co se mu stalo?

Nastudil se; — má silné nastuzení.

Anton je také churavý; — ale dnes už je mu lépe.

Já dlouho churavěl;— povážlivě jsem churavěl.

Co vám bylo? — Ani nevím co mi bylo.

Neměl jsem chuť k jídlu, — neměl jsem spaní, — cítil jsem unavenost. — Ale minulo to.

Dejte na sebe pozor; — buďte opatrný na zdraví!

Zdraví je nade všechno; je to největší poklad.

Člověk nezdravý je nešťastný.

Co je vám? stůnête? — snad nestůnête?

Jen tak trochu; není

dloúhō němotsěn.

tsō mŭ yě? — tsō sě mŭ stālō?

nästŭd'íl sě; — má silné năstŭzěňi.

ănton yě tăke khŭrăvee; — âlě dness ŭsh yě mŭ lépě. ПОЗ;

yă dloúhō khŭrăvyell; pŏvázlivyě sem khŭrăvyell.

tsō văm billō? — âňi něveem tsō me billō.

nemyell sem khŭť k-yee-dlŭ, — nemyell sem spŭňi, — tseeťil sem ŭnăvănost. — âlě minŭlō tō.

deytě nă sěbě pŏzor; — būďtě ōpăťerne nă zdrăvee.

zdrăvee yě nădě fshětskŏ; yě tŏ neyvyět-shee pŏklăd.

chlovyěk nězdrăvee yě neshťăssnee.

tsō yě văm? stŏŏňetě? — snăd něstŏŏňetě?

yen tăk trŏkhŭ; neyňi

bad. — I have a pain in the bowels.

That will pass away; — it will stop of itself. — I hope so.

Do you have it often? — Quite often; — it comes upon me from time to time.

What do you do against it? — Nothing; I lie down and remain quiet.

That is the best medicine. — I think so. — That helps.

It always helps me; — nothing else helps me.

At least it gives relief. — Yes, I feel instant relief.

It relieves instantly; — it is good for relief.

to zlé. — Mám bolesti.

To zase přejde; — to přestane samo. — Doufám.

Míváte to často? — Dost často; — přichází to na mě ob čas.

Co děláte proti tomu? — Nic; lehnú si a jsem tiše.

To je nejlepší lék. — Já myslím. — To pomáhá.

To mi vždycky pomáhá; nic jiného mi nepomáhá.

Aspoň to ulehčí. — Ano, hned se mi ulehčí.

Hned se uleví; — je to dobré pro úlevu, (pro ulehčení).

tě zlé.—mám bolesti.

tě zase přshědě; — tě přshěstěně sámě. — doůfám.

meevátě tě chāsstě? — dost chāsstě;—prshikházee tě nā myě ob chās.

tsě d'elátě proti těmū? — ňits; lehnū si ā sem tishě.

tě yě neylepshee lék. — yā misleem. — tě pomáhá.

tě mi vžditsky (ditske) pomoože;—ňits yiné-hě me něpomáhá.

āsspoň tě ůlēh-chee. — ānš, hned sě me ůlēh-chee.

hned sě ůlēvee; — yě tě dobré pro ůolěvū (pro ůlēh-cheŋi).

VOCABULARY.

Nastuditi se, *nāstūđ'it sě*, to catch a cold;

nastuzení, n. *nāstūžēŋi*, a cold;

churavěti, *khūrāv'yēt*, to sicken, to be sickly;

churavý á, é *khūrāvee*, sickly, indisposed;

churavost, f. *khūrāvost*, sickliness, indisposition;

pomahati, *pomāhāt*, to help;

pomahá, *pomāhá* } it helps

pomůže, *pomoožě* }

nepomahá } it does not help;

nepomůže }

pochleborati, *pokhlēborāt*, to flatter

zapíratí, *zāpeerāt*, to deny

cítiti, *tsee'tit*, to feel

cítím, *tsee'teem*, I feel

mívati (reit. form of **míti**, to have; see page 168;) **meevāṭi**, to use to have;

přicházeti, *prshikházet*, to use to come;

přestati, *prshěstāt*, to stop;

ulehčiti, *ūlēh-chit* } to relieve

uleviti, *ūlēvit*

ulehčení, n. *ūlēh-cheñi* } relief

úleva, f. *oolěvā*

Chuť, f. *khūṭ*, the taste, the appetite;*)

chuť k jídlu, *khūṭ k-yeedlū*, appetite for food;

spaní, n. *spāñee*, the sleep;

lék, m. *lék*, } the medicine

medicina, f. *meditsinā*

poklad, m. *poklād*, the treasure;

pokoj, m. *pókoy*, peace, rest;

dejte pokoj! *deytě pókoy!* give me a rest! keep still!

ob čas, *ob chäss*, from time to time;

necítím, *nětseet'eem*, I do not feel;

boleti, *bōlet*, to ache, to ail;

bolení, n. *bolěñi*, pain (especially in the bowels, belly-ache);

je mi nanic, *yě me nāñits*, I feel sick

něco mi chybí, *ñetsō me khibee*,

something ails me; there

is something the matter

with me.

zdravý, *á, é zdrāvee*, healthy, well, sound;

nezdravý, *á, é nězdrāvee*, unhealthy, unwell, unsound;

opatrný, *á, é ōpāternee*, careful

obyčejný, *á, é ōbicheynee*, usual, common;

obyčejně, *ōbicheyñe*, usually, commonly;

povážlivě, *pŏvázlívyyě*, seriously

prostředně, *prostrshěd ñe*, middling

ticho, n. *tikhō*, silence, quiet, calm;

tíše, *tishě*, quietly, calmly.

The human being.

LIDSKÝ TVOR.

Tělo, n. *tělo*, the body;

tělesný, *á, é tělessnee*, bodily;

úd, m. *ood*, the member, the limb;

kost, f. the bone;

kostra, f. *kostrā*, the skeleton;

kostnatý, *á, é kostnātee*, bony;

morek, m.

špik, m. *shpik*, } the marrow;

*) **Chuť** means also "a desire or inclination": **mám chuť jíti tam**, I have a mind to go there; — **mám chuť vyhnati ho**, I have a mind to chase him (or: to turn him out); — **mám chuť říci mu to**, I have a mind to tell him so; — **mám chuť do práce**, I have a desire to work, or a taste for work; I feel like working; — **pracuju s chutí**, I work with a will; etc.

kůže, f. *koožě*, } the skin
 pleť, f. *plěť*, }
 pokožka, f. *pőkožkă*, the cuticle
 blána, f. *blánă*, the membrane
 maso, n. *mässö*, the flesh
 masitý, á, é *massitee*, fleshy
 tlustý, á, é *tlūstee*, fat
 hubený, á, é *hübēnee*, lean, thin;
 sval, m. *svāl*, the muscle
 svalnatý, á, é *sválnātee*, muscular
 šlachy, pl. *shlăkhy*, the sinews
 žláza, f. *žláză*, the gland
 tuk, m. *tūk*, } the fat
 sádlo, m. *sádlö*, }
 nerv, m. *nerf*, } the nerve
 číva, f. *chivă*, }
 nervový, á, é *nervōvee*, } nervous
 čivní, *chivñee*, }
 ceva, f. *tsěvă*, the vessel
 žíla, *žeelă*, the vein

Hlava, f. *hlávă*, the head
 lebka, f. *lebkă*, the skull
 temeno, n. *teměňö*, the crown or
 top of the head;
 týlo, n. *teelö*, the back of the head;
 kůže na hlavě, *koože nă hlăvyě* } the
 skalp, m. *skălp* } scalp
 mozek, m. *mőzek*, the brain
 spánek, m. *spánek*, the temple
 spánky, pl. *spánky* } the temples
 skráně, pl. *skrăně* }

Oko, n. *öko*, the eye
 oči, pl. *öchě*, the eyes
 oční důlek, *ochñee doolek*, the socket

hlavní žíla, *hlăvñee ž.* } the
 srdeční žíla, *serdechñee ž.* } artery
 tepna, f. *těpnă*, the pulse
 žilka, f. *žilkă*, a small vein;
 žilnatý, á, é *žilnātee*, sinewy
 krev, f. *krěf*, the blood
 krevnatý, á, é *krěvnātee*, full blooded
 chudokrevný, á, é *khūdokrěvnee*,
 bloodless, anaemic
 krvavý, á, é *kervāvee*, bloody
 vlas, *vläss* } the hair on the head
 vlasy, pl. }
 chlup, *khlüp* } the hair on the body
 chlupy, pl. }
 vlasatý, á, é *vläsātee* } hairy
 chlupatý, á, é *khlüpätee* }
 vnitřnosti, *vñitrsh-nostě*, viscera;
 uvnitř, *üvñitrsh* } inside, inwardly;
 vně, *vñe* }
 zevnitř, *zevñitrsh* } outside, outwardly.
 zevně, *zevñe* }

čelo, n. *chellö*, the forehead
 tvář, f. *tvársh* } the cheek
 líce, n. *leetsě* }
 tvář, f. *tvársh* } the face
 obličej, m. *oblichey* }
 lícní kost, *leetsñee kost*, the cheek-
 bone
 čelist, f. *chellist*, the jaw-bone
 brada, f. *brăďă*, the chin
 laloch, m. *lălok*, double chin
 důlek, m. *doolek*, the dimple
 vrásky, pl. m. *vrássky*, the wrinkles.

oční jablko, *ochñee yăbēlkö*, the eye-
 ball
 koutek, m. *koútek*, the corner

rohovka, f. *rohofkă*, the cornea
duhovka, f. *dăhofkă*, the iris
zřítelnice, f. *zrsheetelñitsě*, the pupil
klapka, f. *klăpkă*, the eyelid

Ucho, n. *ŭkhď*, the ear
uší, pl. *ŭshí*, the ears

Nos, n. *nöss*, the nose
špička nosu, *shpichkă nossű*, the tip
 of the nose.

Ústa, pl. *oostă*, the mouth
pysk, m. *pisk* } the lip
ret, m. *ret* }

Zub, m. *zuby*, pl. *zűb*, *zűby*, the
 tooth, the teeth
přední zuby, *prshed-ñee zűby*, the
 fore-teeth
zadní zuby, *zădñee zűby*, the back-
 teeth
špičák, m. *shpicháky*, the canines

Vousy, pl. *foűsy*, the beard
licousy, pl. *litsoűsy*, the whiskers
Hrdlo, n. *herďlď*, the throat
krk, m. *k^erk*, the neck
hrtán, m. *hertán* } the larynx
chřtán, m. *hrshtán* }
hrdelnice, f. *herdell-ñitsě*, the jugu-
 lar vein;

Trup, m. *trűp*, the trunk
hrud', f. *hrűď*, the chest
prsá, pl. *persă*, the breast
žebro, n. *žebrď*, the rib

řasy, pl. *rshăssy*, the eyelashes
brvy, pl. *bervy* } the eyebrows
obočí, n. *obďchee* }

konec ucha, *kőnets ŭkhă*, the tip of
 the ear;
laloček, m. *lăľőchek*, the lobe

chřípě, pl. *khrshee-pyě* } the
nosové dírky, pl. *nosso-* } nostrils
vě d'eerky }

pysky, pl. } the lips
rty, pl. }

stolička, f. *stolichkă*, the molar
kořen zubu, *korshěn zűbű*, the root
 of the tooth;
dáseň, f. *dásseň*, the gum
dásně, pl. *dássñe*, the gums
patro, n. *pătrď*, the roof of the mouth
jazyk, m. *yăzyk*, the tongue.

kníry, pl. *kñeery*, the moustaches
plnovous, m. *pelnőfoűs*, the full beard
průdušnice, f. *proodűshnitsě*, the
 windpipe
mandle, pl. *măndlě*, the tonsils, the
 almonds;
ohryzek, m. *ďhryzěk*, Adam's apple.

klíční kost, f. *kleechñee kost*, the
 collar-bone
prsni kost, f. *persñee kost*, the
 breast-bone

záda, pl. *zádā*, the back
zadek, m. *zādek*, the back part, the
 backside;

předeck, m. *prshēdek*, the fore-part,
 the front;

hřbet, m. *hrshbet* } the backbone,
páteř, f. *pātersh* } the spine;

Život, m. *život*, the abdomen

břícho, n. *brshikhō*, the belly

pupek, m. *pūpek*, the navel

bok, m. *bōk*, the hip

slabina, f. *slābinā*, the side

kříž, *krsheež*, the small of the back;

zadnice, f. *zādñitsě*, the seat, the
 bottom;

půlky, pl. f. *poolky*, } the
zadní tváře, pl. f. *zādñee* } buttocks
tvārshě

Ruka, f. *rūkā*, the hand

ruce, pl. *rūtsě*, the hands; **v rukou**,
vrūkoř, in the hands; **na**
rukou, *nār.*, on the hands

ramě, n. *rāmyě* } the arm

paže, n. *pāže* }

dolní část paže, *doñee chást pāže*,
 the fore-arm

horní část paže, *horñee chást p.*, the
 upper arm

rameno, n. *rāmenō* } the shoulder or
paždí, n. *pāždíee* } top of the arm;

podpaždí, n. *podpāždí*, the armpit

loket, m. *lōket*, the elbow

přehyb, m. *prshēhib*, the wrist

pěst, f. *pyěst*, the fist

zlatá žíla, f. *zlātā žeelā*, the spinal
 cord;

plece, sing. & pl. *pletsě*, the shoulder

lopatka, f. *lopātkā*, the shoulder-blade

obratel, m. *obrātel*, vertebra

obratle, pl. *obrātlě*, vertebrae.

řiť, f. *rshiť*, the anus

pohlaví, n. *pohlāvee*, the sex

pohlavní úd, m. *pohlāvñee ood*, the
 sexual parts

mužský úd, m. *mūskee ood*, the penis

zálupa, f. *zālūpā*, the fore-skin

varle, (pl. *varlata*), *varlē*, the tes-
 ticle

rodidla, pl. *rodídlā*, the genitals.

kloub, m. *kloūb*, the joint

dlaň, f. *dlāñ*, the palm

prst, m. *p^{er}st*, the finger

palec, m. *pālets*, the thumb

malík, m. *māleek*, the little finger

ukazovák, *ūkāzovák*, the forefinger

prostřední prst, *prostrshedñee p^{er}st*,
 the middle finger

článek prstu, m. *chlānēk p^{er}stū*, the
 phalange

špička prstu, f. *shpichkā p^{er}stū*,
 the tip of the finger;

nehet, m. *nēhet*, the nail

nehty, pl. *nēhty*, the nails

kotník, m. *koñneek*, the knuckle

kloub, m. *kloūb*, the joint.

Noha, f. *nõhã*, the leg, the foot;
nohy, pl. *nõhy*, the legs, the feet;
chodidlo, n. *khod'idlõ*, the foot
tlapa, f. *tlãpã*, the sole of the foot;
stehno, n. *stẽhnõ*, the thigh
stehenní kost, f. *stẽhẽnee kost*, the
 thigh-bone
hnát, m. *hnát*, the shin
lýtko, n. *leetkõ*, the calf of the leg;
koleno, n. *kolẽnõ*, the knee
přehyb kolena, m. *prshẽhyb kolẽnã*,
 the knee-joint

Srdce, n. *s'erdse*, the heart
osrdí, n. *oss'erd'ee*, the pericardium
komora, f. *kõmorã*, the ventricle
plice, pl. *pleetsẽ*, the lungs
játra, pl. *yátra*, the liver
slezina, f. *slezinã*, the spleen
ledvina, f. *ledvinã*, the kidney
měchýř, m. *myẽkheersh*, the bladder
žluč, f. *žlũch*, the gall, the bile;

Ústrojí, n. *oostroyee*, organism, con-
 stitution;
dýchati, *deekhãt*, to breathe
dýchání, n. *deekhãñi*, breathing, res-
 piration;
dýchací ústrojí, *deekhãtsee oostroyee*,
 respiratory organs;
dech, m. *dẽkh*, the breath;
lehký dech, *lẽhkee dẽkh*, easy breath-
 ing;
těžký dech, *tẽshkee dẽkh*, heavy
 breathing;
dechnutí, n. *dẽkhñũt'ee*, one breath

pata, f. *pãtã*, the heel
prsty u nohy, pl. *p'ersty ů nõhy*,
 the toes
palec u nohy, m. *pãlets ů nõhy*, the
 big toe;
malík u nohy, m. *mãleek ů nõhy*,
 the little toe;
kotník, m. *kotñeek*, the ankle
plosko-nohý, *ploskõ-nõhee*, flat-foot-
 ed;
kolo-nohý, *kolõ-nõhee*, bow-legged.

žluční měchýř, m. *žlũchñee m.*, the
 gall-bladder
žaludek, m. *žãlũdek*, the stomach
střevo, n. *strshẽvõ*, the intestine, the
 gut;
střeva, pl. *strshẽvã*, the bowels
tenká střeva, the lesser intestines
tlustá střeva, *tlũstã s.* the larger in-
 testines;
konečník, m. *konechñeek*, the rectum.

vydechnouti, *vydẽkhnoũt*, to draw
 breath;
vydechnouti ze sebe, v. *zẽ sěbẽ*, to
 exhale, to force out the
 breath;
vdechnouti do sebe, *vdẽkhnoũt dõ*
sěbẽ, to inhale;
oddechnouti si, *odẽkhnoũt si*, to
 breathe easily, to feel re-
 lief;
trávití, *trãvit* } to digest, to con-
ztrávití, *strãvit* { sume;
zažívatí, *zãžeevãt*, to digest

trávení, n. *tráveňi* } digestion
 zažívání, n. *zážeeváníi* }
 zažívací ústrojí, *zážeevátsee oostro-*
yee, digestive apparatus;
 moč, m. *moch*, the urine
 močení, n. *mochěňi*, urination
 močiti, *mochit*, to urinate
 stolice, f. *stolitsě*, stool, evacuation;
 míti stolici, *meet stolitsi*, to go to
 stool; to have open bowels;
 výkal, *veekál*, the excrement, the
 discharge;
 lejno, n. *leyno* } the dung
 trus, m. *trüss* }
 oběh krve, m. *obyěh kerve*, circula-
 tion of the blood;
 krváceti, *kervátset*, to bleed
 krvácení, n. *kervátseňi*, the bleeding
 měsíčné, n. *myěseechné*, the men-
 struation
 plod, m. *plöd*, the fruit
 ploditi, *plödít*, to bear (fruit etc.);
 to beget;

Duch, m. *dúkh*, the spirit; the mind
 or intellect;
 duše, f. *dúshě*, the soul
 duchovní, *dúkhovněe* } spiritual,
 duševní, *dúshěvňee* } intellectual;
 mysl, f. *missl*, the mind
 důmysl, m. *doomissl* } the intellect
 schop, m. *skhōp* }
 rozum, m. *rozūm*, the reason, the
 understanding;
 zdravý rozum, *zdrávee rozūm*, com-
 mon sense;
 soudnost, f. *soūdnost*, the judgment

plození, n. *plōzeňi*, the bearing, the
 begetting;
 porod, m. the childbirth
 poroditi, *porōdít*, to be delivered;
 pracovati ku porodu, *prátsovat kŭ*
porōdŭ, to be in labor;
 šestinedělí, n. *shěstinedělee*, lying-in
 šestinedělka, f. *shěstinedělkā*, a
 woman in childbed;
 je těhotná, *yě tēhōtná*, she is with
 child;
 čeká se do kouta, *cheká sě dō kouťā*,
 she expects to be confined;
 je v koutě, *yě fkoůťe* } she is confined,
 slehla, *slěhlā* } (in childbed);
 po koutě, *pō kouťe*, after childbirth,
 after confinement;
 obeování, n. *obtsōváníi*, the inter-
 course
 obeovati, *obtsōvāt*, to have inter-
 course;
 pohlavní obeování, *pohlávňee o.*
 tělesné obeování, *tělessné o.*
 sexual intercourse.

mysl, *smissl*, the sense
 zrak, m. *zrāk*, the sight
 sluch, m. *slúkh*, the hearing
 chuť, f. *khŭť*, the taste
 čich, cit, m. *chíkh, tsít*, the smell,
 the feeling;
 hmat, m. *hmāt*, the touch
 paměť, f. *pāmyět*, the memory
 smyslný, á, é *smisslnee*, sensual
 smyslnost, f. *smisslnost*, sensuality
 nesmysl, m. *něsmissl*, nonsense
 nesmyslný, á, é *něsmisslnee*, sense-
 less, nonsensical.

A sound body, — a sound mind.

A sound mind in a sound body.

I have sound limbs, — and that is a great gift.

The bone is hollow and contains marrow.

That man is lean but muscular.

That lady has excitable nerves.

Young blood — hot blood.

The pulse beats slowly, — beats fast.

The pulse is normal, — regular, — irregular.

The beating of the heart and the beating of the pulse agree.

Every little vein in the body contains blood.

Fair hair and blue eyes prevail in the north, — dark hair and black eyes in the south.

Long hair, short wit, — says an old proverb.

The European race has a white skin, the Af-

Zdravé tělo, — zdravý duch.

Zdravý duch ve zdravém těle.

Mám zdravé údy, — a to jest veliký dar.

Kost je dutá a obsahuje morek.

Ten člověk je hubený, ale svalnatý.

Ta dáma má popudlivé nervy.

Mladá krev — horká krev.

Tepna bije pomalu, — bije prudce.

Tepna je normální, — pravidelná, — nepravidelná.

Tlukot srdce a bití tepny se shodnou (or shodují).

Každá žilka v těle obsahuje krev.

Plavý vlas a modré oči panují (or panují) na severu, — tmavý vlas a černé oči na jihu.

Dlouhé vlasy, krátký rozum, praví staré přísloví.

Plemeno evropské má bílou pleť, plemeno

zdravé tělo, — zdravee důkh.

zdravee důkh vě zdravém těle.

mám zdravé oody, — ā to yest velikee dar.

kost yě dutá ā obsākhūyě morek.

ten chlovýěk yě hūběnee, ālē svalnātee.

tā dāmā má popūdlivě nervy.

mlādā krev — horkā krev.

tepnā biyě pomālū, — biyě prūdsě.

tepnā yě normālěee, — prāvīdelnā, — něprāvīdelnā.

tlūkot sěrdsě ā biěěetepny sě s-hodūyoū.

každā žilkā fětelě obsākhūyě krev.

plāvee vlās ā modré ōchi pānūyěe nā sěvěrū, — tmāvee vlās ā cherně ōchi nā yěehū.

dloūhě vlāsy, krátkeee rozūm, — pravee stārě prsěeslōvee.

plěmendě ěvropskěe mā beeloū plěě, plěmendě

rican race a black skin.

Youth has a smooth face,—old age makes wrinkles.

A high forehead, a keen eye, long moustaches, — such was the young man.

The eyes are the organ of sight, the ears (are the organ of) hearing;—the nose is the organ of smell.

Young girls usually have coral lips.

Babies have chubby cheeks.

You still have a full set of teeth (literally: "all the teeth").

I have all (my) front teeth, but a few molars are wanting;— I had them pulled.

Why did you have them pulled? — Because they ached me; they were decayed.

A decayed tooth always aches; — it is best to pull it out.

The pulling of teeth is a painful operation,

africké černou.

**Mládí má hladké líce,
— stáří dělá vrásky.**

**Vysoké čelo, bystré oko,
dlouhé kníry, —
takový byl mladík.**

**Oči jsou orgán zraku,
uši sluchu; — nos je
nástroj čichu.**

**Mladé dívky mívají ko-
ralové rty.**

**Děcka mají boubelaté
tváře.**

**Vy ještě máte všechny
zuby.**

**Mám všechny přední
zuby, ale pár stoli-
ček mi chybí; — dal
jsem je vytrhnouti.**

**Proč jste je dal trhati?
— Proto že mě bo-
lely; byly vyžrané.**

**Vyžraný zub vždycky
bolí; nejlíp ho vytr-
hnouti.**

**Trhání zubů je bolest-
ná operace, — ob-**

āfritské chernoū.

*mláďee má hladké leetsě,
— stárshee ďelá vráss-
ky.*

*visoké chellō, bistré okō,
dloūhé kñeery, — tākō-
vee bill mláďeek.*

*ochi soū orgán zrákū,
ūshi slūkhū; — noss
yě nástroy chikhū.*

*mládě ďeefky meevāyee
korāľové rti.*

*ďetskā māyee boūbellātē
tvārshē.*

*vy yeshtē máte fshēkh
ny zūby.*

*mám fshēkhny prshēd-
ñee zūby; ālē pár sto-
lichek me khībee; —
dāl sem yě vyterhnoūt
proch stē yě dāl terhāt?
— proto že myě bolē-
ly; billi vižrāné.*

*vyžranee zūb ditsky bo-
lee; — neyleep hō vy-
t^erhnoūt.*

*t^erhāñee zūboo yě bolest-
ná ōperātsē, — obzlāshē*

— especially when the tooth has a big root.

Children lose the milk-teeth; — they fall out of themselves.

With the teeth we bite; hence they are of a very hard substance.

The teeth are set (liter. "sit") in the jaw-bone

The windpipe carries the air into the lungs, where the blood is oxydized.

The ribs inclose the thoracic cavity. — There are true ribs and false ribs.

The spinal column is composed of links; which we call vertebrae.

Burdens are most easily carried (i. e. "we carry") on shoulders.

The hand is an exceedingly important member. — The hand has five fingers.

The negroes usually have strong arms.

Whoever walks a great deal, must have sound legs.

The stubbing of the big toe causes pain.

zvlášť má-li zub velký kořen.

Děti ztrácejí mléčné zuby; — vypadají samy.

Zuby kousáme; proto jsou z velmi tvrdé látky.

Zuby sedí v čelisti.

Průdušnice vede vzduch do plic, kde krev se okysličí.

Žebra zavírají hrudní dutinu. — Jsou pravá žebra a falešná žebra.

Páteř skládá se ze článků, které nazýváme obratle.

Břemena nosíme nejšnáze na plecích.

Ruka jest úd nesmírně důležitý. — Ruka má pět prstů.

Negrové mívají silné paže.

Kdo chodí mnoho pěšky, musí mít zdravé nohy.

Zakopnutí palce u nohy dělá bolest.

*má-li zub velkee koř-
shěn.*

*děti strátsee mléčné
zuby; — vypadáye
samy.*

*zuby koušámě; proto
sou zvellmi tvrdé lát-
ky.*

zuby sěd'ee fchělísti.

*proodůshñitsě vědě
vzdůkh dō plits, gde
kref sě okyslichee.*

*žebra zaveerāyee hrūd-
ñee důt'inū. — sou
prává žebra ā fālesh-
ná žebra.*

*pátersh skládá sě zě
chlānkoo, které nā-
zeevāmě obrāt'lě.*

*brshēmēnā noseemě ney-
snāzě nā pletseekh.*

*rūkā yest ood nēsmeer-
ñe doolēžitee. — rūkā
mā pyět perstoo.*

*nēgrové meevāyee silné
pāžě.*

*gdō khođ'ee mnōhō
pyēshky, mūsee meet
zdrāvē nōhy.*

*zakopnut'ee pāltsě ū nō-
hy d'elā bōlest.*

The digestive apparatus is a vital organ.
Food is digested in the stomach and in the bowels.

**Zaživací ústrojí jest životní orgán.
Pokrm ztráví se v žaludku a ve střevách.**

*žážeévátsee oostroyee
jest životněe orgán.
pokerm strávee se v žáludkū ā vĕ strshĕvákĥ.*

VOCABULARY.

Dar, m. *dār*, the gift
tlukot, m. *tlūkot*, the beating
kyslík, m. *kissleek*, oxygen
okysličití, *okisslichit*, to oxygenate
dusík, m. *düsseek*, nitrogen
vzduch, m. *vzdūkh*, the air
pokrm, m. *pokerm*, the food
orgán, m. }
nástroj, m. *nástroy* } the organ
článek, m. *chlánek*, the link
neger, m. *neger*, the negro
mládí, n. *mládĕe*, youth
mladík, m. *mládĕeek*, the young man
 dívka, f. *dĕefka*, the girl
látka, f. *látka*, the material, the stuff;
žilka, f. *žilka*, a small vein;
pleť, f. the skin
příslloví, n. *prsheeslovee*, the proverb
plemeno, n. *plĕměňĕ* }
plémě, n. *plĕmyĕ* } the race
břemeno, n. *brshĕmenĕ*, the burden
dutý, á, é *dŭtee*, hollow
prudký, á, é *prŭdkee*, fast
prudce, adv. *prŭdsĕ*, fast, rapidly;
popudlivý, á, é *pŏpŭdlivee*, excitable
normální, *normálnĕe*, normal
pravidelný, *právidelnee*, regular
pravý, á, é *právee*, true, right;
falešný, á, é *fálĕshnee*, false

plavý, á, é *plávee*, fair, blonde;
koralový, á, é *korálovee*, coral (adj.)
boubelatý, á, é *boŭbělātee*, chubby
bolestný, á, é *bolestnee*, painful
vyžraný, á, é *vyžrānee*, decayed
důležitý, á, é *doolĕžitee*, important
takový, á, é *tākovee*, such
nesmírně, *nĕsmeerĕe*, exceedingly
pěšky, *pyĕshky*, on foot
obsahovati, *obsāhŏvāt*, to contain
panovati, *pānovāt*, to reign, to prevail;
shodovati se, *shodŏvāt sĕ*, to agree
chyběti, *khibyĕt*, to be wanting;
trhati, *terhāt*, to pull, to tear;
trhání, n. *terhāĕe*, the pulling
vytrhnout, *vyterhnoŭt*, to pull out;
padati, *pādāt*, to fall
vypadati, *vypāddāt* }
vypadnouti, *vypādnŏŭt* } to fall out;
kousati, *koŭsāt*, to bite
nazývati, *nāzeevāt*, to call (by a name)
skládati se (ze), *sklādāt sĕ*, to be composed (of);
zavíratí, *záveevāt*, to inclose (also "to shut");
zakopnouti, *zākopnoŭt*, to stub;
zakopnutí, n. *zākopnŭtĕe*, the stubbing.

Disease and cure.

NEMOC a LÉČENÍ.

Nemoc, *němots*, sickness, illness, disease;

lehká nemoc, *lěhká n.* light disease;

těžká nemoc, *těžká n.* acute or dangerous disease;

nemocen, *cna, cno němotsen* } sick,
nemocný, *á, é*) němotsnee* } ill, diseased

těžce nemocen, *těshtsě n.* very sick, dangerously sick;

býti nemocen, *beet němotsěn* } to be
stonati, *stonăt* } sick;

roznemoci se, *rőzněmōtsi sě* } to fall
rozstonati se, *rōstonăt sě,* } sick; to
betaken
sick;

choroba, *f. khōrobā*, ailment, affection;

chorobný, *á, é khōrobnee*, ailing, affected;

marod, (*coloq.*) *mārod*, ailing, sickly;

maroditi, *mārodīt*, to be ailing;

neduh, *m. nědūh* } ailment, affection,
neduživost, *f. nědū-* } infirm-
živost, } ity, disorder;

neduživý, *á, é nědūživěe*, ailing, infirm;

neduživec, *m. nědūživets,* } sickly or
maroda, *m. mārodā* } infirm
person;

mrzák, *m. merzák*, cripple

zmrzačiti, *zmerzāchīt*, to cripple

zmrzačen, *a, o**)* *zmerzāchěn* { crip-
zmrzačený, *á, é zmerzāchěnee* } pled
zmrzačenost, *f. zmerzāchěnost*, the
crippled condition;

rána, *f. ránā*, the wound

raniti, *rānīt* } to wound
poraniti, *porānīt* }

raněný, *á, é rāněnee*, wounded

poranění, *n. porāněnee* } the wound-
úraz, *m. oorāz* } ing, a hurt
or injury;

ublížiti, *ūbležīt* } to hurt,

uškoditi, *ūshkodīt* } to injure;

uhoditi, *ūhodīt*, to strike, to hurt
by striking;

pohmožiti, *pōhmoždīt*, to bruise;

pohmoždění, *n. pōhmožděnee*, the
bruising, a bruise;

uskřípnouti, *ūskrsheepnoūt*, to jam,
to squeeze;

uskřípnutí, *n. ūskrsheepnūtěe*, a
contusion by squeezing;

říznouti, *rsheeznoūt*, to cut

říznutí, *n. rsheeznūtěe* } a cut;

řez, *m. rshěz* }

píchnouti, *peekhnoūt* } to stab, to
bodnouti, *bodnoūt* } pierce, to prick;

kousnouti, *koūsnoūt*, to bite

kousnutí, *n. koūsnnūtěe*, a bite.

*) **Nemocný** is the definite, **nemocen** the indefinite adjective. See Note 2 on page 103.

) **Zmrzačen is the passive participle (see Lesson XXXVII), from which the adjective **zmrzačený** is derived.

Lekař, m. *lékarsh*, the physician
doktor, m. *doktör*, the doctor
lékařství, n. *lékarsh-stwee*, the medical profession;

lékařský, *lékarshskee*, medical
porodní lékař, *přoroďnee lékarsh*, the accoucheur

porodní bába, *p. bábě* } the midwife

babička, *bábichka* }

ranhojič, m. *ránhōyich*, the surgeon

zubní lékař, *zůbnee lékarsh*, the dentist

vyléčiti, *vyléchit*, }

vyhojiti, *vyhōyit* } to cure, to heal

uzdraviti, *ūzdrāvit* }

vyléčení, **vyhojení**, **uzdravení**, the cure

uzdraviti se, *ūzdrāvīt sě* } to get

pozdraviti se, *pozdrāvīt sě* } well,

vystonati se, *vystōnāt sě* } to recover;

umřítí, *ūmršheet*, }

zemřítí, *zembrsheet* } to die

skonati, *skonāt* }

Bolest, f. *bolest* } the pain,

bolení, n. *bolēñi* } the ache;

bolení břicha, *b. brshikhā*, belly-ache

kolika, f. *kolikā*, the colic

mám bolení, I have a pain in the

bowels or stomach;

bolení hlavy, *b. hlāvy*, head-ache

„ **zubů**, *b. zůbů*, tooth-ache

bolest v životě, *b. vživot'e*, pain in the abdomen;

„ **v kříži**, *b. fkršhee-ži*, pain in the small of the back;

umíratí, *ūmeerāt*, to be dying;

vypustiti ducha, *vypŭsťit dŭkhā*, to

breathe one's last;

smrt, f. *smert*, the death

náhlá smrt, *náhlá s.*, sudden death

prohlédnouti, *prohlédnout* } to exam-

proskoumati, *proskoŭmat* } ine, to

vyšetřiti, *vyshětrshīt* } probe;

raditi se, *rādīt sě*, to consult

předeepsati, *prshěděpsāt*, to prescribe

dieta, *de-atā* }

mírnost v jídle, *meernost v-yeedlě* } the diet

scházeti, *skhāzet* } to be

chřadnouti, *khrrshādnōūt* } sinking;

sbíratí se, *sbeerāt sě*, to be recover-

ing;

hubnouti, *hŭbnoūt*, to lose flesh;

tloustnouti, *tloŭstnoūt*, to gain flesh;

slábnouti, *slābnoūt*, to grow weak;

sílití, *seelīt*, to gain strength;

slabost, f. *slābost*, weakness

síla, f. *seelā*, strength.

bolest v zádech, *b. vzáděkh*, pain in

the back;

„ **v noze (v nohou)**, *b. vnōžě (v-nōhōŭ)*, pain in the leg, or

foot (in the legs, or feet);

„ **v ruce (v rukou)**, *b. vrŭtsě (v-rŭkoŭ)*, pain in the hand,

or arm (in the hands, or

arms);

bolest u srdce, *b. ŭserdsě*, pain in the heart-region;

„ **uvnitř**, *b. ŭvnitřsh*, pain inside

bolestný, *á, é bolestnee*, painful
 bolavý, *á, é bolávee*, sore
 bolák, *m.* the sore
 boule, *f.* *boŭlě*, a boil, a bump;
 vřed, *m.* *vrshěd*, ulcer
 krtice, *pl.* *kerťitsě*, scrofula
 rak, *m.* *rāk*, cancer
 otok, *m.* *ōtōk*, a swelling;
 oteklý, *á, é ōtěklee*, swelled, swollen
 oteci, *otětsi*, to swell
 horký, *á, é horkee*, hot
 horkost, *f.* } the heat, the fe-
 rozpálenost, *f.* } ver, the feverishness

Zápal, *m.* *zápāl* } inflammation
 zánět, *m.* *zāñet* }
 zapálený, *á, é zápálěnee* } inflamed
 zanícený, *á, é zāñeetsěnee* }
 zápal plic, *zápāl plits*, inflammation
 of the lungs;
 zápal mozku, *z.* *mōzku*, inflamma-
 tion of the brain;
 ,, mozkové blány, *z.* *mōzkové*
blány, meningitis;
 zápal střev, *z.* *strshěf*, inflamma-
 tion of the bowels;
 zápal pobřišnice, *z.* *pobrshishñitsě*,
 peritonitis;
 ,, pohrudnice, *z.* *pohrudñitsě*,
 pleurisy;
 souchoť, *pl.* *soŭkhoťe* }
 úbytě, *pl.* *oobyťe* } the con-
 tuberkule, *pl.* *tūberkulě* } sumption;
 ochroma, *ōkhromā* }
 ochrnutí, *ōkhernūtěe* } paralysis
 mrtvice, *f.* *mertvitsě*, apoplexy
 záškrt, *m.* *záshkert*, diphtheria

rozpálen, *a, o rozpálěn*, feverish;
 horečka, *f.* *horěchkā* } the ty-
 horká nemoc, *horkā němots* } phus
 hlavníčka, *f.* *hlávñichkā* } fever;
 zimnice, *f.* *zimñitsě*, the ague
 žlutá zimnice, *žlūtā z.* the yellow-
 fever;
 mraziti, *mrāzīt*, to chill
 mrazení, *n.* *mrāzěñi*, a chill, a shiver
 mrazí mě, *mrāzee myě*, I feel a chill;
 trásti se zimou, *trshást sě zimoŭ*, to
 shiver with cold.

krup, *m.* *krŭp*, the croup
 psotník, *m.* *psottñeek*, the fits
 spála, *m.* *spālā* } the measles
 šarlát, *m.* *shārlāt* }
 osutiny, *pl.* *ossŭťiny*, the chicken-
 pox
 neštovice, *pl.* *neshtōvitsě*, the small-
 pox
 očkovati, *ōchkovāt*, to vaccinate
 očkování, *ōchkovāñi*, vaccination
 očkovaný, *á, é ōchkovānee*, vacci-
 nated
 výraz, *m.* *veerāz*, eruption
 vyražený, *á, é vyrāžěnee*, full of
 eruption;
 kožní nemoc, *f.* *kožñee němots*, skin-
 disease;
 lišej, *m.* *lishey*, the lichen
 mol, *m.* the ringworm
 svrab, *m.* the itch
 svrběti, *sverbyět*, to itch
 strup, *m.* *strŭp*, the scab, the scurf;
 strupovitý, *á, é strŭpōvitee*, scabby

hostec, m. *hostěts* } rheumatism
 revma, n. *revmā* }
 hostečný, *hostěchnee* } rheu-
 revmatický, *revmātskee* } matic
 srdeční vada, f. *serděchnee vādā*,
 heart-disease;

vodnatelnost, f. *vōdnātellnost*, drop-
 sy;
 vodnatelný, á, é *vōdnātellnee*, drop-
 sical

záduch, m. *zādūkh*, asthma
 zádušlivý, á, é *zādūshlivee*, asthmatic
 kašel, m. *kāshell*, the cough
 modrý kašel, *modree k.*, the whoop-
 ing cough

kašlati, *kāshlāt*, to cough
 vyhazovati, *vyhāžōvāt*, to throw up;
 dávit, *dāvit* } to vomit
 blít, *bleet* }
 dávení, n. *dāvēñi* } the vomiting;
 blít, n. *blitēe* }

Zlomiti, *zломit* } to break
 zlámati, *zlāmāt* }
 zlomený, á, é *zломěnee*, broken
 zlámanina, f. *zlāmāñinā* } a broken
 zlomenina, f. *zlōm.* } bone, a
 fracture;
 puklá kost, f. *pūklā kost*, a cracked
 bone;

vymknouti, *vymknōūt*, to dislocate;
 vymknouti kloub, v. *kloūb*, to sprain
 a joint;

vymknutí, n. *vymknūťee*, a disloca-
 tion, a sprain;

srovnati kost, *srōvnāt kost*, to set a
 bone;

křeče, pl. *krshězhě*, cramps
 mdloba, f. faintness, fainting fit;
 mdlý, á, é *mdlee*, faint;
 omdleti, *ōmdlět*, to faint, to swoon;
 omdlévání, n. *ōmdlěvāñi*, fainting
 fits, swooning.

nezáživnost, f. *nězāživnost* }
 špatné trávení, n. *shpātné* } indi-
tráveñi } gestion

záživný, á, é *zāživnee*, digestible
 nezáživný, *nězāživnee*, indigestible
 větry, pl. *vyětry* } wind, flatu-
 nadouvání, n. *nādōvāñi* } leuce;
 nadýmání, n. *nādeemāñi*

nadmŕtý, á, é *nādmŕtee*, flatulent
 běhavka, f. *byěhāfka*, the
 průjem, m. *prooyem* } diarrhea
 zástava, f. *zástāvā* } stoppage in
 těžká stolice, *těshká* } the bowels,
stolitsě, } constipation,
 costiveness;

úplavice, f. *ooplāvitsě*, dysentery.

dáti do desek, *dāt dō dēssek*, to splint
 obvázáti ránu, *ōbvāzāt ránū*, to dress
 a wound;

obvazek, m. *ōbvāzek*, a dressing, a
 bandage;

průtrž, m. *prootěrs*, the rupture

průtržní pás, m. the truss

hrb, m. *hěrb*, a hump, a hunch;

hrbáč, *hěrbách*, a humpback;

hrbatý, á, é *hěrbātee*, humpbacked;

kulhati, *kūlhāt*, to walk lamely;

kulhavý, á, é *kūlhāvee* } lame

chromý, á, é *khromee* }
 dopadati, *dōpāddāt*, to halt,

It is said that Mr. Hanush is sick.

Is he laid up?—Yes, he took to his bed.

Is he very sick? — I think it is serious.

Call a physician.—Send for a doctor.

We have sent for him.
— The doctor has been here already.

When was Mr. Hanush taken sick?—Yesterday morning; all at once he felt a chill, then he felt feverish.

What is the trouble?—What disease has he?

I think it is inflammation of the lungs.

That would be dangerous.—What does the physician say?

The doctor thinks that he has inflammation of the lungs.

Then I pity him.

How is Mr. Swoboda to-day? is he better?

Always the same thing; — no better, no worse; — there is no change.

Pan Hanuš je prý nemocen.

Leží? — Ano, ulehnul.

Je mu tuze zle? — Myslím že je to povážlivé.

Zavolejte lékaře.—Pošlete pro doktora.

Poslali jsme pro něj.
— Doktor už tu byl.

Kdy se pan Hanuš rozstonal? — Včera ráno; z nenadání dostal mrazení, pak horkost.

Co je mu?—Nač se rozstonal?

Myslím že na zánět plic.

To by bylo nebezpečné. — Co povídá lékař?

Doktor myslí že má zápal plic.

To ho lituju.

Jak je panu Svobodovi dnes? Je mu líp?

Pořád stejně; — ani líp, ani hůř; — nic se to nemění.

pán hānūsh yě prey němotsěn.

ležee? — ānō, ůlēhnul.

yě mū toožē zlē? — misleem že yě tō pōvážlivé.

zāvoleyť lēkārshē.—pōshlētē prō dōktorā.

pōslāli smē prō űey.—dōktor ůsh tū bil.

gdy sě pān h. rostōnāl? — fcherā rānō; znēnādāñi dostāl mrāžēñi, pāk horkost.

tsō yě mū? — nāch sě rostōnāl?

misleem že nā zāñet plits.

tō bi billō nēbespēchnē. — tsō poveedā lēkarsh?

dōktor mislee že mā zāpāl plits.

tō hō litūyū.

yāk yě pānū swōbōdōvi dnēs? yě mū leep?

porshād steyñe; — āñi leep, āñi hoorsh; — ñits sě tō nemyēñee.

It does not grow worse,
— it doesn't grow
better.

What disease has he?—
What is his disease?
—What ails him?

The physician himself
doesn't know yet;—
until it develops.*)—
It is not known what
will come of it.

I hope it will not be so
bad.

I hope he will recover.
— Perhaps he will
soon get well.

I don't know if he will
get over it. — Who
knows if he will get
well.

He is well along in
years already.

Well, he needs good
nursing. — Give him
the best care possible.

We nurse him faith-
fully.—We tend him
as best we can.

Yes, tend him as well

Nehorší se to, — ne-
lepší se to.

Co má za nemoc?—Ja-
kou má nemoc? —
Nač stůně?

Lékař sám neví ještě;
— až jak se to uká-
že. — Neví se co z
toho bude.

Doufám že nebude to
tak zlé.

Doufám že z toho vy-
jde. — Snad se brzo
uzdraví.

Nevím vyjde-li z toho.
— Kdož ví jestli z
toho vyjde.

Už je v letech.

Inu, potřebuje dobré
ošetření.—Dejte mu
všemožnou péči.

Ošetřujeme ho pilně.
— Sloužíme mu co
nejlíp můžeme.

Ano, služte mu co

něhorshee sě tō — ne-
lepshee sě tō.

tsō má zā němots? —
yākoū má němots? —
nāch stooñe?

lékarsh sám něvee yesh-
te; — āsh yāk sě tō
ūkáže. — něvee sě tsō
stōhō būdě.

doūfám že něbūdē tō
tūk zlé.

doūfám že stōhō veedē.
— snād sě berzō ū-
zdrāvee.

něveem veedēli stōhō. —
gdōž vee yestli stōhō
veedē.

ūsh yē vletēkh.

inū, potrshēbūyē dobré
oshētrshēñi.—deytē mū
fshēmožnou péchi.

ōshētrshūyēmē hō pil-
ñe.—sloūžemē mū tsō
neyleep moožemē.

āñō, slūshētē mū tsō

*) Až jak se to ukáže, — until it shows itself or develops, — is in fact an elliptical sentence, meaning: "We must wait, until it develops". Sentences of this character are frequently used; for instance:

Až jak bude, "until (we see) how it will be;" — "(it depends upon) how it will be".

Až jak to dopadne, "until (we see) how it will come out"; — (it depends upon) how it will come out".

as you can. — Nurse him in every possible manner.

We are with him day and night.

Has the doctor prescribed for him? — Yes, he wrote a prescription.

Have you sent to the drug-store?—We sent there right away. — The druggist prepared it immediately.

The patient takes his medicine regularly.

I hope to God that he will get well.

I hope that he will soon be on his legs.

I fear that he will soon be "on the board" (i. e. dead).

I am afraid that nothing will help him.

I fear that he will die.

Is it true that Mr. Alesh died?

I am sorry to say it is true.

When did he die? — He died at midnight. — He died toward morning.

možná. — Obslužte ho se vším.

Jsmě u něj ve dne v noci.

Předepsal mu doktor? — Ano, napsal recept.

Poslali jste do lékárny? — Poslali jsme tam hned. — Lékárník to připravil okamžitě.

Pacient užívá pravidelně.

Dá bůh že se pozdraví.

Doufám že bude brzo na nohou.

Bojím se že bude brzo na prkně.

Bojím se že nic mu nepomůže*).

Obávám se že umře.

Je to pravda, že pan Aleš umřel?

Bohužel, je to pravda.

Kdy zemřel? — Skonal o půlnoci. — Skonal k ránu.

možná.—obsluště ho se vším.

smě ů ñey vĕ dně vnotsi.

prshĕděpsāl mŭ dōktor?
— āň, nāpsāl rĕt-sept.

pōslāli stĕ dō lékárny?
— pōslāli smě tām hnĕd. — lékárñik tō prshiprāvīl ōkāmžī-tĕ.

pātsient ůžeevā prāvī-deñe.

dā booh že se pozdrá-vee.

doŭfām že būdĕ b^erzō nā nōhoŭ.

boyeem sĕ že būdĕ b^erzō nā p^erknĕ.

boyeem sĕ že ñits mŭ nĕ-pōmoože.

ōbávām se že ůmrshĕ.

yĕ tō prāvďā že pān Alesh ůmrshell?

bōhūžel, yĕ tō prāvďā!

gdy zemrshell?? — skonāl ō poolnotsi. — skonāl kránŭ.

*) See Note 1 on page 36, about double negation.

What did he die of? —
Of inflammation of
the lungs.

Very few get over that,
— at his age.

Indeed very few! —
There was no help for
him. — The doctor
said so right off.

He said: There is no
help for him; — the
desease has been neg-
lected.

He neglected it. — He
sent for the doctor
too late.

He should have sent for
the doctor sooner. —
When the doctor
came, it was too late.

A desease must not be
neglected.

Old Mrs. Hoshek died
this morning.

She died suddenly, —
of heart desease.

She was taken sick and
in half an hour it was
all over with her.

That was a sudden
death.

It is better than to suf-
fer long.

Preserve us from long
suffering!

**Nač umřel!—Na zapá-
lení plíc.**

**Z toho málo kdo vy-
jde,—v jeho věku.**

**Ba málo kdo!—Nebylo
mu žádné pomoci.—
Doktor povídal to
hned.**

**Pravil: Není mu po-
moci;—nemoc je za-
nedbána.**

**Zanedbal to. — Poslal
pro doktora pozdě.**

**Měl poslati pro dokto-
ra dříve.—Když dok-
tor přišel, bylo poz-
dě.**

**Nemoc nesmí se zane-
dbati.**

**Stará paní Hošková
skonala dnes ráno.**

**Zemřela náhle, — na
srdeční vadu.**

**Přišlo jí zle a za půl
hodiny bylo po ní.**

To byla náhlá smrt.

**Je to lepší než trápiti
se dlouho.**

**Jen ne dlouhé trápe-
ní!**

*náč ůmrshell? — nă
zăpăleňi plīts.*

*stôhš málô gďô veedě,
— vyěhš vyěkhš.*

*Bă málô gďô! — nebillô
mŭ žădné pomotsi. —
ďôctor pŏveedăl tŏ
hněd.*

*prăvil: neyňi mŭ po-
motsi; — nēmots yě
zănedbănă.*

*zănedbăl tŏ. — pŏslăl
pro doctŏră pozďe.*

*myěll pŏslăl pro doctŏ-
ră đrsheevě. — gdyž
doctŏr prshishell, billô
pozďe.*

*němo's něsmee sě ză-
nedbăt.*

*stără pănî hoshkŏvă
skonălă duess rănŏ.*

*zemrshellă năhlě, — nă
s'erdechňee văďď.*

*prshishlŏ yee zlē â ză
pool hoďiny billô pŏ
ňi.*

tŏ billă năhlă smert.

*yě tŏ 'lepshee nesh trá-
pit sě dloŭhš.*

yen ně dloŭhé trápěňi.

Chronic consumption is a slow disease; — acute consumption has a quick run.

Drowning is a cruel death; — so is strangling. — Hanging is an easy death, if the neck is broken.

A. took his own life; — he committed suicide
He drowned himself; — he hanged himself. — he poisoned himself; — he shot himself; — he cut his throat; — he thrust a knife into his breast.

And why did he do it? — Most likely he was insane.

Chronické souchotiny jsou zdoluhavá nemoc; — akutní souchotě mají rychlý běh.

Utopení je těžká smrt; udušení taky. — Oběšení je lehká smrt, zlomí-li se vaz.

A. vzal si život; — spáchal samovraždu.

Utopil se; — oběsil se; otrávil se; — zastřelil se; — podřezal si krk; — vrazil si nůž do prsou.

A proč to udělal? — Nejspíš byl šílený.

khronitské soũkhotiny soũ zdloũhává němots; — ákutńee soũkhotě máyee rykhlee byěh.

ũtopenĩ yěťeshká smert; — ůdũshěňi tãke. — obyěshěňi yě ľěhkã smert, zlomee-li sě vãz.

A. vzãl si ůivot; — spãkhãl sãmõvrãždũ.

ũtopil sě; — obyěsil sě; — otrãvil sě; — zãstrshěľil sě; — pod-rshězãl si kerk; — vrãzil si nooŹ dõ per-soũ.

ã proch tõ ůdělãl? — neyspeesh bill sheelěnee.

VOCABULARY.

Nemocný, m. *němotsnee* } the male
patient, m. *pãtsiěnt* } patient;
nemocná, f. *němotsná* } the female
patientka, f. *pãtsiěntkã* } patient;
lékárna, f. *lěkãrnã* } the drug store,
apatyka, f. *ãpãtikã* } the pharmacy;
lékárník, m. *lěkãrńik* } the druggist,
apatykár, m. *ãpãtikãrsh* } ^{the} apothecary;
horkost, f. *horkost*, the fever heat;
mrazení, n. *mrãzěňi*, the chill;
předpis, m. *prshědpis* } the prescrip-
recept, m. *retsept* } tion, receipt,
předepsati, *prshědpsãt*, to prescribe

připraviti, *prshiprãvit*, to prepare;
péče, f. *péchě*, the care
pečovati (o), *pěchovãt*, to care (for);
ošetření, n. *oshětrshěňi*, the nursing
ošetřovati, *oshětrshõvãt*, to nurse,
to tend;
sloužiti, *sloũŹit* } to serve, to wait
obsloužiti, *obsloũŹit* } on, to tend;
potřebovati, *potrshěbõvãt*, to want,
to need;
báti se, *bãt sě*, to fear
obávati se, *obãvãt sě*, to apprehend
trápiti se, *trãpĩt sě*, to suffer

trápení, n. *trápěňi*, the suffering
zanedbati, *zānedbāt*, to neglect
zanedbán, a, o, neglected
měnití se, *myěňit sě*, to change
nemění se, *nemyěňee sě*, it does not
 change;
horšiti se, *horshit sě*, to grow worse
nehorší se, *nehorshee sě*, it does not
 grow worse;
ukázati, *ūkázāt*, to show
ukáže se, *ūkážě sě*, it will show it-
 self;

vyjítí z toho, *ve-yeet stōhō*, to come
 out of it;
nebezpečí, n. *něbespěchee*, the danger
nebezpečný, á, é *něbespěchnee*, dan-
 gerous
okamžik, m. *okāmžik*, the moment
málo kdo, *málō gđō*, very few people
bohužel, *bōhžžell*, alas; I am sorry
 to say;
vaz, m. *vāz*, the back of the head;
 the neck.

Drugs and medicines.

LÉČIVA a LÉKY.

Míra, f. *meerā*, the measure
váha, f. *váhā*, the weight
měřiti, *myěrshit*, to measure
vážiti, *vážit*, to weigh
míchati, *meehkāt*, to mix
prosíti, *proseet* } to garble
přebrati, *prshěbrāt* }
libra, f. *librā*, a pound
unce, f. *ūntsě*, an ounce
lot, m. (about half an ounce);
kvintlík, m. *quintleek*, (about $\frac{1}{3}$ of
 an ounce);
grán, m. a grain
lžíce, f. *lžeetsě* or *žeetsě*, a spoon, a
 spoonful;

lžička, f. *lžeekhā* or *žeekhā*, a small
 spoon; a small spoonful;
kávoová lžička, f. a coffee or tea
 spoonful;
čajový šálek, m. *chayovee shálek*, a
 tea-cup;
sklenice, f. *skleñitsě*, a glass
vinná sklenice, f. wine-glass
hrstka, f. *herstkā* } a hand
přehoušle, f. *prshěhoūshlě* } ful
špetka, f. *shpetkā*, a pinch
kapka, f. *kāpkā*, a drop
kapky, pl. *kāpky*, drops
pět kapek, *pyět kápek*, five drops; etc
dávka, f. *dáfkā*, a dose.

Prášek, m. *prášek*, a powder
 ,, **na zuby**, *p. nā zūby*, tooth-p.;
 ,, **šumivý**, *p. shūmivēe*, Seidlitz-
 powder;
 ,, **perský**, Persian powder;

prášky, pl. *prášky*, powders
pilulka, f. *pillūlkā*, a pill
pilulky, pl. pills
kašička, f. *kāshichkā*, a poultice
těstičko, n. *ťest'ichkō*, a paste

mazání, n. *mázání*, an ointment
mast, f. *mást*, salve
lektvar, m. confection
tinktura, f. *tinctoorá*, tincture
flastr, m. *fláster* } plaster
náplast, m. *náplást* }
fizikátor, m. vesicatory
olej, m. *olěj*, oil
extrakt, m. extract
výstřelek, m. *veestrshělek*, spirit
semeno, n. *seměň* } seed
semínko, n. *semeeněk* }
list, m. *list*, leaf
listí, n. *lístěe*, leaves
kořen, m. *korshěn*, root
kořínek, m. *korsheeněk*, little root
bobule, f. *bobůlě*, bulb
kůra, f. *koorá*, bark, peel
šťáva, f. *šťává*, juice
bylina, f. *billinā*, herb
lékařská bylina, *lékarshská b.*, medicinal herb;
odvar, m. decoction
nálev, m. *nálef* } infusion
výmok, m. *veemok* }

Aloe, n. *áloě*, aloes
anjelika, f. *ányellicā*, angelica
anýz, m. *áneez*, anise
arabská guma, f. gum arabic
arnika, *prha*, f. arnica

Baldrian (odolen, kozlík), m. water-avens;
balšám, balzám, m. *bálshám, bálzám*, balsam
bavlna, f. *bávlnā*, cotton

roztok, m. *rostók*, solution
dávidlo, n. emetic
počistovadlo, n. *pochist'ovádlō*, purgative
lehký, á, é *lěhkee*, light, soft, easy
prudký, á, é *průdkee*, drastic
projímavý, á, é *proyeemávee*, laxative
silicí, *seelitsee*, tonic
silivka, f. *silífkā*, a tonic
pro spaní, *pro spāñi*, soporific
narkotický, *narkotiskee* } narcotic
omamující, *omāmūyeetsee* }
močohnavý, *mochōhnávee*, diuretic
pijavka, f. *piyāfkā*, a leech
pijavky, pl. *piyāfký*, leeches
baňka, f. cupping-glass
příjemný, á, é *prshēe-yemnee*, agreeable, pleasant;
odporný, á, é *odpornee* } nauseating
ošklivý, á, é *oshklivee* }
ošklivost, f. *oshklivost*, nausea
kyselina, *kissellinā*, acid
kysličník, *kisslichñeek*, oxide
síran, m. *seerān*, sulphate.

bedrník, m. *bed'erník*, pimpernel
bezový květ, m. *bězovee koyět*, elder flowers;
běloba, f. *byělobā*, white lead;
bílkovina, f. *beelkōvinā*, albumen
blín, m. *bleen*, henbane
bobko-třešně, f. cherry-laurel
bolehlav, m. *bolěhlāv*, hemlock
boží tráva (řecké seno), fenugreek seed

brambořík (svinský chleba, svin-
ský ořech), sow-bread;
broskvové listí, n. peach-leaves;
brutnák obecný, m. borage
bříza, f. *brsheezä*, birch, (*bitula alba*);

Celík, m. *tsellik*, golden-rod
cesmína (lesní kopřiva), f. holly
eink, m. *tsink*, zink
citron, m. *tsitron*, lemon
citronová kůra, f. lemon peel
citronová šťáva, f. lemon juice
eukr, m. *tsüker*, sugar
eukr hroznový, glucose
eukr mléčný, *ts. mléchnee*, sugar of
milk;
eukr olověný, *ts. olovýčnee*, sugar of
lead.

Dávičný kámen, m. *dávichnee ká-
men*, tartar emetic;
dehet, m. *děhět*, tar
divizna, f. *d'iviznā*, mullein
dobrá mysl, f. see *marjáňka*;
dračí krev, f. *drāchee krěf*, dragon's
blood;
draslík, m. (*kalium*, n.), *drāsslěek*,
potassium
draslo, n. see *salajka*;
dřevo myší, n. *drshěvš mishee*, bit-
ter-sweet
dřevo sladké, liquorice
dřín, m. *drsheen*, dogwood
dřístal, m. barberry
drnavec, m. *děrnāvets*, wall-pellitory
droždí, see *kvasnice*;
dubinky, pl. nutgall, galls;

durman, m. (panenské jablko pich-
lavé), stramonium seed;
dusík, m. *dūsseek*, nitrogen
dusičnan olovnatý, nitrate of lead.

Ether, m. *éter*, ether
euforbium, *eüforbiüm*, euphorbia.

Fenikl, m. fennel
fialka, f. *fiälkä*, violet
fík, m. *feek*, fig
fosfor, m. phosphorus.

Gdoulové semeno, m. quince seed;
granátové jablko, n. pomegranate
guma arabská, f. gum arabic
“ *elastická*, f. gum elastic

Heřmánek, m. *hershmánek*, chamo-
mile

hořčice, f. *horchitsě*, mustard
hořec, m. *horshets*, gentian
houba, f. *hoübä*, sponge
houby, pl. mushrooms,
hřebíček, m. *rshěbeeček*, cloves
hulevník, m. hedge-mustard

Chinin, m. *khinin*, quinine
china, f. } cinchona, Pe-
chinník pravý, m. } ruvian bark;
chlorové vápno, n. *khlorové vápnö*,
chloride of lime;
chmel, m. *khmell*, hops.

Ibiš (proskurník), m. *ibish*, marsh-
mellow

Jalovec, m. *yällověts*, juniper
jaterník, m. *yäterñik*, liverwort

jed, *yěd*, } poison
 utřejch, *ütreykh* }
 jelení roh, *yelleñee rōh*, hartshorn
 “ lůj, *y. looy*, hart's tallow
 jeřáb, *m. yersháb*, mountain ash;
 jetelice, *f. (janovec, m.)* broom tops
 jóď, *m. yód*, iodine.

Kafr, *m. kăfer*, camphor
 kalamín, *m. calamine*
 kalanka, *f. pinkroot*
 kamenec, *m. kămeněts*, alum
 kampeška, *f. kămpeshká*, logwood
 kastoreum, *n. castor*
 kaštan, *m. kăshťan*, horse-chestnut;
 kaučuk, *m. India rubber*;
 klejt, (*kysličník olovnatý*) *m. kleyt*,
 oxide of lead;
 klejicha bulvatá, butterfly-weed
 kmín, *m. kmeen*, caraway seed;
 kmín vodní, *k. vodñee*, water-hem-
 lock (fine-leaved);
 konítrud, *m. hedge-hyssop*
 konopí, *n. kŏnopee*, hemp
 konopí indické, *k. inditské*, Indian
 hemp;
 konopný extract, *m. extract of hemp*
 kopytník tupolistý, *m. asarum Eu-*
ropaeum;
 kopr, *m. kop^{er}*, dill
 kořalka, *f. see pálenka*;
 korek, *m. cork*
 kořen hadí, *m. korshěn hăďee*, bistort
 “ maliny, blackberry root;
 “ omanu, elicampane
 “ omějový, aconite root;

kosatec, *m. kossătets*, blue flag, iris
 versicolor;
 kozinec, *m. kozinets*, tragacanth
 kozlík odolén, *m. valerian*
 kožokvět, *m. queen's root*;
 křen, *m. krshěn*, horse-radish
 krevnice, *f. krěvñitsě*, bloodroot
 křída, *f. krsheedă*, chalk
 kroupy, *pl. kroūpy*, pearl barley;
 krtičník, *m. k^{er}vichñeek*, figwort
 krušinka, *krūshinkă*, dyer's weed,
 genista;
 krusíček, (*pampalík*), *m. marigold*
 kůra dubová, *f. kooră dūbŏvá*, black-
 oak bark;
 “ divoké třešně, wild cherry bark
 “ vrbová, *k. verbŏvá*, willow bark;
 “ jilmová, *k. yilmŏvá*, elm bark;
 “ červené jilmy, slippery elm bark
 kvasnice, *pl. kvăssñitsě*, yeast
 květ, *m. kwyět*, flowers
 květel, *f. kwyětell*, common toad flax
 kyprej, *m. kíp^{re}y*, loosestrife
 kyslík, *m. kissleek*, oxygen
 kyselina, *f. kĭsselină*, acid
 “ citronová, citric acid
 “ karbolová, carbolic acid;
 “ sanytrová, nitric acid;
 “ solná, muriatic acid;
 “ vínová, tartaric acid.

Lep na ptáky, *m. bird-lime*
 lentyšek, *m. mastic*
 levandule, *f. lavender*
 líh, *m. leeh*, alcohol
 lílek červený, *see dřevo myší*;
 limonka, *f. marsh rosemary*;

listí bobkové, n. laurel leaves;
 lomihnát, m. common groundsel;
 lopuch, (hořký lupen) m. burdock
 lůj, m. *looy*, tallow;
 „ jelení, hart's tallow;
 „ skopový, mutton suet
 lžičník, m. *lžichník*, common scur-
 vy-grass;
 lék proti hlistám, vermifuge.

Mák, m. poppy-seed
 mandle hořké, pl. *mändle horshké*,
 bitter almonds;
 „ sladké, sweet almonds;
 mařena, f. *mārshěná*, madder
 marjáňka, f. *māryánkā*, common
 marjoram;
 máta, (marulka) f. catnep
 máta peprná, f. peppermint
 máta kadeřavá, pennyroyal
 med, m. honey
 měď, f. *myěď*, copper
 medokvět, m. *měďokvyět*, marsh
 trefoil, buckbean;
 medvědice obecná, *medvyěďitsě o-
 betsná*, bearberry leaves;
 mejlí, n. (mišpule, f.) *meylee*, mistle-
 toe
 melasa, f. molasses
 mléko, n. milk
 mlékový punč, milk-punch, toddy;
 morušová šťáva, mulberry juice;
 mouka bílá, f. *moŭká beelá*, wheat
 flour;
 „ černá, m. *cherná*, rye flour;
 „ ovesná, m. *ověsná*, oatmeal;

mrkev, f. *merkef*, carrot seed;
 mýdlo, n. *meedlō*, soap
 „ mazavé, soft soap
 „ amygdalinové, amygdaline
 soap;
 „ mandlové, almond oil soap;
 myrha, f. myrrh

Naháč, m. see ocún;
 námel, m. ergot
 náprstník červený, m. foxglove
 narcis kadeřavý, m. daffodil
 nátržník, m. tormentil
 netík, m. see ženský vlas;
 netýkalka, f. touch-me-not
 nové koření, n. *nově korshěňi*, all-
 spice;
 nickamínek, see skalice;
 nátrium, see sodík.

Ocet, m. *otset*, vinegar
 ocún, m. *otsoon*, colchicum seed;
 odolen, m. valerian
 olej, m. *šley*, oil
 „ bavlněný, cotton-seed oil
 „ z bergamotek, oil of bergamot
 „ citronový, lemon oil
 „ dymianový, oil of thyme, oil of
 origanum;
 „ hořčičný, oil of mustard
 „ heřmánkový, chamomile oil
 „ jantarový, oil of amber
 „ kafrový, camphor oil
 „ kokosový, cocoa-nut oil
 „ koprový, oil of dill
 „ krotonový, croton oil
 „ lněný, flaxseed oil

olej mandlový, almond oil
 ,, olivový, }
 ,, dřevěný } olive oil
 ,, brabancový }
 ,, ricinový, castor oil
 ,, růžový, oil of roses
 ,, sesamový, benne oil
 ,, skořicový, cinnamon oil
 ,, terpentínový, oil of turpentine
 ,, z volské nohy, neats-foot oil
 olovo, n. *olšov*, lead
 ořech, m. *orshėkh*, nut
 ,, muškátový, nutmeg
 orlíček, m. *orleecheh*, columbine
 osládič, m. *oslád'ich*, male fern
 ožanka, f. (gamandr), germander.

Pálenka obyčejná, f. whisky
 ,, vinná (francouská), brandy
 pampeliška (smetanka), f. dandelion
 paprika, f. red pepper, cayenne p.
 pekelný kámen, m. lapis infernalis;
 pelynek, m. wormwood
 peltrám, m. pellitory
 pepř, m. *pěprsh*, black pepper
 petružel, f. parsley root
 pijavky, pl. f. *piyǎfky*, leeches
 pížmo, n. *peežmō*, musk
 plavuň, f. lycopodium
 plieník, m. *plitsník*, Iceland moss;
 ploštičník, m. black snakeroot, cicmicifuga;
 pomoranč, m. *pomorāneh*, orange
 pomorančový květ, orange flowers;
 pomorančová kůra, orange peel;

popel z kostí, m. *popell skost'i*, bone ash;
 posed, m. white bryony
 potaš (draslo), see salajka;
 potměchuť, f.
 psí víno červené, n. } bittersweet
 protěž, f. cudweed, life-everlasting;
 pryskyřice, f. *pryskirshitsě*, resin, rosin;
 pryskyrky, see španělské mouchy;
 psí rmen, m. mayweed
 pukavec (vlčí mák), m. *pūkǎvets*, red-poppay petals;
 puškvorec, m. *pūshkworets*, sweet flag;

Rauta, f. *rǎūtǎ*, rue
 rebarbora, f. *rebarbōrǎ*, rhubarb
 rozinky, pl. f. raisins
 rozmarina, f. rosemary
 rozrazil, m. speedwell
 rtuť, f. *rtūt'*, mercury
 rulík zlomocný, m. deadly nightshade, belladonna root;
 rum myrtový, m. bay-rum
 rumělka, f. cinnabar
 růže stolistá, f. hundred-leaved rose.

Sadec, m. *sǎdets*, eupatorium, thoroughwort;
 sádlo, n. lard
 salajka, f. *sǎlǎykǎ*, potash
 salmiak, m. sal ammoniac
 sanytr, m. *sǎnyt'r*, saltpeter
 semeno lněné, n. flaxseed, linseed;
 ,, tykvané, pumpkin seed;

semínko citvárové, European worm-seed;

senes, m. purging cassia;

senesové listí, n. senna leaves;

seno řecké, n. *senõ rshětské*, fenu-greek;

sesamové listí, n. benne leaf;

síra, f. *seerã*, sulphur, brimstone;

síran, m. *seerãn*, sulphate

síran draselnatý, sulphate of potash

síran měďnatý, sulphate of copper;

sírob, m. sirup

skalice bílá, f. *skállitsě beelí*, white vitriol;

skila, f. squile

skořice, f. *skorshitsě*, cinnamon

“ **bílá**, canella

sladká vrbka, f. bittersweet

slíz, m. *sleez*, common mallow

smola, f. pitch

sodík, m. (**natrium**), n. sodium

soda suchá, f. (**suchý nátron**, **ky-sličník sodnatý**), dry soda, protoxide of sodium;

soda žíravá, (**nátron žíravý**, **hydrát sodnatý**), caustic soda, hydrate of soda;

sporýš, m. see **železník**;

starček, m. see **lomihnát**;

sůl kuchynská, f. *sool k.*, common salt;

“ **hořká**, (**Glauberova**). Glauber's salt, Epsom salt;

“ **morská**, bay salt;

“ **křišťálová**, nitrate salt;

suřík, m. red oxide of lead;

svlačec, m. *svlächets*, scammony.

Šafrán, m. *shãfrán*, saffron

šalvěj, m. *shãlvyěy*, sage

šípek, m. *sheepk*, dog-rose, hip;

šišák, m. *shishák*, scullcap

škrob, m. *shkrob*, starch

škrobovina americká, f. arrow-root

škumpa jedovatá, f. poison-oak

španělské mouchy, pl. f. Spanish flies, cantharides;

špargl, m. *shpargl*, asparagus

šťovík, m. *shťovik*, sorrel

švestky, pl. f. *shvěstky*, prunes.

Tabák, m. *tábák*, tobacco

tavola, f. hardback

terpentýn, m. *terpenteen*, turpentine

tinktura arniková, f. tincture of arnica;

tis, m. common European yew tree;

tojest, f. dog's-bane

tolije, f. *tolliyě*, *parnassia palustris*;

tomel virginský, persimmon

trán jaterní, m. cod-liver oil;

trnka, f. *ternká*, wild plumtree;

trojpecka, f. *troypetská*, fever root

třemdava, f. *dictamnus*, bastard dittany;

třezalka, f. St. John's wort;

tuk velrybí, m. spermaceti

turan, m. fleabane, erigeron.

Uhel dřevěný, m. charcoal

uhel zvířecí, animal charcoal; bone-black;

uhlík, m. *ühleek*, carbon

uhličitan hořečnatý, m. carbonate of magnesia;

uhličitan sodnatý, carbonate of soda
užanka, f. hound's tongue.

Vanilka, f. vanilla

vápno, n. lime; quicklime;

vápno chlorové, chloride of lime;

vápno karbolové, carbolate of lime;

vavřín, m. laurel tree;

vejce, n. *veytsě*, egg

bílek, m. *belek*, the white

žloutek, m. *žloutek*, the yelk

vinný kámen, m. cream of tartar;

víno bílé, n. *veeň beelé*, white wine

“ červené, v. *chervěné*, red wine,

virginská hadovka, f. Virginia
snakeroot

vítod, m. *veetod*, bitter polygala;

vlaštovičník, m. *vlašťovichňik*, ce-
landine

voda čistá, f. *vodā chisstá*, pure water

voda minerální, mineral water

koupel, f. *koŭpell* } bath

lázeň, f. *lázeň* }

vodička, f. *vod'ichká*, wash, lotion;

vodička na oči, v. *nā ochi*, eye-wash

vosk bílý, m. white wax

vosk žlutý, yellow wax

vraní oko, n. *vrāñee okō*, paris quad-
rifolia;

vrátič, m. *vrát'ich*, tansy

výstřelek, m. *veestrshellek*, spirit

“ pižmový, spirit of musk;

“ terpentínový, spirit of
turpentine;

vyzí klí, n. *vizee klee*, isinglass.

Zázvor, m. ginger

zázvor divoký, wild ginger

zeměžluč, f. *zemyžlŭch*, common
centaury;

zerav, m. *zerāf*, arbor vitae;

zimostráz, m. box plant;

zmíjovec, m. *zmeeyōvets*, skunk cab-
bage;

žábňík, m. *žábňik*, water-plantain

žebříček, m. *žebrsheechek*, yarrow

železnice lysá, s. snake-head, turtle-
head;

železník, m. *železňik*, vervain

ženský vlas, m. maidenhair

žluč volská, f. *žlŭch volská*, ox-gall

žlutidlo, n. turmeric

žtutodřev, m. prickly-ash.

At home.

DOMA.

I like domestic com-
fort.

We have a comfortable
home on tenth street.

We have a hall, five
rooms and a kitchen

Miluju domácí poho-
dlí.

Máme pohodlný domov
na desáté ulici.

Máme siň, pět pokojů
a kuchyň dole, a

*millŭyŭ domátsee po-
hodlee.*

*mámě pohodlnee dō-
mof nā desáté ŭlitsi.*

*mámě seeň, pyět pokō-
yoo ā kŭkhiň dōlē,*

down stairs, and four bedrooms upstairs.

The stairs have a railing.

We have new furniture,—tables, chairs, sofas and beds.

The writing-desk and library stand in the front room.

The windows have both shutters and curtains.

On the walls there are pictures in frames.

Our clothes-press is very handy.

The fuel we keep down cellar. — Hard and soft water is in the house.

We have a good stove and the chimney does not smoke.

It is time to eat. — The meal is ready.

The table is spread; — everything is on the table: dishes, plates, forks, knives.

Come and eat; — sit down by the table.

Hand (thou) me that chair. — Hand (you) me the soup; I shall deal it out.

čtyry ložnice nahore.

Schody mají zábradlí.

Máme nový nábytek,—stoly, židle, pohovky a postele.

Psací stůl a knihovna stojí v přední světnici.

Okna mají okenice i záslony.

Na stěnách jsou obrazy v rámech.

Naše šatnice je tuze příručná.

Palivo máme ve sklepě. — Tvrdá i měkká voda je v domě.

Máme dobré kamma a komín nekouří.

Je čas k jídlu. — Jídlo je hotovo.

Je prostřeno;—všecko je na stole: mísy, talíře, vidličky, nože.

Pojďte jísti;—sedněte ke stolu.

Podej mi tu sesli. — Podejte mi polívku; já rozdám.

ã shtiri ložnitsë nahorshë.

skhōdy māyee zábradlee.

mámě novej nábytek,—stolly, židlě, pohovky a postellě.

psátsee stool a knihovná stoyee fp rshëdñee swyëtñitsi.

okná māyee okëñitsë e záslony.

nã stënákh soũ obrãzy vrámekh.

nãshë shätñitsë yë toozë prsheerũchnã.

pãlivõ mámě vë sklepyë. — toerdã e myëká voda yë vdõmyë.

mámě dobrë kãmnã ã komeen nõkoũrshëe.

yë chãss k-yeedlũ. — yeedlõ yë hotõvõ.

yë prostrshëñõ.—fshëtsko yë nã stollë: meesy, tãleershë, vidlichky, nõže.

pod'të yeest; — sedñetë kë stollũ.

podëy me tũ sessli. podëytë me poleefkũ; yã rõzdãm.

Is it not salt enough?
— Here is the salt;
take some more salt.

The meat is cut; — I
shall cut up the roast
into pieces.

Help yourself; — here
is roast goose, — here
is fried chicken.

Take a piece of bread.

Do you eat pastry? —
Sometimes.

Do you want a cup of
coffee? — or a cup of
tea?

Is the coffee sweet e-
nough? — Here is su-
gar.

After a meal a cigar
tastes well.

Will you smoke? — Here
are cigars; light one.

Hand me the matches.
— There in the cor-
ner is a spittoon.

It is growing dark. —
It is dark. — Make a
light.

Here is a candle-stick
and a candle. — Light
the lamp; — light the
gas.

Není dost slaná? — Zde
je sůl; přisolte si.

Maso je nakrájeno; —
rozdělím pečení na
porce.

Poslužte si; — zde je
pečená husa, — zde
smažené kuře.

Vemte si kousek chle-
ba.

Jíte pečivo? — Někdy.

Chcete šálek kávy? —
anebo šálek čaje?

Je káva dost sladká? —
Zde je cukr.

Po jídle chutná dout-
ník.

Budete kouřiti? — Tu
jsou cigara; zapalte
si.

Podejte mi sirky. —
Tam v koutě je pli-
vátko.

Stmívá se. — Je tma. —
Udělejte světlo.

Zde je svícen a svíčka.
— Rozžete lampu; —
rozžete plyn.

neyñi dost sláná? — zdě
yě sool; prshisoltě si.

măssö yě năkráyěñö; —
rozďeleem pècheñi nă
portsě.

poslúshťě si; — zdě yě
pěchěná hűssă, — zdě
smăžěné kűrshě.

vemtě si koűsek khlěbă.

yeetě pěchivo? ñegdy.

khtsětě shálek kávy? —
ănebő shálek chăyě?

yě kává dost slădkă? —
zdě yě tsűker.

pő yeedľě khűtnă doűt-
ñik.

bűďetě koűrshit? — tű
soű tsigară; zăpăľťě
si.

poděyťě me seerky. —
tăm fkoűťě yě pli-
vătűő.

stmeevă sě. — yě tmă. —
űďľelyťě swyětľo.

zdě yě sweetsěn ă sweech-
kă. — rožetě lămpű;
— rožetě plyn.

It is growing chilly,
isn't it? — Make a
fire.

There is a fire already
in the stove.

It is late; — let us go to
sleep.

It is time to go to bed.
Is the bed made?—The
beds are made for all.

I shall lie down on the
sofa. — Do as you
please.

Undress; — take off
your clothes; — pull
off your boots; here
is the boot-jack.

Sleep well. — Good
night!

It is time to get up. —
Our folks are up.

Wencel is still sleeping;
— wake him up, or
he will oversleep.

How did you sleep? —
I slept well.

Didn't that noise wake
you up? — I slept
fast; nothing disturb-
ed me.

I had a bad night; —
I could not fall asleep
very long; — I only
fell asleep towards
morning.

**Dělá se chladno, je-li
pravda? — Zatopte.**

Už je oheň v kamnech.

**Je pozdě; — pojedme
spat.**

Je čas jíti do postele.

**Je ustláno?— Je ustlá
no pro všechny.**

**Já si lehnu na sofa. —
Jak chcete.**

**Odstrojte se; — svlék-
něte se; — zujte se,
— tu je zouvák.**

**Spíte dobře.—Dobrou
noc!**

**Je čas vstáti. — Naši
jsou zhůru.**

**Václav posud spí; —
zbud'te ho, sice za-
spí.**

**Jak jste spal? — Spal
jsem dobře.**

**Nebudil vás ten hluk?
— Spal jsem tvrdě;
— nic mě nebudilo.**

**Já měl zlou noc; —
nemohl jsem usnou-
ti dlouho; — usnul
jsem teprvé k ránu.**

*dělá se khláďno, yelli
právďá? — zătoptě.*

ušh yě ohěň fkámněkh.

*yě pozďe; — poď'mě
spăt.*

yě cháss yeet dō postellě.

*yě ůstlánō? — yě ůstlá-
nō pro fshěkhny.*

*yá si lehnŭ ná sofă. —
yăk khtsětě.*

*odstroytě sě; — svlékňe-
tě sě; — zŭytě sě; —
tŭ yě zoŭvák.*

*spyětě dōbrshě.—dōbroŭ
nots.*

*yě cháss fstát. — năshi
soŭ zhoorŭ.*

*vátslăv posŭd spee; —
zbŭďtě ho, sitsě ză-
spee.*

*yăk stě spăl? — spăl
sem dōbrshě.*

*nebŭďil váss ten hlŭk?
— spăl sem tvrďe;
ňits myě nebŭďilo.*

*yá myěll zloŭ nots; —
němohel sem ůsnout
dloŭhō; — ůsnŭl sem
teprvé kránŭ,*

Henry says he never shut his eyes (i.e. had no sleep at all).	Jindřich povídá že ani oka nezamhouřil.	yindrshikh poveedá že āñi okā nēžāmoř- rshil.
---	--	---

VOCABULARY.

Sín, f. <i>seeñ</i> , the hall	pohovka, f. <i>pōhofkă</i> }	the lounge
schody, pl. m. <i>skhody</i> , the stairs	sofa, n. <i>sofă</i>	
zábradlí, n. the railing	obraz, m. <i>obrăz</i> , the picture	
stěna, f. <i>stēnă</i> , the wall	rám, m. the frame	
šatnice, f. <i>shătñitsě</i> , the clothes press;	Palivo, n. <i>păllivō</i> , the fuel	
kumbál, m. <i>kŭmbál</i> , the closet	kamna, pl. <i>kămnă</i> , the stove	
kout, m. <i>koŭt</i> , the corner	komín, m. <i>komeen</i> , the chimney	
okenice, f. <i>okěñitsě</i> , the blind	kouřiti, <i>koŭrshit</i> , to smoke	
záslona, f. <i>zăsłonă</i> , the curtain	oheň, m. <i>ōheñ</i> , the fire;	
domáci, <i>dōmătsee</i> , domestic	svícen, m. <i>sweetsēn</i> , the candlestick	
nábytek, m. the furniture	svíčka, f. <i>sweechkă</i> , the candle	
stoly, m. <i>stōly</i> }	plyn, m. the gas	
tabule, f. <i>tăbŭlě</i> }	rozžítí, <i>rožeet</i> , to make a light;	
psací stůl, <i>psătsee stool</i> , the writing- desk	zapáliti, <i>zăpălit</i> , to light	
židle, f. <i>židlě</i> }	sírka, f. <i>seerkă</i> , a match	
sesle, f. <i>sesslě</i> }	cigaro, n. <i>tsigăro</i> }	a cigar
	doutník, m. <i>doutñik</i> }	
	plivátko, n. <i>plivátko</i> }	spittoon.
	plivník, m. <i>plivñik</i> }	

Prostríti, <i>prostrsheet</i> , to set the table;	nakrájeti, <i>năkrăyet</i> , to cut in pieces;
mísa, f. <i>meesă</i> , the dish	rozděliti, <i>rozďelit</i> , to divide
talíř, m. <i>tăleersh</i> , the plate	rozdati, <i>rozďăt</i> , to deal out;
šálek, m. <i>shálek</i> , the cup	pečivo, n. <i>pěchivo</i> , the pastry
sůl, <i>sool</i> , the salt	pečený, á, é <i>pěchenee</i> , roasted
slaný, á, é <i>slănee</i> , salt, salted;	smažený, á, é <i>smăženee</i> , fried
přisoliti, <i>prshi-solit</i> , to put in some more salt;	husa, f. <i>hŭssă</i> , goose
sladký, á, é <i>slădkee</i> , sweet	kuře, n. <i>kŭrshě</i> , chicken.

Stmívati se, *stmeevăt sě*, to grow dark;

odstrojiti se, *odstroyit sě*, to undress

zouti se, *zōūt sě*, to pull off one's boots;

zouvák, *m zovvák*, the boot-jack

ustlati, *ūstlăt*, to make the bed;

usnouti, *ūsnoūt*, to fall asleep;

zaspati, *zăspăt*, to oversleep

buditi, *būd'it*, to wake, to disturb;

zbuditi, *zbūd'it*, to wake up, to call;

vstāti, *fstăt*, to get up;

zhůru, *zhoorŭ*, up;

nahoře, *năhorshě*, up stairs;

dole, *dōlě*, down stairs;

tvrdě, *tv'rdě* } fast

pevně, *pevňe* }

hluk, *m. hlŭk*, noise

je-li pravda? *yelli prăvdă?* isn't it so?

Buying and selling.

KOUPĚ A PRODEJ.

How much is this? —
What is the price of
it?—How much does
it cost?

What do you sell it for?
What do you want for
it?—What do you ask
for it? — How much
shall I give you for it?

What is the price?
A dollar and ten cents.
— A dollar and a
quarter.

Two dollars and a half.
— Two and a half
dollars.

Five dollars sixty cents

It costs a little over six
dollars.

Is it worth that much?

**Zač je to? — Co to sto-
jí? — Co to koštuje?**

**Po čem to prodáváte?
Co za to chcete? — Co
za to žádáte? — Co
vám za to dám?**

**Jaká je cena?
Dollar deset centů. —
Dollar a čtvrt.**

**Dva dollary a půl. —
Půl třetího dolaru.**

**Pět dolarů šedesát
centů.**

**Stojí to něco přes šest
dolarů.**

Stojí to za to?

*zăch yě tō? — tsō tō
stoyee? — tsō tō kosh-
tŭyě?*

*pō chem tō prodáváte?
tsō ză tō khtsētě? — tsō
ză tō žădătě? — tsō
vám ză tō dăm?*

*yăká yě tsenă?
dollar deset sentoo. —
dollar a shtw'ert.*

*dwă dollary ā pool. —
pool trshĕfĕehō dollă-
rŭ.*

*pyĕt dollároo shĕdessăt
sentoo.*

*stoyee tō nĕtsō prshĕs
shĕst dollároo.*

stoyee tō ză tō?

I think it is; — why should it not be?

It seems to me too much. — I think it is dear.

Myslím že stojí; — proč by nestálo?

Mně se to zdá moc. — Myslím že je to drahé.

misleem že stoyee; — proch be nestálǎ?

myě sě tǎ zdá mots. — misleem že yě tǎ drǎhé.

That is too much. —

That is too dear. — I won't give so much.

That is too much; — will you take off something?

You must take off something.

I shall not take off anything. — I cannot take off anything.

We have a fixed price. — We sell at a fixed price.

It is cheap. — It is low-priced.

I shall get it cheaper elsewhere.

You will not get it cheaper anywhere.

I will try it. — I don't want to haggle. — I don't like to haggle over the price.

That is the lowest price; — it cannot be any cheaper.

To je moc. — To je drahé. — Tolik nedám.

To je tuze mnoho; — slevíte něco?

Něco musíte sleviti.

Neslevím nic. — Nemohu sleviti nic.

Máme pevnou cenu. — Prodáváme za pevnou cenu.

Je to laciné. — Je to levné.

Dostanu to levněji jinde.

Nedostanete to levněji nikde.

Zkusím to. — Nechci smlouvati. — Nerad smlouvám.

To je nejnižší cena; — nemůže býti lacinější.

tǎ yě mots. — tǎ yě drǎhé. — tǎlik nědám.

tǎ yě toožě mnohǎ; — slěveetě ěetsǎ?

ěetsǎ mǔseetě slevit.

něslěveem ěits. — němǎhǔ slevit ěits.

mámě pevnǎ tsenǔ. — prodávámě zǎ pevnǎ tsenǔ.

yě tǎ lǎtsiné. — yě tǎ levné.

dostǎnǔ tǎ levěey yindě.

nedǎstǎnetě tǎ levěey ěigdě.

skǔseem tǎ. — někhtsi smloǔvǎt. — nerǎd smloǔvám.

tǎ yě neyěishee tsenǎ; — němoožě beet lǎtsi-ěeyshee.

What do you wish? —
What is your pleasure?

What can I do for you?
Have you satchels for sale?— I want to buy a satchel.

I would like to get a nice traveling bag.

We have a stock of them. — We have a large choice.

Show me some. — I wish to see them.

This is the best kind we have. — They are good.

This one is nice.— This will suit you.

How much is it? —
What is the price?

Four dollars and a half.
— That is the regular price.

That is a little too much.
— don't you think so?

I do not think so.

I will give four dollars for it.— Will you sell it for that?

I cannot. — I cannot take off anything.

The price is fixed.

Then I will not buy it.
— Do as you please;

Co si přejete? — Co račte?

Čím mohu sloužiti?
Máte tašky na prodej?
— Chci koupit tašku.

Rád bych nějakou pěknou kabelu.

Máme je na skladě. —
Máme velký výběr.

Ukažte mi některé. —
Podívám se na ně.

Tohle je nejlepší druh co máme. — Ty jsou dobré.

Tahle je pěkná. — Ta se vám hodí.

Zač je? — Co stojí?

Čtyry dollary a půl. —
To je pravidelná cena.

To je trochu moc; —
nemyslíte?

Nemyslím.

Dám za ni čtyry dollary. — Dáte ji za to?

Nemohu. — Nemohu nic sleviti.

Cena je pevná.

Teda ji nekoupím. —
Jak vám libo. — Ne-

tsō si prshēyetē? — tsō račťē?

*cheem mohū sloužiti?
mátě tishky nā prodey?
— khtsi koupit tash-kā.*

rād bikh nākoū pyek-noū kābellū.

*mámě yě nā sklād'e. —
mámě velkee veebyēr.*

ūkāshtě me nēkteré.—po-d'eevám sě nā nē.

*tōhlě yě neylepshee druh
tsō námě. — ty soū dōbré.*

tāhlě yě pyěkná. — tā sě vām hođ'ee.

zāch yě? — tsō stoyee?

*shtiry dollāry ā pool.—
tō yě prāvidelnā tsē-nā.*

*tō yě trokhū mots; —
nēmisleetē?*

nēmisleem.

dām zā nī shtiry dollāry — dátě ye zā tō?

nemohū. — nemohū nīts slēvit.

tsenā yě pēvnā.

*tědā ye nēkoupeem. —
yāk vām leebō.— ney-*

—it is not dear at that price.

You will not get it elsewhere. — They have not got them elsewhere.

They are not to be had elsewhere. — Only I alone have them for sale.

They have not got these goods on hand anywhere.

I keep honest goods on hand.

Small profits, quick sales — that is my motto.

Small but frequent profits.

Have you some pocket-books?

We have a large stock. — What kind do you wish, — expensive? — cheap?

What is the price of these? — How much are they? — How do you sell them?

A dollar a piece. — They are good and lasting. Those are dearer; a dollar and a half.

ní drahá za tu cenu.

Jinde ji nedostanete. — Jinde je nemají.

Nejsou jinde k dostání. — Jenom já je mám na prodej.

Nemají to zboží na skladě nikde.

Já držím poctivé zboží.

Malý zisk, rychlý prodej, — to je mé heslo.

Malý výdělek, ale častý.

Máte nějaké tobolky?

Máme velkou zásobu. — Jaké chcete, — drahé? — laciné?

Zač jsou tyhle? — Po čem jsou? — Po čem je prodáváte?

Po dolaru kus. — Jsou dobré a trvanlivé. Tam ty jsou dražší; po dolaru a půl.

ñi dráhá ză tŭ tsenŭ

yindě ye nědostānētě. — yindě yě nemāyee.

neysoŭ yindě gdostāñi. — yenom yá yě mám nă prodey.

nemāyee tŏ zbožee nă sklādě ñigde.

yá deržeem potsťivé zbožee.

mālee zisk, rykhlee prodey, — tŏ yě mé hesslŏ.

mālee vedělek ālē chäss-tee.

mátě ñáké tŏbolky?

mámě velkoŭ zásobŭ. — yáké khtsētě, — dráhé? — lătsiné?

zách soŭ tyhlě? — pŏ chem soŭ? — pŏ chem yě prodávátě?

pŏ dollărŭ küss. — soŭ dobré ā tervānlivé. tām ty soŭ drāshee; pŏ dollărŭ ā pool.

They are somewhat better.

I will take one;— wrap it up for me.

Here is the money; give me back.

There is fifty cents coming to you.— Here is half a dollar back.

I should like to buy a few tons of coal; but I have no money.

I will take it on credit; — will you trust me?

I do not trust anybody; —I sell only for cash.

I give no credit. — I want cash.

I want to have no bad debts.

I need money. — I am raking up money to buy goods;— I do not want to borrow.

For cash one buys cheap.

How is business? — So so;— tolerably good. Have the goods a ready sale?—I have a good sale, but a small profit.

Jsou trochu lepší.

Vezmu si jednu;— zabalte mi ji.

Tu jsou peníze; dejte mi zpátky.

Přijde vám padesát centů.— Zde je půl dolaru zpátky.

Rád bych koupil pár tun uhlí; ale nemám peníze.

Vezmu ho na dluh; — počkáte mi ?

Nechkám žádnému; — prodávám jen za hotové.

Nedávám kredit.— Chci hotové.

Nechci mít žádné špatné dluhy.

Potřebuju peníze. — Sháním peníze na zboží; nechci se dlužit.

Za hotové koupí se lacino.

Jak jde obchod?— Tak tak; — projde to.

Jde zboží na odbyt? — Mám dobrý odbyt, ale malý zisk.

soũ trokhũ lepshee

vezmũ si yednũ; — zĩbãltẽ me ye.

tũ soũ peñeezẽ; deytẽ me spãtky.

prsheedẽ vãm pãdessãt sentoo. — zdẽ yẽ pool dollirũ spãtky.

rãd bikh koũpil pãrtũn ůhlee; ãlẽ nẽmãm peñeezẽ.

vezmũ hõ nã dlooh; — pochkãtẽ me?

nẽchekãm žãdnẽmũ; — prodãvãm yen zã hotovẽ.

nẽdãvãm credit.— khtsi hotovẽ.

nekhtsi meet žãdnẽ shpãtnẽ dloohy.

potrshẽbũyũ peñeezẽ. — shũñeem pẽñeezẽ nã zbožee; — nẽkhtsi sẽ dlũžit.

zã hotovẽ koũpeesẽ lãtsi-nõ.

yãk dẽ obkhõd? — tãk tãk;—proyde tõ.

dẽ zbožee nã odbyt? — mãm dõbree odbyt, ãlẽ mãlee zisk.

I often sell at a loss.—
I have a loss on my
sales.

That is bad. — Have
you a large stock?

I have still many goods
on hand; — I expect
again fresh goods; —
they are on the way.

I was in New York to
make purchases.

Did you make a good
bargain?—I am satis-
fied.

**Prodávám často se ško-
don. — Mám na tom
ztrátu.**

**To je zlé. — Máte vel-
kou zásobu ?**

**Mám ještě hodně zbo-
ží; — čekám zase
čerstvé zboží;—je už
na cestě.**

**Byl jsem v New Yorku
nakupovat.**

**Koupil jste dobře? —
Jsem spokojen.**

*prodávám chāsstō sě
shkodoŭ. — mám nā
tom strátū.*

*tō yě zlé. — máte velkoŭ
zásobū? ?*

*mám yeshťe hodñe zbo-
žee; — čekám zāss
cherstvé zbožee; — yě
ūsh nā tsesťe.*

*bill sem vnew-yorkū nā
kŭpovāt.*

*koŭpil stě dōbrshě? —
sem spokoyěn.*

VOCABULARY.

Na skladě, nā sklād'e, on hand;

odbyt, m. sale (of goods);

zisk, m. profit

škoda, f. shkoda } loss

ztráta, f. strátū }

taška, f. táshkă } satchel,

kabela, f. kăbellă } traveling bag;

tobolka, f. tōbolkă, pocket book;

heslo, n. hesslō, motto

pevný, á, é pevnee, fast, fixed;

trvati, tervăt, to last

trvanlivý, á, é tervānlivee, lasting.

—

Stojí to, stoyee tō, it costs, it is worth;

koštuje, koshtŭyě, it costs

dostati, dostăt, to get

dostanu, dostānŭ, I shall get;

dostanete, dōstānētě, you will get;
je k dostání, yě gđōstāñě, is to be
got; is to be had;

držeti, deržet, to keep

hoditi se, hodīt sě, to suit; to fit;

sleviti, slěvit, to take off;

smlouvati, smloŭvăt, to haggle; to
bargain;

sloužiti, sloužít, to serve

dlužiti se, dlŭžit sě } to borrow

vydlužiti se, vydlŭžit sě }

počkati, pochkăt, to wait, to trust;

nečekám, něchekām, I do not wait;

I do not trust;

nakupovati, năkŭpovăt, to make

purchases;

zabaliti, zăbălít, to wrap up.

In a grocery store.

U GROCERISTY.

I want some groceries.
Please, command;—we
have fresh goods of
all kinds.

Give me a pound of
coffee, two pounds
of sugar and a pack-
age of chicory.

Anything else?

Five pounds of rice,
half a dozen of lem-
ons and some spices.

How do you sell eggs?

Twenty cents a dozen.

Give me two dozen of
eggs, three quarts of
kerosene and a pint
of sirup.

How do you sell kero-
sene by the gallon?

I will take a bottle of
mustard, a pound of
raisins, a pound and
a half of dried apples.

Besides, I want four
ounces of pepper.

Send me a sack of flour
and five pounds of
barley.

I want the best kind of
flour, — patent flour.

Chei nějaké grocerie.
Poroučejte; — máme
čerstvé zboží všeho
druhu.

Dejte mi libru kávy,
dvě libry cukru a
paklíček cikorie.

Ještě něco ?

Pět liber rýže, půl tu-
ctu citronů a nějaké
koření.

Zač prodáváte vejce?

Dvacet centů tucet.

Dejte mi dva tucty va-
jec, tři kvarty pe-
troleje a pint siro-
bu.

Zač prodáváte petro-
lej na gallony?

Vezmu si lahev horči-
ce, libru rozinek,
půldruhé libry kří-
žal.

Ještě chci čtyry unce
pepře.

Pošlete mi pytel mou-
ky a pět liber krup.

Chei nejlepší druh
mouky, — patentní
mouku.

khtsi ňáké groceriě.

poroučeytě; — mámě
čerstvé zboží fshě-
hō drūhū.

deytě me libru kávy,
dvě libry tsūkrū ā
pākleechek tsikoriě.

yeshťe ňetsō?

pyět liber reyže, pool
tūtstū tsitrōnoo ā ňá-
ké korshēñi.

zāch prodávātě veytsě?
dvātset sentoo tūtset.

deytě me dvā tūtsty vā-
yets, trshi quārty pē-
trolejē ā pint siro-
bū.

zāch prodávātě petrolej
nā gāllony?

vezmū si lāhev horchit-
sē, libru rōzinek,
pool drūhé libry
krsheezāl.

yeshťe khtsi shtiry űn-
tsē pēprshē.

poshlētě mi pytel mouky
ā pyět liber krūp.

khtsi neylepshee drūh
mouky, — pātentñee
moukū.

A bushel of potatoes
and a peck of onions.
Give me five cents
worth of cinnamon,
five cents worth of
mace and ten cents
worth of ginger.

**Bušl bramborů a pek
cibule.**

**Dejte mi za pět centů
skořice, za pět cen-
tů květu a za deset
centů zázvoru.**

*būshel brāmboroō ā peck
tsibūlē.*

*deytě me zā pyět sentoo
skorshitsē, zā pyět
sentoo kvyētū ā zā
desset sentoo zázvorū.*

VOCABULARY.

Note. Many articles sold in groceries are to be found under the heading "Drugs and medicines".

Cukr kouskový, *tsūk^{er} koūskovee*,
crushed sugar;

„ **zrnkový,** *ts. zernkovee*, granu-
lated sugar;

„ **utlučený,** *ts. ůtlūchenee*, pul-
verized sugar;

„ **hnědý,** *ts. hñedee*, brown sug-
ar;

káva pražená, *kávā prāženā*, roast-
ed coffee;

„ **mletá,** *k. mlētá*, ground coffee

koření, n. *korshēñi*, spice

nové koření, allspice

květ, m. *kvyět*, mace

dymíán, m. thyme

šafrán, m. *shāfrán*, Spanish saffron

rozinky, pl. f. raisins

drobné rozinky, currants

křížaly, pl. f. *krsheežāly*, dried ap-
ples;

sušené švestky, pl. f. *sūshēné shvest-
ky*, prunes

cibule, f. *tsibūlē*, onions

česnek, m. *chessnek*, garlic

zázvor loupáný, bleached ginger-
root;

zázvor neloupáný, unbleached gin-
ger-root;

prášek na pečení, *prášek nā pē-
cheñi*, baking powder;

kvasnice, pl. *kwassñitsē* { yeast;
droždí, n. *drožd'ee*

suché kvasnice, dry yeast;

lisované kv., compressed yeast;

salajka, f. *sālāykā*, saleratus

prací soda, f. *prātsee sodā*, washing
soda;

kornout, m. *kornoūt*, paper cornet;

paklík, m. *pākleek*, package;

paklíček, m. *pākleechek*, small pack-
age;

balík, m. *bāleek*, bundle, parcel;

zabaliti, *zābālīt* } to pack up
zapakovati, *zāpākovāt*

zavázati, *zāvázāt*, to tie up;

svázati, *svázāt*, to bind or tie to-
gether.

Garments.

ODĚV.

Dry goods have a ready sale.

I intend to start a dry goods store.

My brother has a clothing store.

He employs many tailors.

The tailor makes (*liter.* sews) clothes.

Thread and needle, scissors and shears, a thimble, a sad-iron and a press-board are his tools.

Nowadays much sewing is done on the machine.

The sewing machine is a useful invention.

It is an American invention.

I need a suit of clothes.
— I want a new suit.

Take my measure.

The cutter takes measure and cuts the cloth

What sort of stuff do you want?

Show me your patterns

This wears well.

Loketní zboží jde rychle na odbyt.

Hodlám založiti střihní krám.

Můj bratr má oděvní krám.

Za městnává mnoho krejčích.

Krejčí šije šaty.

Nit a jehla, nůžky a velké nůžky, náprstek, cihlička a koza jsou jeho nástroje.

Dnes mnoho šije se na stroji.

Šicí stroj jest užitečný vynález.

Jest to americký vynález.

Potřebuju oblek. —
Chci nový oblek.

Vemte mi míru.

Kraječ bere míru a nakrájí sukno.

Jakou látku chcete?

Ukažte mi své vzory.
Tohle se dobře nese.

loketⁿee zbož^{ee}e dě rikhlě n^ě odbyt.

hodlám založit stršihⁿí krám.

můy br^ěter má od^{ev}n^{ee} krám.

z^ě m^yěstnává mnoho kreycheekh.

kreychee she-yě sh^ěty.

n^{it} ā yěhlā, nooshky ā velké nooshky, náperstek, tsihlichk^ā ā kōz^ā s^ou yěh^ě n^ěstroyě.

dness mnoh^ě she-yě s^ě n^ě stroyi.

shitsee stroy yest užitechn^{ee} vynález.

yest t^ě āmeritske^{ee} vynález.

potrshěbūyū oblek. — khtsi no^{ee}vee oblek.

remt^ě me meerū.

kráyěch ber^ě meerū ā n^ěkráyee sūkno.

yākoū l^ětkū khtset^ě?

ūkāsht^ě me sv^ěe vzory t^ěhl^ě s^ě d^ěbrsh^ě ness^ě.

How will you have your coat made(i.e.sewed)?
After the present fashion.

Try your coat on.

It pinches me under the arms — It is too tight.
It is too wide round the waist. — It makes folds.

The skirts are long enough. — It has pockets behind and breast-pockets.

Make me a pair of pants
Get it done pretty soon;
— take a good stuff.

Do you want lining in your pants?

I do not want any lining. — Without lining.

Jak chcete míti kabát ušitý?
Dle nynější mody.

Zkuste váš kabát.
Svírá pod pažema. —
Je tuze těsný.
Je tuze volný v půli. —
dělá faldy.

Šosy jsou dost dlouhé.
— Má kapsy v zadu
a kapsy na prsou.

Udělejte mi pár kalhot
Zhotovte je hezky br-
zo; — vemte dobrou
látku.

Chte podšivku do kalhot?

Nechci žádnou podšivku. — Bez podšivky.

yák khtsetě meet kábát ůshitee?
dle nyněyshee mody.

skůstě vásh kábát.
sveerá pod pažemă. —
yě toozě vessnee.
yě toozě volnee fpooli.
— dělă faldy.

shössy soŭ dost dloŭhé.
— má kăpsy vzădă ů kăpsy nă persoŭ.

ůdēleytē me pár kălhot.
zhotoftē yě hesskee ber-
zō; — vemtē dōbroŭ lătkŭ.

khtsetě podshifkŭ dō kălhot?

nekhtsi žădnoŭ pod-
shifkŭ. — bēs pod-
shifky.

VOCABULARY.

Kabát, m. *kábát*, the coat
frak, m. *frăk*, a dress-coat
svrechnik, m. *sverkhnik*, an over-coat

zimník, m. *zimnik*, a greatcoat

plášť, m. *plăstě*, a cloak

kalhoty, pl. } pants, trousers;

spodky, pl. }

nohavice, f. *nohăvitsě*, leg of the pants;

vesta, f. *vestă*, the vest

kazajka, f. *kăžăykă*, the jacket

bunda, f. *bündă*, the sack-coat

límeč, m. *leemets*, the collar

laple, f. *lăplě*, the lapel

rukáv, m. *rŭkăf*, the sleeve

šos, m. *shöss*, the skirt

šev, m. *shěf*, the seam

štych, m. *shtikh* } a stitch

steh, m. *stěh*

podšivka, f. *podshifkă*, the lining

záplata, f. *zăplătă*, the patch

kapsa, f. *kāpsā*, the pocket
knoflík, m. *knofleek*, the button
knoflíková dírka, the button-hole.

Prádlo, n. linen, underclothing;
košile, f. *koshillě*, the shirt
spodní košile, *spodñee k.*, the under-shirt

podvlečky, pl. } the drawers
spodní kalhoty }

punčochy, pl. f. *punchokhy*, the stockings, the socks;

podvazky, pl. *podväskey*, the garters
šandy, pl. f. *shändy* } the
šle, pl. f. *shlě* } suspenders

šátek, m. *shátek*, kerchief

š. na krk, *sh. nā kerk*, neckerchief

š. do kapsy, *sh. dō kāpsy*, pocket handkerchief;

mašle na krk, *māshlě nā kerk*, a necktie.

Sukno, n. *sūknō*, cloth, broadcloth;
samet, m. *sāmmet*, velvet

pliš, m. *plish*, plush

atlas, m. *ātlās*, satin

hedvábí, n. *hedvábee*, silk

plátno, n. linen

kartoun, m. *kartoūn*, cotton, print;

šňůra, f. *shñoorā*, cord

cívka, f. *tsífkā*, a spool

klubko, n. *klúbko*, a ball

přadýnko, n. *prshādeenko*, a skein

hrubá nit, f. *hrubā ñit*, a coarse thread;

tenká nit, a fine thread;

hrubá jehla, f. *h. yěhlā*, a coarse needle;

tenká jehla, a fine needle;

štepovací jehla, *shtepovátsee yěhlā*, darning needle;

drát (na pletení), m. knitting needle;

stříhati, *strshihāt*, to cut with a pair of scissors;

žehlit, *žehlīt*, to iron.

Klobouk, m. *kloboūk*, the hat

ženský klobouk, a bonnet, a lady's hat;

čepec, m. *chěpets*, the hood

čepice, f. *chěpitsě*, the cap

cilindr, m. *tsilinder*, a beaver, a silk hat;

nízký klobouk, *ñeeskee kloboūk*, a low hat.

Švadlena, f. *shvāddenā*, a needlewoman

šička, f. *shichkā*, a sewing-girl

modistka, f. a milliner

modní zboží, *modñee zbožee*, millinery

šaty, pl. *sháty*, a dress

život, m. *život*, the waist, the bust;

šňerovačka, f. *shñerovāchkā*, the corset, the bodice;

spodnička, f. *spodñichkā*, the petticoat

košile (ženská), *koshillě*, the chemise

karnýr, m. *karneer*, a flounce

karnýrek, m. a ruffle

pentle, f. *pentlě*, a ribbon

mašle, f. *māshlě*, a sash

Diverse trades.

ROZLIČNÁ ŘEMESLA.

Barvíř, *barveersh*, dyer
 barvíř domů, house painter
 bednář, *bednársh*, cooper
 cihlář, *tsihlársh*, brickmaker
 cukrář, *tsükrársh*, confectioner
 čalouník, *chäloŋník*, upholsterer
 doutníkár, *doŋtŋikársh*, cigar-maker
 dlaždič, *dläždich*, paver
 formář, *formársh*, moulder
 hodinář, *hodínársh*, watchmaker
 havíř, *hävveersh*, miner
 kameník, *kämeŋik*, stone-cutter
 klempíř, *klempeersh*, tinner
 knihař, *kŋihársh*, bookbinder
 kloboučník, *kloboŋchŋik*, hatter
 kolář, *kolársh*, wagon-maker
 kotlář, *kotlársh*, boiler-maker
 kovář, *kovársh*, blacksmith
 koželuh, *koželüh*, tanner
 kožešník, *kožeshŋik*, furrier
 krejčí, *kreychee*, tailor
 kufrář, *küfrársh*, trunk-maker
 lakýrník, *läkeerŋik*, laquerer
 litec, *litets*, founder
 malíř, *mäleersh*, painter
 mydlář, *mydlársh*, soap-maker
 mlynář, *mlynársh*, miller
 natěrač, *nätëräch*, painter
 obuvník, (*švec*), *obŋvŋik*, (*shuets*), shoemaker
 pekař, *pekarsh*, baker
 plynovodník, gas-fitter
 puškař, *pushkarsh*, gunsmith
 řezník, *rshëzŋik*, butcher

rybář, *rybársh*, fisherman
 rytec, *rytets*, engraver
 sazeč, *säzech*, typesetter
 sedlář, *sedlársh*, saddler
 sekerník, *sekerŋik*, millwright
 sládek, brewer
 sochař, *sokharsh*, sculptor
 stavitel, builder
 strojník, *stroyŋik*, machinist
 tesař, *tessarsh*, carpenter
 tiskař, *tisskarsh*, printer
 tkadlec, *kädlets*, weaver
 truhlář, (*stolař*), *trühlársh*, cabinet-maker
 zahradník, *zährädŋik*, gardner
 zámečník, *zámechŋik*, locksmith
 zedník, *zedŋik*, stone-mason, brick-layer;
 zlatník, *zlätŋik*, goldsmith.

Barvířství, *n. barveershstvee*, the dyer's trade;
 bednářství, *n. bednárshstvee*, the cooper's trade;
 doutníkářství, *doŋtŋikárshstvee*, cigar-making;
 krejčovství, *kreychofstvee* } the tailor's trade, tailoring;
 krejčovina, *kreychowinä* }
 ševcovství, *shëftsofstvee* } the shoemaker's trade, shoemaking;
 ševcovina, *shëftsovinä* }
 sazečství, *säzechstvee*, type-setting; etc.

On the farm.

NA FARMĚ.

I want to go on a farm.
Do you want to be a farmer?

Yes; I want to buy land.

What is land worth in this neighborhood?

What are improved farms worth?

Fifty to sixty dollars an acre, and over.

How is the soil?— The soil is good, fertile.

Good land all over.

What is the character (or "lay") of the land?

The land is level, (flat, broken, hilly).

The land is loamy, — sandy.

Black loam, — mixed with sand.

Gravel at the bottom, — in some places clay.

Rich land;—poor land.

That land is bad — swampy; — it has no drainage.

That land looks poor. — Everything grows here; — but it wants manuring.

Chei na farmu.

Cheete býti farmerem?

Ano; chei koupiti pozemek.

Co stojí pozemky v tomto okolí?

Co stojí vzdělané farmy?

Padesát až šedesát dolarů akr, i více.

Jaká je půda? — Půda je dobrá, úrodná.

Samá dobrá zem.

Jaká je poloha?

Půda je rovná, (plochá, lomená, kopčítá).

Zem je hlinitá, — písčítá.

Černá hlína, — smíchaná s pískem.

Štěrk vespod, — někde jíl (mazník).

Bohatá půda; — chudá půda.

Ten pozemek je špatný, — bahnitý; — nemá odpad.

Ta půda vypadá hubená. — Všechno zde roste; — ale musí se hnojit.

khtsi nă farmŭ.

khtsētē beet farmerem?

ānŏ; khtsi koupit pŏžēmek.

tsŏ stoyee pozemky fto-mtŏ okolee?

tsŏ stoyee vzdělané farmy?

pădessăt āsh shēdessăt dollāroo āker, e veetsē.

yākā yē poodā?— poodā yē dōbrā, oorodnā.

sāmā dōbrā zem.

yākā yē polohā?

poodā yē rovnā, (plokhā, lomēnā, kopchitā).

zem yē hlinitā, — peeschitā.

chernā hleenā, — smee-khānā speeskem.

shērk vespod, — ňegdē yeel (māzŋik).

bopātā poodā;— khūdā poodā.

ten pŏzemek yē shpātnee — bāhŋitee; — nemá odpād.

tā pooda vypādā hūbenā. — fshēkhŏ zdē rostē; — ālē mūsee sē hnojit.

How will the harvest be? — good? — bad?

How does grain look?— Grain shows a good stand.—Wheat stools out thickly.

Rye is in bloom.—Barley is heading.

Wheat has lodged;— the rainstorm laid it flat.

It has a good ear;—the berries are plump.

Corn is poor;— early corn looks better than late corn.

Have you a great deal of corn? — We have twenty acres of it.

We planted it towards the end of May. — I think it will pick up.

Our neighbor planted corn in the sod. — How does it grow?— Poorly.

How is the pasture? — Poor.

Everything is parched up. — Hay will be short.

Do you raise a great deal of stock?

About fifty head.

What do you feed (to your stock)?

Jaká bude úroda?—dobrá? — špatná?

Jak stojí obilí?— Obilí stojí dobře. — Pšenice nasazuje hustě.

Žito je ve květu.—Ječmen vymetá.

Pšenice lehla; — ten lijak ji položil.

Má dobrý klas;— zrna je jadrné.

Kukurice je špatná; — ranná korna je lepší než pozdní.

Máte mnoho korny? — Máme jí dvacet a krů.

Sázeli jsme ji ke konci máje. — Já myslím že se sebere.

Soused sázel kornu do drnu. — Jak roste? — Mizerně.

Jaká je pastva? — Hubená.

Všecko je vyprahlé. — Sena bude málo.

Chováte mnoho dobytka?

Asi padesát kusů.

Čím krmíte?

yáká bude oorodá?—dobrá? — špatná?

yák stoyee obílee? — obílee stoyee dōbrshě. — pshěñitsě nāssāzū-yě hūssťe.

žitō yě vě kwytěť. — yěchmen vymětá.

pshěñitsě lehlā;— ten lijak ye položil.

má dōbree klāss;— zernō yě yāderně.

kūkūrshitsě yěshpātnā; — rānā kornā yě lepshee nesh pozdnēe.

mátě mnohō korny? — māmě ye dwātsēt ākroo.

sázelli smě ye kě kontsi máyě. — yá misleem že sě sēberě.

soūsed sázel kornū dō dērnū. — yāk roste? — mizerñe.

yākā yě pāstvā? — hūbēnā.

fshěťsko yě vyprāhlē.— sennā būdē mālō.

khovātě mnohō dōbyt-kā?

āssi pādessāt kūssōo.

cheem kērmeetě?

What do you feed your stock upon?	Co dáváte dobytku žrát?	<i>tsö dáváte döbytkü žrát?</i>
What do you feed to your horses.	Čím krmíte koně?	<i>cheem kërmeetě koňe?</i>
Do you fatten your stock for the butcher (<i>liter.</i> "for meat")?	Krmíte dobytek na maso?	<i>kërmeetě döbytek nă mässö?</i>
Last year I fattened fifteen head of beef-steers.	Loni vykrmil jsem patnáct volů na maso.	<i>loňi vykermil sem păt-nătst voloo nă mässö.</i>
I feed many hogs for the market.	Krmím mnoho prasat pro trh.	<i>kërmeem mnohō prässăt pro terh.</i>
I have a stock farm not far from here.	Mám dobytčí farmu nedaleko odtud.	<i>mám döbitchee farmü nedďlekō otűd.</i>
There is a creek on it; — but now it is almost dry.	Je na ní potok; — ale teď je skoro suchý.	<i>yě nă ñee pőtok; — äľe teď yě skorō sűkhee.</i>
This is a dry year (a dry season);—there is no moisture (no rain).	Je suchý rok; — není vláhý.	<i>yě sűkhee rok; — neyňi vláhý.</i>
A wet year (wet season) is better.	Mokrý rok je lepší.	<i>mokree rok yě lepshee.</i>
There is a great deal of insects this year.	Je síla hmyzu letos.	<i>yě seelă hmizű letoss.</i>
Grasshoppers we never had;— neither did we have chinch bugs.	Kobylky nikdy jsme neměli; — polní štěnice také ne.	<i>kobylky ñigdy smě ně-myělli; — polňee shkë-ñitsě tăkě ně.</i>
Farming implements cost a great deal.	Rolnické nářadí stojí mnoho.	<i>rolňitské nărshăďee stoyee mnohō.</i>
At present we have machines for everything	Teď máme stroje na všechno.	<i>těď mămě stroyě nă fshětskō.</i>
Farming is improving.	Rolnictví se zvelebují.	<i>rolňitsťvee sě zveľěbűyě.</i>

VOCABULARY.

Note. From the preceding lessons the student is familiar with a great many words and phrases relating to agriculture. To repeat the same in the following vocabulary would be a waste of space.

LAND and HARVEST.

Půda a žeň.

Dolina, f. *dollinā* } bottomland
úpad, m. *oopād* }
výšina, f. *veeshinā*, upland
svah, m. *svāh*, slope
stráň, f. *strāñ*, bluff
rokle, f. *rocklē*, ravine, gully;
mez, f. *měz*, boundary, line;
pěšina, f. *pyěshinā* } path
stezka, f. *steskā* }
lávka, f. *láfká*, footbridge
mostek, m. *mōstek* } little bridge
můstek, m. *moostek* }
kanál, m. *kānāl*, culvert
strouha, f. *stroūhā*, ditch
břeh, m. *brshěh*, bank
hráz (hráze), f. *hráz*, dam.

Orati, *orāt*, to plow
vláčeti, *vláchet*, to harrow
přeorati, *prshěorāt*, to backset
přivláčeti, *prshi-vláchet*, to scour
orač, m. *orách*, plowman
brázda, f. *brázdā*, furrow
kolej, f. *kolley*, rut
hnojiti, *hnoyit*, to manure

Tráva, f. *trávā*, grass
plevel, m. *plěvell*, weeds
pleti, *plet*, to weed
koukol, *koūkol*, cockle
jetel, m. *yetell*, clover
pohanka, f. *pohānkā*, buckwheat
proso, n. *prossō*, millet

hnojivo, n. *hnoyivō*, } manure,
hnůj, m. *hnooy* } dung;
mrva, f. *mervā* }
zaseti, *zāsset*, to sow, to seed (with);
zaseto, *zāssetō*, sown, seeded;
sázeti, *sázet*, } to plant
zasázeti, *zāsászet*, }
zasázeno, planted
žíti, *žeet*, } to reap, to mow;
požítí, *požeet* }
sekati, *sekāt* } to cut
posekati, *pōsekāt* }
skliditi, *sklídīt*, to harvest
sláma, f. *slāmā*, straw
snop, m. *snōp*, sheaf
vázati, *vázāt*, to bind
stoh, m. *stōh*, stack
stohovati, *stōhovāt*, to stack
kupa sena, *kūpā sennā*, hay-stack
kupka sena, *kūpkā s.*, hay-rick
voziti, *cozit* } to haul,
svážeti, *svážet* } to carry;
droliti se, *drolitsē*, to shed, to shell;
zralý, á, é *zrālee*, ripe
přezralý, á, é *prshězrālee*, over-ripe.

PLANTS.

Rostliny.

hrách, m. *hrákh*, pease
boby, *bōby* } beans
fazole, *fāzolē* }
čočka, f. *chochkā*, lentils
řepa, f. *rshěpā* } beets
řípa, f. *rsheepā*, }
řepa pro dobytek, rutabaga

vodnatka, f. turnips
 keř, m. *kersh*, shrub
 živý plot, *živee plot*, hedge
 háj, m. *háy*, grove
 houština, f. *hoúshťinā*, thicket,
 copse;
 chrastí, n. *khrásťi*, brushwood,
 undergrowth;

pařez, m. *pārshēs*, stump
 klada, f. *klādā*, trunk
 větev, f. *vyětef*, branch, bough;
 větvička, f. *vyětvichkā*, twig
 ratolest, f. spring
 káceti stromy, *kátset* } to fell (trees)
 porážeti ,, *porážet* }

TEAMS and DOMESTIC ANIMALS.

Potah a domácí zvířata.

Potah, m. *põtāh*, a team
 pár koní, *pār koñee*, a pair of horses
 pár volů, *pār voloo*, a yoke of oxen
 pár mladých volů, a pair of steers;
 na koni, *nā koñi*, on horseback;
 jeti na koni, *yet nā koñi*, to ride a
 horse;
 jeti s koňma, *yet skoñmā*, to drive
 horses;
 zapřáhnouti, *zāprshāhnoūt*, to har-
 ness;
 uvázati, *ūvázāt*, to hitch
 náklad, m. *náklād*, the load
 nakládati, *nāklādāt*, to load
 skládati, *sklādāt*, to unload
 uváznouti, *ūvāznoūt*, to get fast, to
 stick fast;
 splášiti se, *splāshīt sē*, to run away
 lekati se, *lekāt sē*, to shy
 zarážlivý kůň, *zarážlivce kooñ*, a
 balky horse;
 zlý kůň, *zlee kooñ*, a vicious horse;
 klus, m. *klūss*, trot
 krok, m. pace
 krmiti, *kermīt*, to feed
 napojiti, *nāpoyīt*, to water.

Klisna, f. *klissnā* } brood mare;
 hřebice, f. *hrshěbitsē* }
 hřebná, *hrshěbnā*, with foal;
 hříbě, n. *hrsheebýē*, foal
 hřebeček, m. *hrshěbēchek*, colt
 hřebička, f. *hrshěbichkā*, fill
 eucati, *tsūtsāt*, to suckle
 eucák, m. *tsūtsák*, a suckling
 hřebec, m. *hrshěbets*, } stallion
 hengst, m. *hengst* }

Kráva, f. *krāvā*, cow
 dojnice, f. *doynītsē*, milch cow;
 jalovice, f. *yāllovitsē*, heifer
 tele, n. *tellē*, calf
 bulík, m. *bulleek*, bull calf;
 jalovička, f. *yāllovichkā*, heifer calf
 roční, *rochñee*, yearling
 stelná, *stellnā*, with calf;
 jalová, *yāllová*, farrow
 pometati, *pōmetāt*, to slink, to slip
 the calf;
 běhati se, *byěhāt sē*, to be bulling;
 to want the bull;
 býk, m. *beek* } bull
 bejk, *běyk* }

Ovce, f. *oftsě*, sheep
 bahnice, f. *báhñitsě*, ewe
 beran, m. *berán*, ram, buck;
 jehně, n. *yěhñe*, lamb
 bahnění, n. *báhñěñi*, lambing season
 vlna, f. *velnā*, wool
 stříhání, n. *strsheeháñi*, shearing.

Prase, n. *prässě* } pig, hog;
 vepř, m. *veprsh* }
 kanec, m. *kānets*, boar
 svině, f. *sveeñe*, sow
 sele, n. *sellě* } sucking
 podsvinče, n. *podswinchě* } pig.

Mezek, m. *mězek*, mule
 osel, m. *šsell*, donkey
 koza, f. *kōžā*, goat, she-goat;
 kozel, m. *kōzell*, he-goat
 kůzle, n. *koozlě*, kid
 pes, m. *pess*, dog
 čuba, f. *chūbā*, bitch
 štěně, n. *štěñe*, whelp

kočka, f. *kōchkā*, cat
 kocour, m. *kotsouř*, tom-cat.

Drůbež, f. *drooběsh*, poultry
 slepice, f. *slepitsě*, hen, chicken;
 kvočna, f. *kwōchnā*, clucking hen;
 kuře, n. *koorsě*, chick, young
 chicken;

kohout, m. *kohoūt*, rooster
 kachna, f. *kākhnā* } duck
 kačena, *kāchenā*, }
 kačer, m. *kācher*, drake
 husa, f. *hüssā*, goose
 houser, m. *hoüsser*, gander
 housata, pl. *hoüssātā*, goslings
 krocan, m. *krotsān*, turkey-cock
 krůta, f. *krootā*, turkey-hen
 páv, m. *páf*, peacock
 pávice, f. *pávitsě*, peahen
 hnízdo, n. *hñeездō*, nest
 nesti vejce, *nest veytsě*, to lay eggs;
 líhnouti se, *leehnoūt sě*, to hatch.

TOOLS and MACHINES. Nástroje a stroje.

Vůz, m. *vooz*, wagon
 kolo, *kollō*, wheel
 kolečko, n. *kollechkō*, wheelbarrow
 ráf, m. tire
 náboj, m. *náboy*, hub
 náprava, f. *náprāvā*, axletree
 špice, f. *shpitsě*, spokes
 voj, f. *voy*, pole
 vojky, *voyky*, shafts
 hamovák, m. *hāmovák*, brake
 pera, pl. n. *perā*, springs
 sedadlo, n. *sedādlō*, seat

kšír, m. *ksheer*, harness
 oprat', f. *oprāt'*, line
 sedlo, n. *sedlō*, saddle
 uzda, f. *oozdā*, bridle
 ohlávka, f. *ohláfká*, halter
 popruh, m. *poprūh*, girt
 čabraka, f. *chābrākā*, horse-cloth
 třemen, m. *trshěmen*, stirrup
 hřebílice, *hrshě-beeltsě*, curry-comb
 bič, m. *bitch*, whip
 bičíště, n. *bitchishtě*, whip-stick.

Saně, pl. *sāñe*, sleigh
 sanice, f. *sāñitsě*, runner, (also: sleighing);
 korba, f. *korbā*, cutter
 řezačka, f. *rshězāchkā*, straw-cutter, feed-cutter;
 řezanka, f. *rshězānkā*, chopped straw;
 brány, pl. harrow, drag;
 válec, m. *vālets*, roller
 pluh, m. *plooh*, plow
 radlice, f. *rādlitsě*, plowshare
 kleče, pl. *klěchě*, handles
 krajadlo, n. *krāyādlō*, coulter
 řetěz, m. *rshěťez*, chain
 pospěchy, pl. *pospyěkhy* } culty-
 podrývač, m. *podreevāch* } vator
 kosa, f. *kossā*, scythe
 motyka, f. hoe
 špičatá motyka, *shpichātā m.*, pick-axe
 rýč, f. *reech*, spade
 lopata, f. *lopātā*, shovel
 hrábě, pl. *hrābyě*, rake
 hrabati, *hrābāt*, to rake
 podávky, pl. *podāfky*, hayfork
 vidle, pl. *vidlē*, pitchfork
 sekyra, f. *sekyrā*, axe
 sekyrka, f. hatchet

pila, f. *pillā* } saw
 pilka, *pillkā* }
 ruční pilka, *rūchñee pillkā*, hand saw
 nebozez, m. bore, auger;

Mlatidlo, *mlātīdlō* } threshing
 mlatička, *mlātīchkā* } machine
 mlátiti, *mlātīt*, to thresh
 mlácení, n. *mlátseñi*, threshing
 mlatič, m. *mlātīch*, thresher
 fofr, m. *fāfer*, fanning mill;
 sečka, f. *sechkā*, grain-drill
 žací stroj, m. *žālsee stroy*, mower
 sekací stroj, *sekātsee stroy*, reaper
 samovazač, m. *sāmovāzāch*, self-

binder

rám, m. frame
 sýto, n. *seetō*, sieve
 řešeto, n. *rshěshětō*, screen
 řemen, m. *rshěmen* } belt
 pruh, m. *prooh* }
 tyč, f. *tīch*, rod
 panty, pl. m. *pānty*, hinges
 zuby, pl. m. *zūby* } cogs
 palec, *pāltse* }
 žlábek, m. *žlābek*, spout
 mlýnek, m. *mleynek*, mill
 loupáč (na kukuřici), m. *loūpāch*,
 corn-sheller;
 loupati, *loūpāt*, to shell.

PART IV.

Bohemian grammar.

1. ORTHOGRAPHY.

SECTION 1. — The full Bohemian alphabet, as given in the first Part, contains the following vowels : **a, á, — e, é, ě, — i, í, y, ý, — o, ó, — u, ú, ů.**

The other letters are consonants. There is only one diphthong: **ou, oŭ.** When **ou** occurs in a compound word, ending one and beginning the next syllable, it is not a diphthong and must be divided : **použiti (po-užiti), pŏ-ŭžit,** to use, to make use off; **samouk (samo-uk), sŏmo-ŭk,** a self-educated man.

An accute accent (or comma) over a vowel marks a long sound: **kam, kām,** where to; **kámen, kámen,** a stone.

A ring over the vowel **u (ů)** is also a prolongation mark : **sup, sŭp,** a hawk; **sůl, sool,** the salt.

When a word begins with a long **u,** the accute accent is used: **úrok, oorok,** the interest. In such cases the vowel **ú** may be and frequently is changed into the diphthong **ou: ourok, oŭrok.**

The accented vowel **ě** has always the short sound of *yě*: **svět, swyět,** the world.

The vowels **a, o, u, y,** are called *hard*; the vowels **e, ě, i,** are called *soft*.

SECTION 2. — The consonants are divided into three classes :

hard consonants. — **h, ch, k, r, d, n, t;**

soft consonants, — **c, ě, đ, j, ñ, ř, š, ť, ž;**

neutral consonants, — **b, f, l, m, p, s, v, z.**

After the hard consonants the hard vowel **y** is always used :

hynn , <i>hinnŭ</i> , I am perishing;	vždyť , <i>dyť</i> , <i>diť</i> , but, to be sure;
chyba , <i>f. khibă</i> , a mistake, a fault;	nyněko (nyní) , <i>ninchkŏ</i> , now, at present;
kyt , <i>m. kit</i> , putty	tykev , <i>f. tikef</i> , a pumpkin.
ryba , <i>f. ribă</i> , a fish	

When the sound is long, an accented **ý** is used : **hýbati**, *heebăt*, to move; **tichý** (**á**, **é**), *tíkhee*, quiet; **rýti**, *reet*, to spade, to dig, to root; **dým**, *m. deem*, smoke; **týrati**, *teerăt*, to misuse, to torment.

In such cases the vowel **ý** is usually changed into **ej** (*ěy*), in common pronunciation : **hejbati**, *hěybăt*; **tichej**, *tíkhey*; **rejti**, *rěyt*; **dejn**, *děym*; **tejrati**, *těyrăt*.

Words derived from foreign languages, also foreign names, make an exception, their original spelling being retained : **historie**, *historiĕ*, history; **Amerika**, **Riga**, etc.

The soft consonants are always followed by the soft vowel **i** (or **í**, when the sound is long) :

cit , <i>m. tsit</i> , the feeling	cil , <i>m. tseel</i> , the goal
čin , <i>m. chin</i> , the deed	číslo , <i>n. cheesslo</i> , the number
divoký *), <i>ďivooke</i> , wild	díl , <i>m. d'eel</i> , a part
jistý , <i>yistee</i> , certain	jísti , <i>yeest</i> , to eat
nic , <i>ñits</i> , nothing	hníti , <i>hñeet</i> , to rot
řimsa , <i>f. rshimsă</i> , a cornice	řici , <i>rsheetsi</i> , to say
šikovný , <i>shikŏvnee</i> , smart, clever;	šíti , <i>sheet</i> , to sew
tisk , <i>m. t'isk</i> , the printing	tíže , <i>f. t'eežě</i> , the weight
život , <i>m. život</i> , the life	žila , <i>f. žeelă</i> , the vein.

The neutral vowels are followed by the soft **i** or **í**, with the following exceptions :

- b** : **aby**, *by*, that; **bych**, *bys*, etc, that I, that thou, etc.; **bylina**, *f.* the plant; **bystrý**, quick, sharp; **býti**, to be; **kobyła**, the mare; **obyčej**, *m.* the custom.
- l** : **lysý**, bald; **lysina**, *f.* bald spot, or white spot; **lýko**, *n.* the bast; **lyska**, *f.* the coot; **mlýn**, *m.* the mill; **oplývati**, to abound; **pely-**

*) The soft consonants **ď**, **ñ**, **ť** lose their accent, when followed by **i**, **í** or **ě**, and are written simply **d**, **n**, **t**. See Part I, section 2.

něk, m. the wormwood; **plyn**, m. the gas; **plynouti**, to glide; **plýtvati**, to waste; **polykati**, to swallow; **slyšeti**, to hear; **vzlykati**, to sob.

m : **hmyz**, m. the insects; **my**, we; **mýdlo**, n. the soap; **mýliti**, to mislead, to confuse; **mýliti se**, to mistake; **omyl**, m. a mistake; **mysl**, f. the mind; **mysliti**, to think; **myš**, f. the mouse; **mýti**, to wash; **smyčec**, m. the fiddle-stick; **smykati**, to drag; **zamykati**, to lock up.

n : **yní**, now.

p : **kopyto**, n. the hoof; **netopýr**, m. the bat; **pýcha**, f. the pride; **pykati**, to regret; **pyl**, m. the pollen; **pýr**, m. the quick-grass; **pysk**, the lip; **pytel**, the sack; **třpytiti**, to glitter; **zpytovat**, to search, to inquire.

s : **osyka**, f. the aspen; **osypky**, pl. the measles; **posýlati**, to send; **syčeti**, to hiss; **sychravý**, chilly; **syn**, m. the son; **sypati**, to pour; **sýpka**, f. the granary, the bin; **sýr**, m. the cheese; **syrový**, raw; **syrup**, the syrup; **sysel**, m. the gopher; **syť**, **nasycen**, full, satiated.

v : **povyk**, m. the noise; **vy**, you; **vydra**, f. the otter; **výheň**, f. the forge; **vykýř**, m. the dormer-window; **výr**, m. the horn-owl; **vysoký**, high; **výti**, to howl; **vyza**, the sturgeon; **zvyk**, the habit; **žvýkati**, to chew.

z : **brzy**, soon; **jazyk**, the tongue; **nazývati**, to call, to name.

SECTION 3. — As in English, the spelling makes sometimes a great difference of meaning, though the pronunciation may be identical. For instance :

býti, *beet'i* or *beet* (colloquially *běyt*),
to be

mýti, *meeťi* or *meet* (colloq. *měyt*),
to wash

my, *me*, we

vy, *ve*, you

výr, *veer*, (colloq. *věyr*), the horn-owl

výti, *veet'i* or *veet* (colloq. *věyt*), to
howl

bíti, *beet'i* or *beet*, to beat

míti, *meeťi* or *meet*, to have

mi, *me*, to me

ví, *vee*, he knows

vír, *veer*, the whirl-wind

víti, *veet'i* or *veet*, to wind.

SECTION 4. — The Bohemian verb shows a distinction of gender in the past tense*). In the plural, there is only an orthographical distinction

*) See Note 2, Lesson IX.

between the masculine and *feminine* gender, the latter always terminating in *y*. For instance :

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>
byli jsme, we were	byly jsme, we were
byli, they were	byly, they were
měli jsme, we had	měly jsme, we had
měli, they had	měly, they had
muži měli, the men had;	ženy měly, the women had
hoši viděli, the boys saw;	holky viděly, the girls saw.

The same is true of verbs relating to *inanimate* nouns of the masculine gender, or names of lifeless things: **stromy vyrostly**, the trees grew up; **domy shořely**, the houses burned down.

SECTION 5. — The general rule of Bohemian spelling is: A sound for every letter and a letter for every sound, and no silent letters*). From this rule there are but few exceptions. In some words the initial letter *j* is silent :

jdu, <i>dů</i> , I go	jmeno, n. <i>meně</i> , the name
jsem, <i>sem</i> , I am	jmenovati, <i>meněvat</i> , to name
jíme, <i>smě</i> , we are	jmění, n. <i>myění</i> , the property.

The letter *d* is also silent in a few cases: **dcera**, *tserá*, the daughter, **srdce**, n. *sertsě*, the heart.

In some cases the letters *k, s, t, v, z, ž* modify their sound in order to facilitate pronunciation:

kdo, who, — <i>gdě</i>	v peci, in the oven, — <i>fpetsi</i> ;
kdy, when, — <i>gdý</i>	bez peněz, without money, — <i>běs</i>
s bohem, farewell, — <i>zběhem</i>	<i>pěñez</i> ;
kletba, f. the curse, — <i>kledbā</i>	zpívati, to sing, — <i>speevāt</i> .

SECTION 6. — The prepositions *s* and *z* (**se, ze**) are governed by the following rule :

When the tendency is *from above downwards* *s* or *se* is used: **spadl s okna, s nebe, se stromu**, *spādl soknā, snebě, sě stromā*, — he fell from the window, from heaven, from the tree.

*) See Part III, Note 1.

When the tendency is from below upwards, or from the inside to the outside, **z** or **ze** is employed : **vylezu ze studně**, I shall crawl up from the well; **vyndal jsem peníze z kapsy**, (*skápsy*), I took the money from my pocket, *or* out of my pocket; **vyskočím z okna ven**, I shall jump out of the window.

SECTION 7. — It is a vulgar English custom to place the sound of *h* before initial vowels : *heye* (eye), *Hengland* (England). In Bohemian a similar vulgar custom obtains, namely that of placing the letter **v** before an initial **o**. We hear, for instance :

von ,	instead of	on (he)		vokno ,	instead of	okno (window)
vona ,	“ “	ona (she)		voko ,	“ “	oko , (eye)
vono ,	“ “	ono (it)		vosel ,	“ “	osel , (ass).

This vulgarity must be carefully avoided in writing as well as speaking. On the other hand, when the letter **v** belongs to the root of the word, care must be taken not to omit the same :

voda, water; **voják**, soldier; **vosk**, wax; **voskovati**, to wax.

SECTION 8. — In writing, words have often to be divided in syllables. The principal rules to be observed are the following :

a) A consonant standing between two vowels belongs to the next syllable : **o-ba**, both; **o-ko**, the eye; **kla-da**, the log.

b) A consonant succeeding the letter **l** or **r** also belongs to the next syllable : **vl-na**, *vělnā*, the wool; **hr-dlo**, *herdlō*, the throat.

c) Two vowels, if they do not form the diphthong **ou**, are always divided : **Ma-ri-e**, *māriě*.

d) Compound words are divided according to their component parts : **bez-hlavý** (**bez-hla-vý**), headless; **roz-ličný** (**roz-lič-ný**), different; **oka-mžik**, the twinkling of an eye; a moment.

Other rules are less important and are sometimes sinned against even by the best writers.

SECTION 9. — The use of capital letters follows the same rules as in English, excepting that adjectives derived from the names of countries or nations do not, in Bohemian, commence with a capital letter (**anglický**, English; **český**, Bohemian; etc.); neither does the personal pronoun **já** (I) use a capital letter.

2. ETYMOLOGY.

SECTION 1. — The Bohemian language has seven cases, the nature of which is sufficiently explained in Note 5, on page 82.

SECTION 2. — The declension of Bohemian nouns differs in regard to *gender*, and also in regard to *termination*.

Nouns of the masculine gender, moreover, form two classes: (a) names of living creatures, or *animate* nouns; (b) names of lifeless beings, or *inanimate* nouns.

According to this division there is also a slight difference in their declension.

DECLENSION OF MASCULINE NOUNS.

SECTION 3. — The **first** declension of nouns of the masculine gender is fully shown by the following examples*):

	<i>Animate</i>	Singular number.	<i>Inanimate</i>
<i>nominative</i>	syn , the son		strom , the tree
<i>genitive</i>	syn-a , of the son;		strom-u , of the tree;
<i>dative</i>	syn-u, -ovi , to the son		strom-u , to the tree;
<i>accusative</i>	syn-a , the son		strom , the tree
<i>vocative</i>	syn-e**) , son !		strom-e , tree !
<i>locative</i>	syn-u, -ovi , (in) the son		strom-u , (in) the tree;
<i>instrumental</i>	syn-em , with the son;		strom-em , with the tree.
	Plural number.		
<i>nom.</i>	syn-i, -ové , the sons		strom-y***) , the trees
<i>gen.</i>	syn-ů, -ův , of the sons;		strom-ů, -ův , of the trees;
<i>dat.</i>	syn-ům , to the sons;		strom-ům , to the trees;
<i>acc.</i>	syn-y , the sons		strom-y , the trees
<i>voc.</i>	syn-i, -ové , sons !		strom-y***) , trees !
<i>loc.</i>	syn-ech , (in) the sons;		strom-ech , (in) the trees;
<i>inst.</i>	syn-y , with the sons;		strom-y , with the trees.

*) Compare Note 3, on page 55; also Note 1, on page 69.

) In this particular case the common usage is **synu ! o son ! **Sy-nu můj**, o my son !

***) It has also the long termination **ové**, when used as an *animate* noun, especially in poetic language: **stromové se klonili**, the trees bowed.
— **O stromové, promluvte !** o trees, speak out !

The first masculine declension (*ten syn*, *ten strom*) comprises nouns ending in hard or neutral consonants.

SECTION 4. — The **second** declension of nouns of the masculine gender is presented in full by the following examples:

<i>Animate</i>		<i>Inanimate</i>	
		Singular.	
<i>nom.</i>	muž , the man		meč , the sword
<i>gen.</i>	muž-e , of the man;		meč-e , of the sword;
<i>dat.</i>	muž-i , -ovi , to the man;		meč-i , to the sword;
<i>acc.</i>	muž-e , the man		meč , the sword
<i>voc.</i>	muž-i , man!		meč-i , sword!
<i>loc.</i>	muž-i , (in) the man;		meč-i , (in) the sword;
<i>inst.</i>	muž-em , with the man;		meč-em , with the sword.
		Plural.	
<i>nom.</i>	muž-i , -ové , the men		meč-e*) , the swords
<i>gen.</i>	muž-ů , -ův , of the men;		meč-ů , -ův , of the swords;
<i>dat.</i>	muž-ům , to the men;		meč-ům , to the swords;
<i>acc.</i>	muž-e , the men		meč-e , the swords
<i>voc.</i>	muž-i , -ové , men!		meč-e*) , swords!
<i>loc.</i>	muž-ích , (in) the men;		meč-ích , (in) the swords;
<i>inst.</i>	muž-i , with the men;		meč-i , with the swords.

The second masculine declension (*ten muž*, *ten meč*) comprises nouns ending in soft consonants or in **el** (for inst. **učitel**, the teacher).

SECTION 5. — Nouns of the first declension, terminating in **h**, **ch**, **k**, **r**, change these hard consonants into **z**, **š**, **c**, **ř**, in the *nominative* case of the plural number, as explained in Note 3 on page 70, to which we refer.

SECTION 6. — Nouns of the first declension ending in **ek** eliminate the vowel **e** in the inflected cases, as stated in Note 2 on page 80. For instance :

svědek, *swyědek*, the witness; **svědka**, *swyědkă* (not **svědeka**), of the witness; **svědku** or **svědkovi**, to the witness; etc. — (Plural:) **svědci** or **svědkové**, the witnesses; **svědků**, of the witnesses; **svědkům**, to the witnesses; etc.

*) It may also have the long termination (**mečové**), when used as an animate noun, especially in solemn or poetical language.

The same is true of nouns ending **et** and **en**. The nouns **loket** (the yard, *or* the elbow) and **den** (the day) follow in their declension the example of **meč**:

loket, the yard; **lokte**, of the yard; **lokti**, to the yard; etc.

den, the day; **dne**, of the day; **dni**, to the day; etc.

In the plural, **den** is quite irregular: **dni** or **dnové**, the days; **dní** or **dnův**, of the days; **dnům**, to the days; **dni** or **dny** (accus.), the days; **dnech**, (in) the days; **dněmi** or **dny**, with the days.

SECTION 7. — The vowel **ů**, when it occurs in the nominative, changes into **o** in the inflected cases: **kůň**, the horse; **koně**, of the horse; **koní** (or **koňovi**), to the horse; etc. — See Note 4 on page 56.

SECTION 8. — Nouns ending in **el** are mostly declined like **muž** or **meč**; for instance: **učitel**, the teacher; **učitele**, of the teacher; **učiteli**, (-**ovi**), to the teacher; etc.

Přítel (the friend) has in the nominative plural **přátelé** (the friends); in the genitive **přátel**, of the friends. —

The word **peníze** (the money) is a plural noun: **peněz**, of the money; **penězům**, to the money; **v penězích**, in the money; **penězi**, with the money.

DECLENSION OF FEMININE NOUNS.

SECTION 9. — The **first** declension of nouns of the feminine gender (*ta žena*) is shown by the following example*):

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	žen-a , the woman	žen-y , the women
<i>gen.</i>	žen-y , of the woman	žen , of the women
<i>dat.</i>	žen-ě , to the woman	žen-ám , to the women
<i>acc.</i>	žen-u , the woman	žen-y , the women
<i>voc.</i>	žen-o , woman!	žen-y , women!
<i>loc.</i>	žen-ě , (in) the woman	žen-ách , (in) the women
<i>inst.</i>	žen-ou , with the woman	žen-ami , with the women.

All nouns of the feminine gender ending in **a** belong to this declension.

SECTION 10. — There are some masculine nouns terminating in **a**, which follow this declension in the singular, excepting the dative and locative cases, which have the long masculine form. For instance: **vévod-a**, the duke; **vévod-y**, of the duke; **vévod-ovi**, to the duke; etc.

*) Compare Note 3 on page 60.

In the plural number, such nouns follow the first masculine declension: **vévod-oré**, the dukes; **vévod-ův**, of the dukes; **vévod-ům**, to the dukes; etc. (See "plural" of first declension of masculine nouns.) — Some masculines ending in **a** take in the nominative plural always the short form **i** or **é**; for instance: **basista**, the basso; **basisti** (or **basisté**), the bassoes.

SECTION 11. — Nouns of the feminine gender ending in **ě**, belong to the **second** declension (*ta země*), which is as follows*):

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	zem-ě , the earth	zem-ě , the earths
<i>gen.</i>	zem-ě , of the earth	zem-í , of the earths
<i>dat.</i>	zem-i , to the earth	zem-ím , to the earths
<i>acc.</i>	zem-i , the earth	zem-ě , the earths
<i>voc.</i>	zem-ě , earth!	zem-ě , earths!
<i>loc.</i>	zem-i , in the earth	zem-ích , (in) the earths
<i>inst.</i>	zem-í , with the earth	zem-ěmi , with the earths.

SECTION 12. — Nouns of the feminine gender ending in a *consonant* (*ta daň*), belong to the **third** declension, which has two branches showing a slight divergence at least in the written language, if not always in common discourse; hence we subjoin two examples:

	Singular	
<i>nom.</i>	kost' , the bone	daň , the tax
<i>gen.</i>	kost-i , of the bone	dan-ě , of the tax
<i>dat.</i>	kost-i , to the bone	dan-i , to the tax
<i>acc.</i>	kost , the bone	daň , the tax
<i>voc.</i>	kost-i , bone!	dan-i , tax!
<i>loc.</i>	kost-i , (in) the bone	dan-i , (in) the tax
<i>inst.</i>	kost-i , with the bone	dan-i , with the tax.
	Plural	
<i>nom.</i>	kost-i , the bones	dan-ě , the taxes
<i>gen.</i>	kost-í , of the bones	dan-í , of the taxes
<i>dat.</i>	kost-em , to the bones	dan-ím , to the taxes
<i>acc.</i>	kost-i , the bones	dan-ě , the taxes
<i>voc.</i>	kost-i , bones!	dan-ě , taxes!
<i>loc.</i>	kost-ech , (in) the bones	dan-ích , (in) the taxes
<i>inst.</i>	kost-mi , with the bones	dan-ěmi , with the taxes.

*) Compare Note 3 on page 60.

Nouns terminating in **eñ** drop the vowel **e** in the inflected cases; for instance: **lázeñ**, the bath; **lázně**, of the bath; **lázni**, to the bath; etc.

DECLENSION OF NEUTRAL NOUNS.

SECTION 13. — The **first** declension comprises nouns of the neutral gender ending in **o** (*to slovo*). They are declined as follows*):

	Singular		Plural
<i>nom.</i>	slov-o , the word	slov-a ,	the words
<i>gen.</i>	slov-a , of the word	slov ,	of the words
<i>dat.</i>	slov-u , to the word	slov-ům ,	to the words
<i>acc.</i>	slov-o , the word	slov-a ,	the words
<i>voc.</i>	slov-o , word!	slov-a ,	words!
<i>loc.</i>	slov-ě , (-u) (in) the word	slov-ech , (-ích),	(in) the words
<i>inst.</i>	slov-em , with the word	slov-y ,	with the words

SECTION 14. — The **second** neutral declension embraces nouns ending in **e** and **ě** (*to pole*, *to poupě*). It has two branches, differing somewhat in their inflected endings, as will be seen from the subjoined two examples**).

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	pol-e , the field	poup-ě , the bud
<i>gen.</i>	pol-e , of the field	poup-ěte , of the bud
<i>dat.</i>	pol-i , to the field	poup-ěti , to the bud
<i>acc.</i>	pol-e , the field	poup-ě , the bud
<i>voc.</i>	pol-e , field!	poup-ě , bud!
<i>loc.</i>	pol-i , (in) the field	poup-ěti , (in) the bud
<i>inst.</i>	pol-em , with the field	poup-ětem , with the bud.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	pol-e , the fields	poup-ata , the buds
<i>gen.</i>	pol-i , of the fields	poup-at , of the buds
<i>dat.</i>	pol-ím , to the fields	poup-atům , to the buds
<i>acc.</i>	pol-e , fields	poup-ata , the buds
<i>voc.</i>	pol-e , fields!	poup-ata , buds!
<i>loc.</i>	pol-ích , (in) the fields	poup-atech , (in) the buds
<i>inst.</i>	pol-i , with the fields	poup-aty , with the buds.

*) Compare Note 2 on page 65.

**) Compare Note 2 on page 65.

The following nouns are declined like *poupě*: **hrabě**, the count, (**hrab-ěte**, of the count; **hrabata**, the counts); **kníže**, the prince; **pachole**, the little boy; **děvče**, the girl; **vnouče**, the grandchild; — **zvíře**, the animal; **dobyťce**, the beast; **hříbě**, the foal; **jehně**, the lamb; **kotě**, the kitten; **kůzle**, the kid; **káče**, the duckling; **kuře**, the chick; **hádě**, the young snake; **house**, the gosling; **tele**, the calf; — **doupě**, the den; **koště**, the broom; **vole**, the crop (the craw).

The nouns **břemeno**, the burden; **rameno**, the arm or upper arm; **semeno**, the seed; **temeno**, the crown of the head, — and some others, have also a short form: **brímě**, **rámě**, **símě**, **témě**. The declension of these shortened nouns deviates somewhat from the above examples of the second neutral declension, for which reason a full paradigm is subjoined:

Singular

<i>nom.</i>	sím-ě , the seed
<i>gen.</i>	sem-ene , of the seed
<i>dat.</i>	sem-eni , to the seed
<i>acc.</i>	sím-ě , the seed
<i>voc.</i>	sím-ě , seed !
<i>loc.</i>	sem-eni , (in) the seed
<i>inst.</i>	sem-enem , with the seed

Plural

sem-ena , the seeds
sem-en , of the seeds
sem-enům , to the seeds
sem-ena , the seeds
sem-ena , seeds !
sem-enech , (in) the seeds
sem-eny , with the seeds.

SECTION 15. — The **third** declension of neutral nouns is characterized by the terminal **í**:

Singular

<i>nom.</i>	znamen-í , the sign
<i>gen.</i>	znamen-í , to the sign
<i>dat.</i>	znamen-í , to the sign
<i>acc.</i>	znamen-í , the sign
<i>voc.</i>	znamen-í , sign !
<i>loc.</i>	znamen-í , (in) the sign
<i>inst.</i>	znamen-ím , with the sign

Plural

znamen-í , the signs
znamen-í , of the signs
znamen-ím , to the signs
znamen-í , the signs
znamen-í , signs !
znamen-ích , (in) the signs
znamen-ími , with the signs.

This declension embraces also: 1. *Feminine* nouns terminating in **í**, like: **paní**, the mistress or lady; **bibli**, (also **bible**), the bible; but these nouns retain the terminal **í** in the instrumental of the singular number: **s paní**, with the lady. — 2. Some *masculine* nouns ending in **í**: **rukojmí**, the surety.

SECTION 16. — There is a *dual* number in Bohemian, limited in the modern language to the names of parts of the human body, which appear in pairs: **oči**, the eyes; **uši**, the ears; **ruce**, the hands; **nohy**, the feet; **prsa**, the breasts; **ramena**, the arms; **kolena**, the knees. They are declined in the dual number as follows :

<i>nom.</i>	oč-i , the eyes	uš-i ,	ruc-e ,	noh-y	prs-a ,
<i>gen.</i>	oč-í , of the eyes	uš-í ,	ruk-ou ,	noh-ou	prs-ou
<i>dat.</i>	oč-ím , to the eyes	uš-ím ,	ruk-ám ,	noh-ám	prs-ům
<i>acc.</i>	oč-i , the eyes	uš-i ,	ruc-e ,	noh-y	prs-a
<i>voc.</i>	oč-i , eyes !	uš-i ,	ruc-e ,	noh-y	prs-a
<i>loc.</i>	oč-ích , (in) the eyes	uš-ích ,	ruk-ou ,	noh-ou	prs-ou
<i>inst.</i>	oč-ima , with the eyes	uš-ima ,	ruk-ama ,	noh-ama	prs-oma .

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

SECTION 17. — There are two leading classes of adjectives : definite and indefinite.

Definite adjectives present two subdivisions: 1. adjectives with a changing termination, according to gender: **dobr-ý** (**muž**), **dobr-á** (**žena**), **dobr-é** (**dítě**), — the good man, the good woman, the good child; 2. adjectives with the same termination in all three genders: **dneš-n-í** (**vítr**) **dnešní** (**zima**), **dnešní** (**parno**), — to-day's wind, to-day's cold, to-day's heat.*)

Indefinite adjectives are either derived from definite adjectives, being only a different form of the same; for instance: **zdravý**, **zdravá**, **zdravé**, healthy or well (definite); **zdráv**, **zdráva**, **zdrávo** (indefinite)**);

Or they are so-called possessive adjectives, derived from nouns :

(**otec**, the father) **otec-ův**, **otec-ova**, **otec-ovo**, the father's; (**matka**, the mother) **matč-in**, **matč-ina**, **matč-ino**, the mother's***).

SECTION 18. — Definite adjectives with a changing termination are declined in the following manner****) :

*) Compare Note 1 on page 85, and Note 1 on page 94.

**) Compare Note 2 on page 103.

***) Compare Notes 2 and 3, on pp. 94, 95.

****) Compare Note 1, on page 85.

Singular.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom.</i>	dobr-ý muž, a good man;	dobr-á žena;	dobr-é dítě
<i>gen.</i>	dobr-ého muže, of a good man	dobr-é ženy;	dobr-ého dítě
<i>dat.</i>	dobr-ému muži, to a good man	dobr-é ženě;	dobr-ému dítě
<i>acc.</i>	dobr-ého muže, a good man;	dobr-ou ženu,	dobr-é dítě
<i>voc.</i>	dobr-ý muži, good man !	dobr-á ženo !	dobr-é dítě!
<i>loc.</i>	dobr-ém muži, (in) a good man	dobr-é ženě;	dobr-ém dítě
<i>inst.</i>	dobr-ým mužem, with a good man	dobr-ou ženou;	dobr-ým dítě.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	dobř-í muži, good men	dobr-é ženy	dobr-á děti
<i>gen.</i>	dobr-ých mužů, of good men	dobr-ých žen	dobr-ých dětí
<i>dat.</i>	dobr-ým mužům, to good men	dobr-ým ženám	dobr-ým dětem
<i>acc.</i>	dobr-é muže, good men	dobr-é ženy	dobr-á děti
<i>voc.</i>	dobř-í muži, good men!	dobr-é ženy	dobr-á děti
<i>loc.</i>	dobr-ých mužích, (in) good m.	dobr-ých ženách	dobr-ých dětech
<i>inst.</i>	dobr-ými muži, with good men	dobr-ými ženami	dobr-ými dětmi.

Note 1. The hard consonants **h, ch, k, r**, are changed in the nominative plural of the *masculine* gender into the soft consonants **z, š, c, ř**, when the adjective qualifies an *animate* noun : **dobrý muž**, — **dobří muži**; **velký hoch**, — **velcí hoši**. The terminations **eký** and **ský** change into **čí** and **ští**: **německý** (sing.) — **němečí** (plur.); **český** (sing.) — **čeští** (plur.).

In common discourse, however, this rule is neglected.

Note 2. When the adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, it agrees in the nominative and accusative plural with the feminine gender: **dobré stromy**, good trees; and the accusative singular is like the nominative: **dobrý strom**.

SECTION 19. — Definite adjectives, having the same termination (**i**) in all genders and both numbers, are declined in the following manner*):

* Compare Note 1, page 94.

	Singular			Plural
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>	<i>all three genders</i>
<i>nom.</i>	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>gen.</i>	dnešn-ího	dnešn-í	dnešn-ího	dnešn-ích
<i>dat.</i>	dnešn-ímu	dnešn-í	dnešn-ímu	dnešn-ím
<i>acc.</i>	dnešn-ího	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>voc.</i>	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>loc.</i>	dnešn-ím	dnešn-í	dnešn-ím	dnešn-ích
<i>inst.</i>	dnešn-ím	dnešn-í	dnešn-ím	dnešn-ími

Note. When the adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, the accusative singular is like the nominative. We say: **čekám dnešního hosta**, I wait for to-day's guest; but: **"čekám dnešní list"**, I wait for to-day's paper.

SECTION 20. — Indefinite adjectives like **zdráv** (from **zdravý**), **vesel** (from **veselý**), etc. *) are now used only in the nominative and accusative cases. *Possessive* adjectives have the following declension:

	Singular		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom.</i>	bratr-ův , my brother's	bratr-ova	bratr-ovo
<i>gen.</i>	bratr-ova , of my brother's	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>dat.</i>	bratr-ovu , to my brother's	bratr-ově	bratr-ovu
<i>acc.</i>	bratr-ova , my brother's	bratr-ovu	bratr-ovo
<i>voc.</i>	bratr-ův! brother's!	bratr-ova!	bratr-ovo!
<i>loc.</i>	bratr-ovu (-ově) in my brother's	bratr-ově	bratr-ovu
<i>inst.</i>	bratr-ovým , with my brother's	bratr-ovou	bratr-ovým.

Plural

(Only three cases differ, the other four being identical. In conversation there is no difference at all.)

<i>nom.</i>	bratr-ovi , my brother's	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>gen.</i>		bratr-ových	
<i>dat.</i>		bratr-ovým	
<i>acc.</i>	bratr-ovy	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>voc.</i>	bratr-ovi!	bratr-ovy!	bratr-ova!
<i>loc.</i>		bratr-ových	
<i>inst.</i>		bratr-ovými	

*) See Note 2, page 103.

Note 1. — When the possessive adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, the accusative singular is like the nominative: *vidím bratrův dům*, “I see my brother’s house”; and the nominative and vocative plural have a final *y*, like the feminine gender: *bratrovy domy*, “my brother’s houses”.

Note 2. — The adjective *páně* is not inflected: *leta Páně 1890*, in the year of our Lord 1890; — *chrám Páně*, the Lord’s house; — *večeře Páně*, the Lord’s supper; — *dům páně Hodanův*, Mr. Hodan’s house.

Note 3. — Possessive adjectives formed from feminine nouns and having the termination *in* (fem. *ina*, neut. *ino*)*, are declined like those formed from masculine nouns: *bratrův*, *bratrova*, *bratrovo*.

In their formation hard consonants are softened down in the usual manner: *mat-ka*, the mother; *mat-čin* (*matčina*, *matčino*), the mother’s.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

SECTION 21. — The comparison of adjectives is fully explained in Notes 1 and 2, Lesson XXII. The termination *ký* changes into *čí*, in the second and third degree: *hezký*, nice; *hezčí*, nicer; *nejhezčí*, nicest.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

SECTION 22.—*Personal pronouns.**)

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	já , I	ty , thou	on , he; ono , it	ona , she
<i>gen.</i>	mě (<i>mne</i>) of me	tě (<i>tebe</i>)	jeho (<i>ho</i>)	jí
<i>dat.</i>	mi (<i>mně</i>) to me	ti (<i>tobě</i>)	jemu (<i>mu</i>)	jí
<i>acc.</i>	mě (<i>mne</i>) me	tě (<i>tebe</i>)	jeho (<i>ho</i> , <i>jej</i>); je , it	ji
<i>loc.</i>	mně , in me	tobě	něm	ní
<i>inst.</i>	mnou , with me	tebou	ním (<i>jím</i>)	ní (<i>jí</i>)

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	my , we	vy , you	oni , (fem. <i>ony</i> ; neut. <i>ona</i>) they
<i>gen.</i>	nás , of us	vás	jich
<i>dat.</i>	nám , to us	vám	jim
<i>acc.</i>	nás , us	vás	je
<i>loc.</i>	nás , (in) us	vás	nich
<i>inst.</i>	námi (with) us	vámi	nimi (<i>jimi</i>)

*) See Note 3, page 95.

*) Compare Note 1 on page 102, and Note on page 106.

SECTION 23.—*Possessive pronouns.**)

			Singular.			
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	můj	má (moje)	mé (moje)	náš	naše	naše
<i>gen.</i>	mého	mé (mojí)	mého	našeho	naší	našeho
<i>dat.</i>	mému	mé (mojí)	mému	našemu	naší	našemu
<i>acc.</i>	mého (inan. můj)	mou (moji)	mé (moje)	našeho (inan. náš)	naši	naše
<i>voc.</i>	můj	má (moje)	mé (moje)	náš	naše	naše
<i>loc.</i>	mém	mé (mojí)	mém	našem	naší	našem
<i>inst.</i>	mým	mou (mojí)	mým	naším	naší	naším.

Plural.

(Cases showing no difference of gender are left in blank.)

<i>nom.</i>	moji (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naši (naše)	naše	naše
<i>gen.</i>	mých			našich		
<i>dat.</i>	mým			naším		
<i>acc.</i>	mé (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naše		
<i>voc.</i>	moji (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naši (naše)	naše	naše
<i>loc.</i>	mých			našich		
<i>inst.</i>	mými			našimi		

SECTION 24. — *Indicative pronouns.***)

Singular			Plural				
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	ten	ta	to	ti	ty	ta	kdo co
<i>gen.</i>	toho	té	toho	těch			koho čeho
<i>dat.</i>	tomu	té	tomu	těm			komu čemu
<i>acc.</i>	toho (ten)	tu	to	ty	ty	ta	koho co
<i>loc.</i>	tom	té	tom	těch			kom čem
<i>inst.</i>	tím	ton	tím	těmi			kým čím

SECTION 25. — The relative pronouns **který** (fem. **která**, neut. **které**) and **jenž** (fem. & neut. **jež**), are translated by *which* or *that*.

The pronoun **který**, **á**, **é** is declined like the definite adjective **dobrý**, **á**, **é**; the pronoun **jenž** is declined as follows:

*) Compare Lessons XXV and XXVI.

**) Compare Note 1 on page 115, and Note 5 on page 82.

	Singular			Plural
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>of all three genders.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	jenž	jež	jež	jíž (<i>masc.</i>), jež (<i>f. & n.</i>)
<i>gen.</i>	jehož	jíž	jehož	jichž
<i>dat.</i>	jemuž	jíž	jemuž	jimž
<i>acc.</i>	jehož (jejž)	jíž	jež	jež
<i>loc.</i>	(v) němž	(v) níž	(v) němž	(v) nichž
<i>inst.</i>	jímž	jíž	jímž	jimiž

NUMERALS.

SECTION 26. — The *cardinal* numeral **jeden** (*fem. jedna, neut. jedno*) is declined like **ten** (**ta, to**):*)

	Singular			Plural
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>of all three genders.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	jeden	jedn-a	jedn-o	jedn-i, -y, -a
<i>gen.</i>	jedn-oho	jedn-é	jedn-oho	jedn-ěch
<i>dat.</i>	jedn-omu	jedn-é	jedn-omu	jedn-ěm
<i>acc.</i>	jedn-oho (<i>inan. jeden</i>)	jedn-u	jedn-o	jedn-y, -y, -a
<i>loc.</i>	jedn-om	jedn-é	jedn-om	jedn-ěch
<i>inst.</i>	jedn-ím	jedn-ou	jedn-ím	jedn-ěmi

The declension of **dva** (*fem. & neut. dvě*), **tři**, **čtyři** (*fem. & neut. čtyry*) is sufficiently explained in Note 1, page 122.

The numerals **pět**, **šest**, **sedm** until **devadesát devět** (*five till ninety nine*) take in all cases an **i**, except the accusative and vocative, which are like the nominative. For instance: **pět mužů**, five men; **pěti mužů**, of five men (or “of the five men”); **pěti mužům**, to five men; **v pěti mužích**, in five men; **s pěti muži**, with five men.

In the nominative and accusative they are *always* followed by the *genitive case* of the noun: **pět mužů** (or **mužův**), five men; **šest holek**, six girls; **sedm dětí**, seven children.

*) See Note 2 on page 116.

Numerals like *twenty one*, *twenty two*, *twenty three*, and so forth, may be rendered in Bohemian in two ways : 1. — **dvacet jeden**, **dvacet dva**, **dvacet tři**, etc.,*) in which case both parts are inflected : **dvaceti dvou**, of twenty two; **dvaceti dvěma**, to twenty two; etc.

2. — **jeden-a-dvacet**, **dva-a-dvacet**, **tři-a-dvacet**, etc., *one and twenty*, *two and twenty*, *three and twenty*; etc., but usually written together: **jedenadvacet**, **dvaadvacet**. In this case only the second part is inflected : **jedenadvaceti**, of twenty one, to twenty one; **s jedenadvaceti**, with twenty one.

Sto (one hundred) is declined like the neutre noun **slovo**, excepting that in connection with **dvě** (two) it retains the *dual* number in the nominative and accusative : **sto**, **sta**, **stu**, etc. (a hundred, of a hundred, to a hundred); **dvě stě**, two hundred; **dvou set**, of two hundred; **dvěma stům**, to two hundred; **o dvou stech**, about two hundred; **s dvěma sty**, with two hundred.

Tisíc (one thousand) is declined like the masc. noun **meč** : **tisíce**, of a thousand; **tisíci**, to a thousand; **s tisícem**, with a thousand.

SECTION 27. — *Ordinal* numerals, **první** or **prvý**, **druhý**, **třetí**, etc; (first, second, third,) are declined like adjectives of a corresponding termination, i. e. like **dobrý**, **á**, **é** or **dušní**.**)

The same rule obtains in relation to the *special* and *multiplicative* numerals : **dvojí**, **trojí**, etc. (twofold, threefold); **dvojnásabný**, **trojnásabný**, etc. (double, treble).

The neutral form of special numerals : **čtvero**, **patero**, **desatero**, etc., is declined like the neutre noun **slovo**; for instance : **desatero přikázání**, the ten commandments; **desatera přikázání**, of the ten commandments; **v desateru přikázání**, in the ten commandments; etc.

The *names* of numbers : **jednotka** (the figure one), **dvojka** (the figure two), **trojka** (the figure three), etc., are declined like the fem. nouns ending in **a** : **žena**.

SECTION 28. — The indefinite numeral **všechn** (also **všecek** or **všecken*****), *all*, has the following declension :

*) See page 120.

**) See Note 3 on page 124.

**) See Note 1 on page 127.

Singular.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom. & voc.</i>	všechn	všechna	všechno
<i>gen.</i>	všeho	vší	všeho
<i>dat.</i>	všemu	vší	všemu
<i>acc.</i>	všeho (<i>inan. všechen</i>)	všechnu	všechno
<i>loc.</i>	všem	vší	všem
<i>inst.</i>	vším	vší	vším

Plural.

<i>nom. & voc. masc.</i>	všichni	<i>gen.</i>	všech	} in all three genders.
(<i>masc. inan.</i>)	všechny	<i>dat.</i>	všem	
<i>fem.</i>	všechny	<i>loc. (ve)</i>	všech	
<i>neut.</i>	všechna	<i>inst.</i>	všemi	
<i>acc., masc. & fem..</i>	všechny	<i>acc. neut.</i>	všechna	

The indefinite numeral **veškerý, á, é** has the same meaning as **vše-**
chen, na, no (*all*), and is declined like adjectives of the same termination
(**dobrý, á, é**).

VERBS.

SECTION 29. — 1. The verb is said to be *subjective*, when the action or condition is strictly confined to the subject: **sedím**, I am sitting; **běhám**, I am running; **růže kvete**, the rose is blooming.

2. It is called *objective*, when the action relates to another person or thing: **slunce zahřívá zemi**, the sun is warming the earth; **učitel chválil žáka**, the teacher praised the scholar; **důvěřuj v Boha!** trust in God!

The objective verb is *transitive* or *intransitive*.

The transitive verb is accompanied by the accusative case without any preposition: **učitel chválí žáka**, the teacher is praising the scholar; **matka vede dceru**, the mother is leading her daughter.

The intransitive verb is accompanied by the accusative case with a preposition: **důvěřuj v Boha**; or by some other case with or without a preposition: **lakomec baží po bohatství**, the miser craves for riches; **žák poslouchá učitele**, the scholar obeys his teacher.

3. A verb is called *reflexive*, when the action reverts to the subject. Such verbs are accompanied by the reflexive pronoun **se**: **Modli se!**

pray! *Chlapec se strojí*, the boy is dressing (himself). *Radujeme se z toho*, we are rejoicing over it.

But sometimes the pronoun *se* expresses the *passive* mood, and not a reflected action: *maso se jí*, the flesh is eaten; *jablka se česají*, the apples are being picked; *pole se orá*, the field is being plowed.

4. *Impersonal* verbs express an action or condition regardless of the person or thing, from which it proceeds: *prší*, it rains, it is raining; *rozednívá se*, it dawns, (the day is breaking).

SECTION 30. — The classification of the Bohemian verbs in regard in to the character of the action is fully explained in Lesson XXXIX.

Tense-inflection shows a difference in the *time* of the action or condition. There are three tenses:

1. *The present tense (přítomný čas)*: *píšu*, I write, I am writing; *pes štěká*, the dog barks, the dog is barking.

2. *The past tense (minulý čas)*: *psal jsem*, I wrote, I was writing; *pes štěkal*, the dog barked, the dog was barking.

The past tense may be *continuous*, when a continued past action is expressed: *šel jsem*, I went, I was going; or *finite*, when a finished action is expressed: *přišel jsem*, I came.

3. *The future tense (budoucí čas)*: *budu psáti*, I shall write, I shall be writing; *pes bude štěkat*, the dog will bark, the dog will be barking.

The future tense may also be either *continuous*: *budu psáti*; or *finite*, when a completed future action is to be expressed: *napíšu*, I shall write out.

The Bohemian verb, like the English, has an indicative mood: *mluvím*, *I speak*; a subjunctive or conditional mood: *mluvil bych*, *I should speak*; and an imperative mood: *mluv!* *speak!*

SECTION 31. — There is only one auxiliary verb in Bohemian: *býti*, to be. — But certain verbs are used in connection with other verbs, to make a complete assertion or declaration; for instance: *musíti*, must; *smíti*, may, dare; *moci*, can; *ráčiti*, please; etc. We say: *musím jíti*, I must go; *smím mluvíti?* may I speak? *raďte vejíti!* please to come in!

SECTION 32. — The Bohemian verb has *six conjugations*, fully illustrated in Lessons XXXI — XXXV incl.

The auxiliary verb *býti*, aiding in the formation of the past and future tenses, is conjugated thus:

Present: jsem, jsi, jest; jsme, jste, jsou.

Imperative: buď, buďme, buďte.

Past participle: byl, byla, bylo; byli, byly, byla.

Subjunctive: bych, bys, by; bychom (bysme), byste, by.

Future: budu, budeš, bude; budeme, budete, budou.

Present transgressive):* jsa, jsouc, jsouc; jsouce; (being).

Past transg.: byv, byvši, byvši; byvše; (having been).

Future transg.: buda, budouc, budouc; budouce; (to be, expecting to be).

*) This participial construction occurs only in the written language; it is explained in Note 4, page 164.

SECTION 33. — Table of the six conjugations.

I. Termination ti directly attached to the root.						II Term. - outi to pass	III Termin. to look, to look after
Person		nes-ti to carry	pi-ti to drink	tři-ti to rub	pée-i* to bake		
Indicative mood	Singular	1	nes-u	pij-u (-i)	tr-u	pek-u	hled-ím
		2	nes-eš	pij-eš	tř-eš	peč-eš	hled-íš
		3	nes-e	pij-e	tř-e	peč-e	hled-í
	Plural	1	nes-eme	pij-eme	tř-eme	peč-eme	hled-íme
		2	nes-ete	pij-ete	tř-ete	peč-ete	hled-íte
		3	nes-ou	pij-ou (í)	tr-ou	pek-ou	hled-í
Imperative	Plur. Sing.	2	nes	pij	tři	peč	hled'
		1	nes-me	pij-me	tř-eme	peč-me	hled' me
		2	nes-te	pij-te	tř-ete	peč-te	hled'-te
Active participle	Singular	<i>masc.</i>	nes-l	pi-l	tře-l	pek-l	hled-ěl
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-la	pi-la	tře-la	pek-la	hled-ěla
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-lo	pi-lo	tře-lo	pek-lo	hled-ělo
	Plural	<i>masc.</i>	nes-li	pi-li	tře-li	pek-li	hled-ěli
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-ly	pi ly	tře-ly	pek-ly	hled-ěly
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-la	pi-la	tře-la	pek-la	hled-ěla
Passive participle	Singular	<i>masc.</i>	nes-en	pi-t	tře-n	peč-en	hledě-n
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-ena	pi-ta	tře-na	peč-ena	hledě-na
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-eno	pi-to	tře-no	peč-eno	hledě-no
	Plural	<i>masc.</i>	nes-eni	pi-ti	tře-ni	peč-eni	hledě-ni
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-eny	pi-ty	tře-ny	peč-eny	hledě-ny
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-ena	pi-ta	tře-na	peč-ena	hledě-na
Present transgressive	Singular	<i>masc.</i>	nes-a	pij-e	tr-a	pek-a	hled ě
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-ouc	pij-íc	tr-ouc	pek-ouc	hled-íc
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-ouc	pij-íc	tr-ouc	pek-ouc	hled-íc
	Plur. m. f. n.		nes-ouce	pij-íce	tr-ou	pek-ouce	hled-íce
Past transgressive	Singular	<i>masc.</i>	nes	pi-v	tře v	pek	hledě-v
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-ši	pi-vši	tře-vši	pek-ši	hledě-vši
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-ši	pi-vši	tře-vši	pek-ši	hledě-vši
	Plur. m. f. n.		nes-še	pi-vše	tře-vše	pek-še	hledě-vše

*) Popularly **pecti**, originally **pékti**.

III -ěti or -eti	IV. Termin. -iti	V Termin. -ati			VI Termin. -ovati
ház-eti to throw	čin-iti to do	vo -ati to call	maz-ati to rub	hn-áti to drive	mil-ovati to love
ház-ím	čin-ím	vol-ám	maž-u (-i)	žen-u	miluj-u (-i)
ház-íš	čin-íš	vol-áš	maž-eš	žen-eš	miluj-eš
ház-í	čin-í	vol-á	maž-e	žen-e	miluj-e
ház-íme	čin-íme	vol-áme	maž-eme	žen-eme	miluj-eme
ház-íte	čin-íte	vol-áte	maž-ete	žen-ete	miluj-ete
ház-ejí	čin-í	vol-ají	maž ou (-í)	žen-ou	miluj-ou (-í)
házej	čin	volej	maž	žeň	miluj
házej-me	čin-me	volej-me	maž-me	žeň-me	miluj-me
házej-te	čin-te	volej-te	maž-te	žeň-te	miluj-te
háze-l	čini-l	vola-l	maza-l	hna-l	milova-l
háze-la	čini-la	vola-la	maza-la	hna-la	milova-la
háze-lo	čini-lo	vola-lo	maza-lo	hna-lo	milova-lo
háze-li	čini-li	vola-li	maza-li	hna-li	milova-li
háze-ly	čini-ly	vola-ly	maza-ly	hna-ly	milova-ly
háze-la	čini-la	vola-la	maza-la	hna-la	milova-la
háze-n	čině-n	volá-n	mazá-n	hná-n	milová-n
háze-na	čině-na	volá-na	mazá-na	hná-na	milová-na
háze-no	čině-no	volá-no	mazá-no	hná-no	milová-no
háze-ni	čině-ni	volá-ni	mazá-ni	hná-ni	milová-ni
háze-ny	čině-ny	volá-ny	mazá-ny	hná-ny	milová-ny
háze-na	čině-na	volá-na	mazá-na	hná-na	milová-na
háze-je	čin-ě	vola-je	maž-e	žen-a	miluj-e
háze-jíc	čin-íc	vola-jíc	maž-íc	žen-ouc	miuj-íc
háze-jíc	čin-íc	vola-jíc	maž-íc	žen-ouc	miluj-íc
háze-jíce	čin-íce	vola-jíce	maž-íce	žen-ouce	miluj-íce
háze-v	čini-v	vola-v	maza-v	hna-v	milova-v
háze-vši	čini-vši	vola-vši	maza-vši	hna-vši	milova-vši
háze-vši	čini-vši	vola-vši	maza-vši	hna-vši	milova-vši
háze-vše	čini-vše	vola-vše	maza-vše	hna-vše	milova-vše.

SECTION 34. — Irregular verbs.

- Jeti**, to ride, to drive;—*present*, jedu, jedeš, jede, jedeme, jedete, jedou; *imper.* jed', -me, -te; *active partic.* jel, -a, -o; *passive partic.* jet, -a, -o; *pres. transg.* jed-a, -ouc, -ouce; *supine*, jet (to ride);
- jíti**, to go;—*pres.* jdu, jdeš, jde, jdeme, jdete, jdou; *imper.* jdi, jdě-me, jdě-te; *act. part.* šel, šla, šlo; *pres. transg.* jda, jdouc, -ce; *sup.* jit (to go);
- chtíti**, to want;—*pres.* chci, chceš, chce, chceme, chcete, chtějí; *imper.* chtěj, chtěj-me, -te; *act. part.* chtěl, -a, -o; *pres. transg.* chtěj-e, -íc, -íce; *past. transg.* chtěl, -ši, -še; *sup.* chtět (to want);
- miti**, to have;—*pres.* mám, máš, má, máme, máte, mají; *imper.* měj, měj-me, měj-te; *act. part.* měl, -a, -o; *pres. transg.* maj-e, -íc, -íce; *past. transg.* měl, -ši, -še;
- spáti**, to sleep;—*pres.* spím, spíš, spí, spíme, spíte, spí; *imper.* spi, spě-me, -te; *act. part.* spal, -a, -o; *pres. transg.* spě, spíc, spíce; *past. transg.* spav, -ši, -še; *sup.* spat (to sleep);
- státi se**, to happen, to become;—*stanu se, staneš se, stane se, stan-eme, -ete, -ou se; imper.* stañ se, -me, -te se; *act. part.* stal, -a, -o se; *pres. transg.* stav, -ši, -še se; (stává se, it happens, is impersonal);
- viděti**, to see;—*vidím, vidíš, vidí, vidíme, vidíte, vidí; imper.* viz, -me, -te; *act. part.* viděl, -a, -o; *passive part.* viděn, -a, -o; *present transg.* vid-a, -ouc, -ouce.

SECTION 35. — The derivation and comparison of adverbs is explained in Notes 2 and 3, on page 128.

Prepositions govern or require particular cases.

The *genitive* case, responding to the question *čí? koho? čeho?**, is governed by the following prepositions, and adverbs used as prepositions:

bez, without	do, to, till, until;	krom	{	aside from,
dle } according to;	od, from	kromě		except;
podle } next to;	u, at, by;	kolem	{	round,
vedle, next to, along-side of;	z, ze, from, out of;	okolo		around;
		vůkol		

*) See Note 5, page 82. In the genitive case the question *koho?* *whose?* was inadvertently omitted.

vně , outside of;	daleko , far	výše , higher
vnitř , inside of;	stranu , about	prostřed , amidst
blízko , near	níže , lower	místo , instead of.

The *dative* case (responding to the question **komu? čemu?**) is governed by the following:

k	} to, for;	proti , against	} naproti , towards, against, opposite;
ke		k vůli , for the sake of;	
ku			
			vstříc , towards.

The *accusative* case (responding to the question **koho? co?**) is governed by the following:

mimo , besides, past;	pro , for	skrze , through.
ob , over	přes , over, across;	

The *locative* case (responding to the question **v kom? v čem? o kom? o čem?** etc.) is always governed by the preposition **při**, *by, at*; and in most instances by the following prepositions:

v	} in	o , about, on;	} po , after, by, during.
ve		na , on, upon, for;	

The preposition **v** or **ve**, when it occurs before a word beginning with the letter **v**, is often changed into **u**; for instance : **u velikém počtu** (instead of **ve velikém počtu**), *in a large number*, or "in large numbers."

The above five prepositions often require the *accusative* case; for example : **na potupu**, *for disgrace*, i. e. "in order to disgrace or dishonor"; **bojí se o život**, he fears for his life.

The prepositions **mezi**, between, among; **nad**, over, above; **pod**, under, below; **před**, before, — govern either the *accusative* or the *instrumental* case : **půjdu mezi lidi**, I shall go among people; **byl jsem mezi lidmi**, I was among people.

The preposition **s**, **se** governs the *genitive* case, when it means *from*, *off*: **spadl s vozu, se stromu**, he fell from the wagon, from the tree; and it governs the *instrumental* case, when it means *with*: **pojď se mnou**, come with me; **šli jsme za nim**, we went after him, we followed him.

Za governs the *genitive* case, when it means *during, in*: **za času Washingtona**, in the time of Washington; — it governs the *accusative* case, when it means *for*: **koupil jsem to za dollar**, I bought it for a dollar; — and it governs the *instrumental* case, when translated by *behind, after*: **pojd' za mnou**, come behind me; **přijdu za tebou**, I will come after thee.

In rare instances it requires the accusative case : **nejsem s to posloužit vám**, I cannot (I am not able to) accommodate you.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Why this book has been written.....	5
The Bohemian language.....	7
The Bohemians in the United States.....	8
 Part I.	
General observations.....	12
The Bohemian alphabet.....	12
Names of the letters.....	15
Bohemian pronunciation.....	16
Parts of speech.....	18
Gender.....	19
Grammatical rules in general.....	20
The accent.....	21
“Ty” and “vy”.....	22
Part II. Rules of pronunciation.....	25
Lesson I }.....	28
Lesson XL }.....	172
Part III. Bohemian conversation.....	179
Bohemian and English.....	180
Greetings and compliments.....	187
A call.....	190
Time.....	192
The hour.....	198
Age and date.....	201
The weather.....	206
Health and sickness.....	213
The human being.....	218
Disease and cure.....	228
Drugs and medicines.....	237
At home.....	244
Buying and selling.....	249
In a grocery store.....	255
Garments.....	257
Shoemaking.....	260
Diverse trades.....	261
On the farm.....	262
Part IV. Bohemian grammar.....	
Orthography.....	269
Etymology.....	274

SLAVIE a RODINA.

Slavie, časopis národní a politický. Nejstarší, nejoblíbenější a nejrozsířenější časopis český v Americe. List ryze národní, v politice rovný a nezávislý, fedrující vždy zásady jediné té strany politické, kteráž zemí a veškerému obyvatelstvu, najmé pak všemu lidu pracovnímu bez výminky, na ten čas jest nejspokojnější.

Rodina, zábavník "Slavie", přináší výbor nejlepších románů cizojazyčných i českých a povídky i romány do roka v Rodině vyšlé mají samy o sobě mnohonásobnou cenu předplatného. Romány v Rodině vycházející jsou veskrz dobré, mravně ušlechťující. Hledíme, aby se české mládeži pomocí zábavy dostalo toho, čeho se jí nedostatkem českého školství nedostalo.

Tlumač. Nový Tlumač Americký od Karla Jonáše. Žádná publikace česká v této zemi nebyla přijata od obecnstva s takovým vděkem a uznáním a žádná se nedostalo rozšíření tak rychlého a velikého, jako Tlumači, knize ku snadnému a rychlému přiučení se jazyku anglickému, bez jehož znalosti nikdo se zde valného pokroku nedodělá. Cena \$1.50 i se záсылkou a prodává se jediné za hotové.

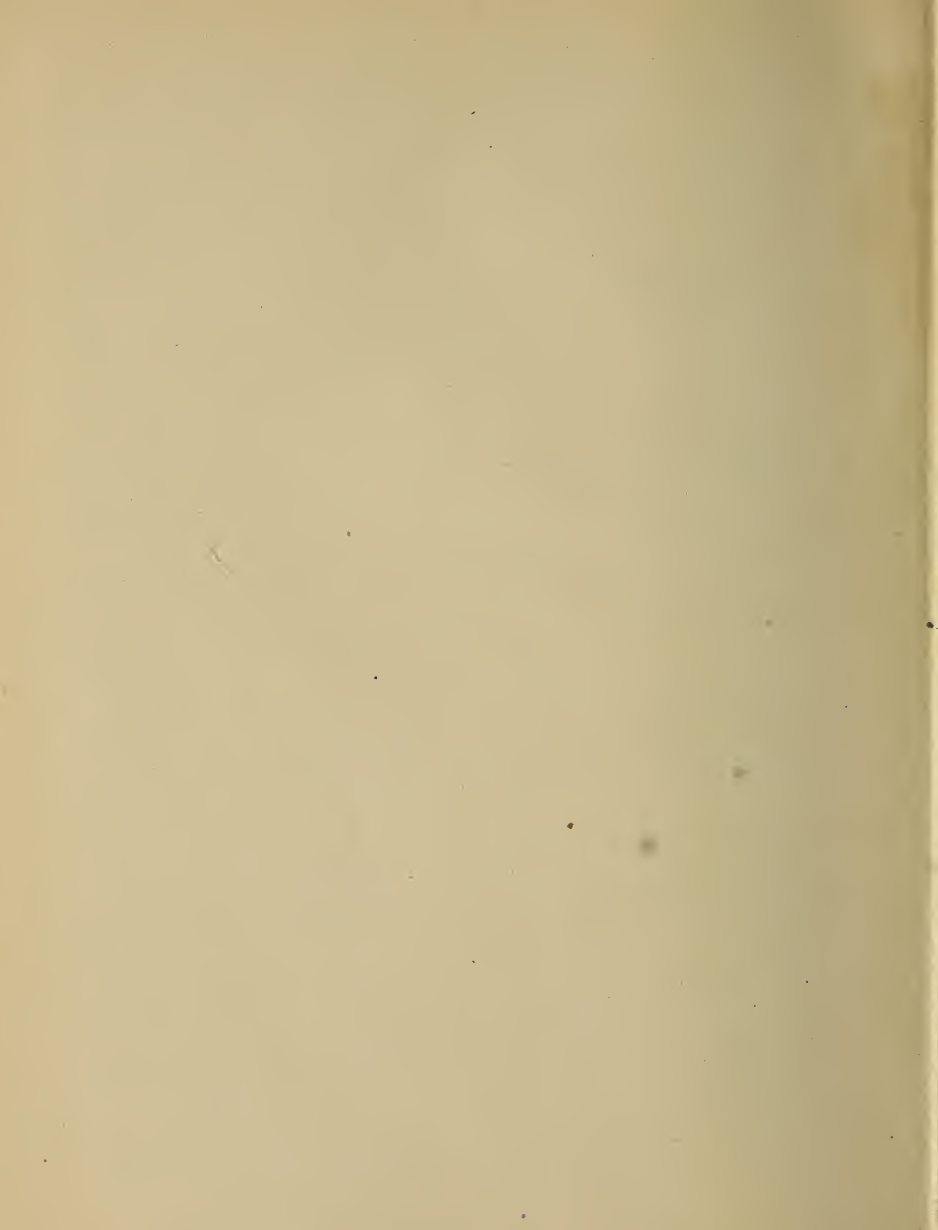
Slovník česko-anglický, od Karla Jonáše. Druhé rozmnožené a opravené vydání. Postupná kniha učebná po Tlumači a nezbytná pro každého ku zdokonalení se v jazyku anglickém. Pro počátečníka ku rychlému seznámení se s nejobecnější, každodenní mluvou postačí Tlumač; povrchní znalec angličtiny musí pak k ruce mítí Slovník, aby se v jazyku zdokonalil. Cena \$1.50. Jenom za hotové. — Slovník anglicko-český vyjde u Slavie tiskem později.

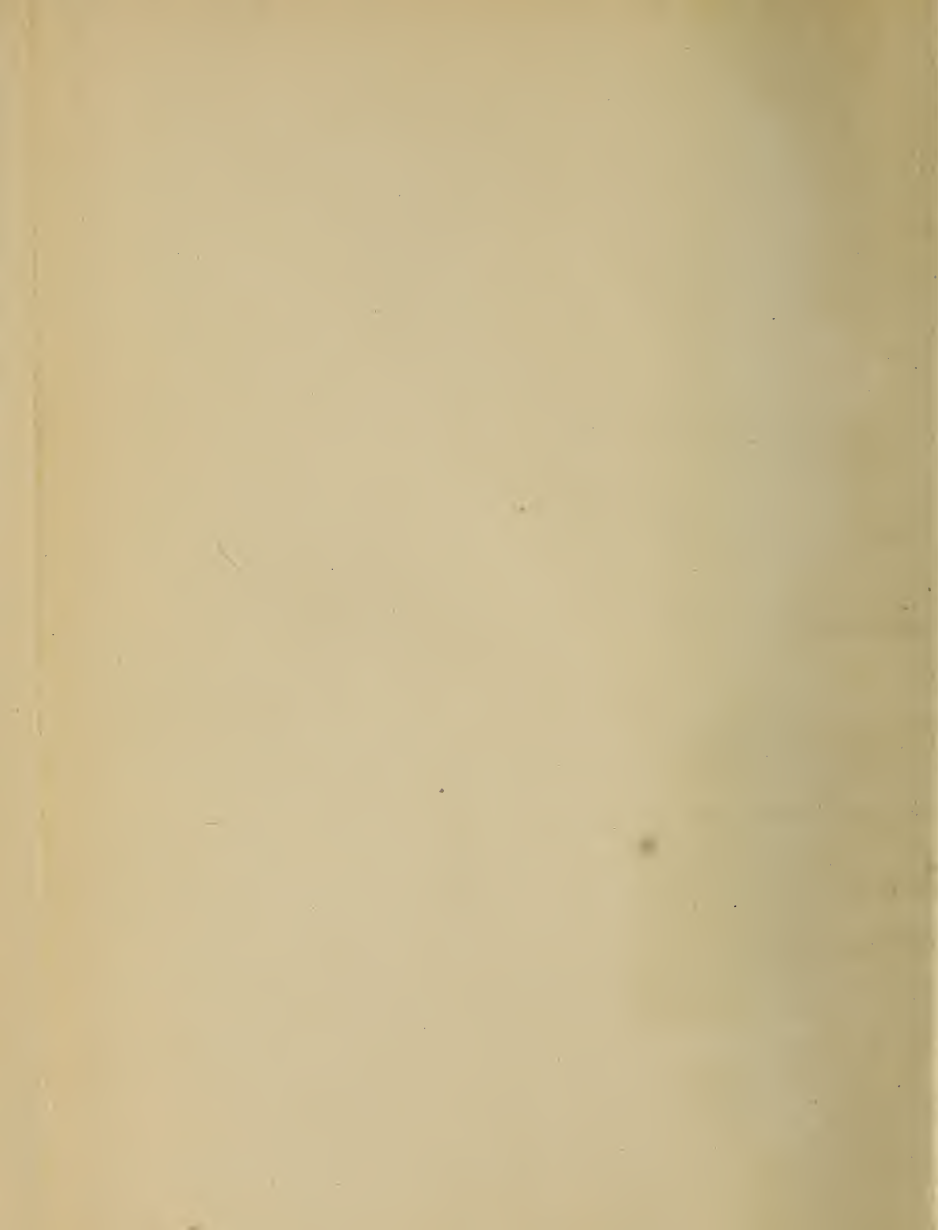
Americké právo od Karla Jonáše. Sbírka zákonů a výkladů právních, pro osadníky česko-americké zvláště užitečných. Alespoň povrchní znalost zdejších zákonů nutná jest každému občanu americkému, anť neznalost zákonů nikoho před škodou neuchrání. Sbírka tato obsahuje toliko zákony nejnutnější, ve všech státech stejně platné a zvláště důležitý zákon homstední se všemi doplňky. "Právo farmerské" a smlouva rakousko-americká jsou spisu přidány. Cena 75c. Jen za hotové.

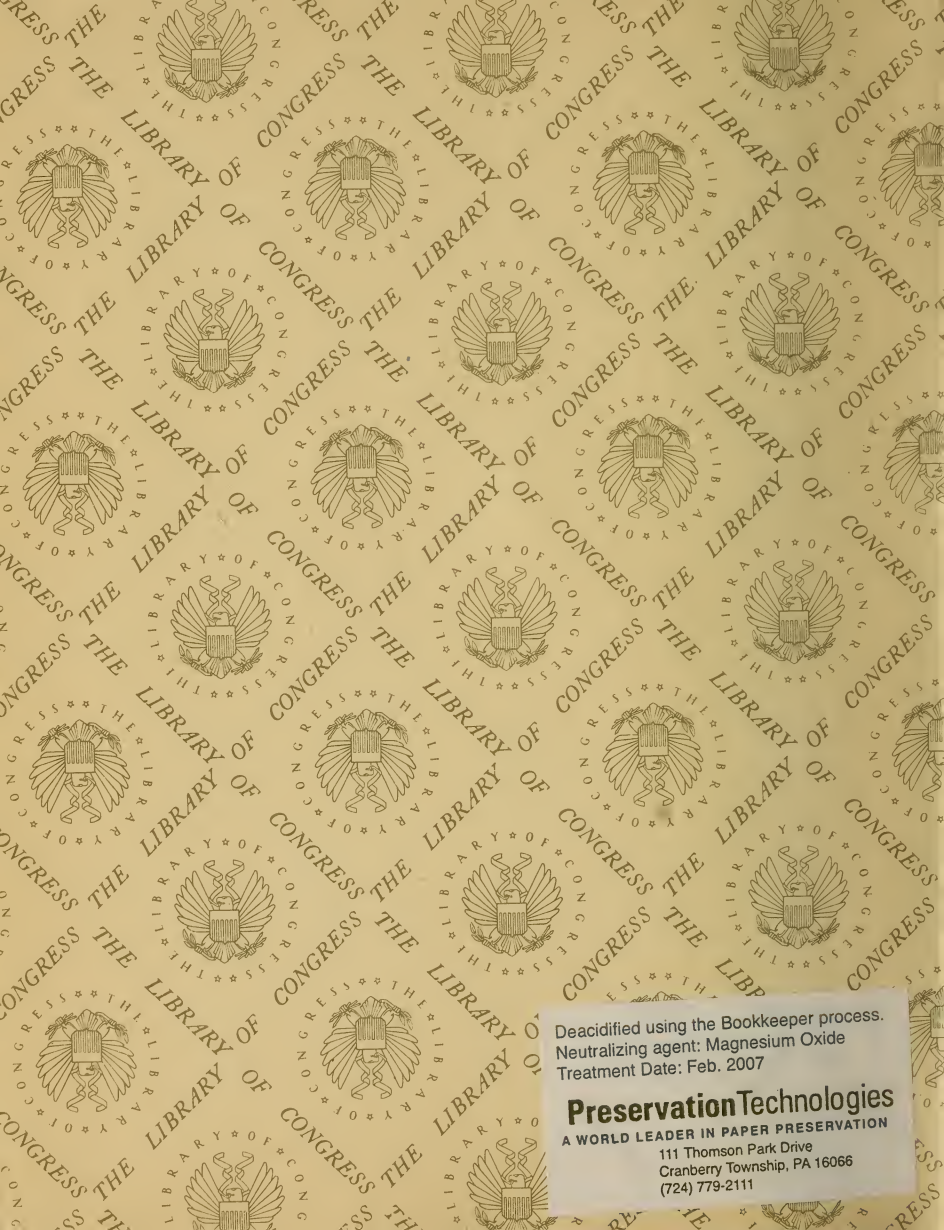
Zlatá kniha pro farmera. Dle rozličných pramenů sestavil Karel Jonáš. Kniha tato pojednává o vnitřních i zevnitřních nemocích koní a všeho dobytka hospodářského. Obsahuje návod o koupi koní, dodatek o domácích pomůckách pro všeliké nehody, a recepty na rozličné léky v jazyku českém i anglickém. Prospěla již stům českých farmerů a na žádné farmě neměla by chyběti. Cena 65c. Jen za hotové.

Politické zřízení americké. Napsal Charles Nordhoff. Se svolením spisovatele a nakladatelů přeložil Gustav B. Reišl. Znání politické zařízení země v níž žijeme a prosperovati chceme, jest jednou z nejpřednějších povinností každého přistěhovalce. Až do nedávna nebylo spisu, z něhož by nově příchozí takové znalosti mohl nabýti. Nedostatků tomu odpomohl pan Reišl překladem tohoto výtečného díla Nordhoffova, jež se u Amerikánů cení co nejvýše. Cena pouze 50c. i se záсылkou. Jen za hotové.

Přihlášky poštou a záсылky peněz buďtež adresovány prostě: «Slavie», Racine, Wis.







Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: Feb. 2007

Preservation Technologies

A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



00023913355

